kaspersky

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

© 2026 AO Kaspersky Lab

Contents

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Help

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

- What's new
- About Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal
- Distribution kit
- Hardware and software requirements
  - Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions
  - Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows versions with EPP applications
  - Requirements for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
  - Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions
  - Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux versions with EPP applications
  - Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux versions with other applications
  - Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions
  - Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions
- Restrictions

Data provision

- Service data of the application
- Data of the Central Node and Sensor components
  - Traffic data of the Sensor component
  - Data in alerts
  - Data in events
  - Data in reports
  - Data on objects in Storage and quarantine
- Sandbox component data
- Data transmitted between application components
- Data contained in application trace files
- Data of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows
  - Data received from the Central Node component
  - Data in alerts and events
  - Data contained in task completion reports
  - Data contained in an install log
  - Data on files that are blocked from starting
  - Data related to the performance of tasks
- Data of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
  - Data in Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux requests to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
  - Service data of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
  - Data contained in Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux trace files and dumps
- Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows data
- Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux data

Application licensing

- About the End User License Agreement
- About the license

- About the license certificate
- About the key
- About the key file
- Viewing information about the license and added keys in the web interface of the Central Node
- Viewing the text of the End User License Agreement in the web interface of the Central Node
- Viewing the text of the Privacy Policy in the web interface of the Central Node
- Viewing information about the third-party code used in the application
- Viewing the text of the End User License Agreement in the web interface of the Sandbox
- Viewing the text of the End User License Agreement for the Endpoint Agent component
- Adding a key
- Replacing a key
- Removing a key
- Application modes based on the license

Architecture of the application

- Sensor component
- Central Node component
- Sandbox component
- Endpoint Agent component

Operating principle of the application

Distributed solution and multitenancy

- Distributed solution and multitenancy mode transition scenario
- Modifications of application settings for the distributed solution and multitenancy mode
- Assigning the PCN role to a server
- Assigning the SCN role to a server
- Processing SCN to PCN connection requests
- Viewing information about tenants, PCN and SCN servers
- Adding a tenant to the PCN server
- Deleting a tenant from the PCN server
- Renaming a tenant on the PCN server
- Disconnecting an SCN from PCN
- Modifications of application settings for disconnecting an SCN from PCN
- Decommissioning an SCN server

Sizing Guide

- Common scenarios for deployment and installation of application components
  - Two-server deployment scenario
  - Three-server deployment scenario
  - Scenario of deployment on four or more servers
  - Scenario for deploying KEDR functionality with a Sandbox component
  - Scenario for deploying KEDR functionality without a Sandbox component
- Sizing calculator
  - Calculations for the Sensor component
  - Calculations for the Central Node component
  - Calculations for the Sandbox component

Installing and performing initial configuration of the application

- Preparing for installing application components
  - Preparing the IT infrastructure for installing application components
  - Preparing the IT infrastructure for integration with a mail server used for receiving messages via POP3

Preparing the IT infrastructure for integration with a mail server used for receiving messages via SMTP
Preparing the virtual machine for installing the Sandbox component
Procedure for installing and configuring application components
Installation: Sandbox component
Step 1. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy
Step 2. Selecting a disk for installing the Sandbox component
Step 3. Assigning the host name
Step 4. Selecting the controlling network interface in the list
Step 5. Assigning the address and network mask of the controlling interface
Step 6. Adding DNS server addresses
Step 7. Configuring a static network route
Step 8. Configuring the minimum password length for the Sandbox administrator password
Step 9. Creating the Sandbox administrator account
Deploying the Central Node and Sensor components as a cluster
Deploying a storage server
Step 1. Selecting a server role
Step 2. Selecting the deployment mode
Step 3. Selecting a disk for installing the component
Step 4. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy
Step 5. Selecting a network mask for cluster server addressing
Step 6. Selecting a network mask for addressing of application components
Step 7. Selecting the cluster network interface
Step 8. Selecting the external network interface
Step 9. Selecting the method of obtaining IP addresses for network interfaces
Step 10. Creating an administrator account and authenticating the server in the cluster
Creating the administrator account
Authenticating the server in the cluster
Step 11. Adding DNS server addresses
Step 12. Selecting disks for the Ceph storage
Deploying the processing server
Step 1. Selecting a server role
Step 2. Selecting the deployment mode
Step 3. Selecting a disk for installing the component
Step 4. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy
Step 5. Selecting a network mask for cluster server addressing
Step 6. Selecting a network mask for addressing of application components
Step 7. Selecting the cluster network interface
Step 8. Selecting the external network interface
Step 9. Selecting the method of obtaining IP addresses for network interfaces
Step 10. Authenticating the server in the cluster
Step 11. Configuring receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports
Step 12. Adding DNS server addresses
Purging hard drives on storage servers
Installing the Central Node and Sensor components on the server
Step 1. Selecting a server role
Step 2. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy
Step 3. Selecting a disk for installing the component

Step 4. Allocating the disk for the Targeted Attack Analyzer component's database
Step 5. Selecting a network mask for cluster server addressing
Step 6. Selecting the external network interface
Step 7. Selecting the method of obtaining IP addresses for network interfaces
Step 8. Creating the administrator account
Step 9. Adding DNS server addresses
Step 10. Configuring receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports
Step 11. Configuring time synchronization with an NTP server
Installing the Sensor component on a standalone server
Step 1. Selecting a server role
Step 2. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy
Step 3. Selecting a disk for installing the component
Step 4. Selecting the external network interface
Step 5. Connecting to the server with the Central Node component
Step 6. Creating the administrator account
Configuring the sizing settings of the application
Configuring the integration of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component
Configuring the trusted connection of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application
Configuring the connection with the Central Node server without validating the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
Configuring the connection with the Central Node server with validation of the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
Configuring the connection with the Sensor server without validating the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
Configuring the connection with the Sensor server with validation of the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
Downloading the TLS certificate of the Central Node server
Generating a TLS certificate for the Central Node server in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Uploading an independently prepared TLS certificate for the Central Node server using the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
Uploading a TLS certificate of the Central Node server or Sensor to Kaspersky Endpoint Agent
Enabling the validation of the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent TLS certificate in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Generating a TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and downloading a cryptographic container
Uploading an independently prepared TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
Viewing the table of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent TLS certificates in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Filtering and searching Kaspersky Endpoint Agent TLS certificates in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Deleting Kaspersky Endpoint Agent TLS certificates in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Configuring the validation of the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent TLS certificate by the Central Node server and uploading a cryptographic container to Kaspersky Endpoint Agent
Configuring traffic redirection from Kaspersky Endpoint Agent to the Sensor server
Enabling traffic redirection from Kaspersky Endpoint Agent to the Sensor server
Authorizing the Sensor component on a Central Node server
Generating a TLS certificate for the Sensor server in the administrator menu of the Sensor server
Uploading an independently prepared TLS certificate for the Sensor server in the administrator menu of the Sensor server

Downloading the TLS certificate of the Sensor server to your computer
Configuring the integration and trusted connection with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform on the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent side
Getting started with the application
Getting started with the web interface for sizing management
Getting started with the application web interface with a local administrator account
Getting started with the application administrator menu
Getting started with the application in Technical Support Mode
Managing accounts of application administrators and users
Creating an administrator account for the application web interface
Creating a user account for the application web interface
Configuring user account table display
Viewing the user account table
Filtering user accounts
Clearing the account filter
Changing access rights of an application web interface user account
Enabling and disabling an administrator account or user account of the application web interface
Changing the password of an application administrator or user account
Changing the password of your account
Authentication using domain accounts
Creating a keytab file
Configuring integration with Active Directory
Disabling integration with Active Directory
Participation in Kaspersky Security Network and use of Kaspersky Private Security Network
Viewing the KSN Statement and configuring participation in KSN
Enabling the use of KPSN
Configuring a connection to a local reputation database of KPSN
Configuring information to be saved to a local reputation database of KPSN
Declining participation in KSN and use of KPSN
Managing the Sandbox component through the web interface
Updating the Sandbox component databases
Updating databases manually
Selecting a database update source
Enabling and disabling a proxy server for database update
Configuring proxy server connection settings for database update
Configuring connection between the Sandbox and Central Node components
Processing connection requests from the Central Node servers in the Sandbox web interface
Configuring the Sandbox component network interfaces
Configuring DNS settings
Configuring settings of the management network interface
Configuring settings of a network interface used for Internet access of processed objects
Adding, changing and removing static network routes
Updating the Sandbox system
Setting the Sandbox system date and time
Installing and configuring images of operating systems and applications required for the operation of the Sandbox component

- Managing operating system and application images in the Sandbox Storage
  - Viewing the table of operating system and application images in Sandbox Storage
  - Uploading operating system and application images to Storage
  - Activating operating system and application images in Sandbox Storage
  - Deleting operating system and application images from Sandbox Storage
- Managing virtual machine templates
  - Creating a virtual machine template
  - Viewing the table of templates
  - Turning a template on or off
  - Editing a template
  - Configuring the operating system and software
  - Exporting a template
  - Importing a template
  - Deleting a template
- Managing virtual machines
  - Creating a virtual machine
    - Creating a virtual machine in the Virtual machines section
    - Creating a virtual machine in the table of templates
    - Creating a virtual machine in the template view
  - Viewing the table of virtual machines with preset operating systems
  - Viewing the table of virtual machines with custom operating systems
  - Installing a virtual machine
  - Deleting a virtual machine
  - Downloading debug symbols
- Setting the maximum number of simultaneously running virtual machines
- Changing the number of license keys for a virtual machine with a custom operating system image
- Downloading the Sandbox system log to the hard drive
- Exporting Sandbox settings
- Importing Sandbox settings
- Restarting the Sandbox server
- Powering off the Sandbox server
- Changing the Sandbox administrator account password

For administrators: Getting started with the application web interface

- Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Interface
- Monitoring the performance of the application
  - About widgets and layouts
  - Selecting a tenant and a server to manage in the Dashboard section
  - Adding a widget to the current layout
  - Moving a widget in the current layout
  - Removing a widget from the current layout
  - Saving a layout to PDF
  - Configuring the data display period in widgets
  - Monitoring the receipt and processing of incoming data
  - Monitoring the queues for data processing by application modules and components
  - Monitoring the processing of data by the Sandbox component
  - Viewing the working condition of modules and components of the application

Managing Central Node, PCN, or SCN servers using the application web interface
Configuring the date and time on the server
Generating or uploading a TLS certificate of the server
Downloading the TLS certificate of the server
Assigning a server DNS name
Configuring DNS settings
Configuring settings of the network interface
Configuring the default network route
Configuring proxy server connection settings
Configuring the mail server connection
Selecting operating systems to use when scanning objects in Sandbox
Managing the Sensor component
Viewing the table of servers with the Sensor component
Processing a connection request from the Sensor component
Configuring the maximum size of a scanned file
Configuring receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports
Configuring integration with a mail server via SMTP
Configuring TLS encryption of connections with a mail server via SMTP
Enabling and disabling integration with a proxy server via ICAP
Configuring integration with a mail server via POP3
Managing the cluster
Viewing the table of servers of the cluster
Adding a server to a cluster
Increasing the disk space on the storage server
Decommissioning servers
Removing a server from a cluster
Starting up and shutting down the cluster
Notifications about the maximum allowed CPU and RAM load for the Central Node and Sensor servers
Configuring the maximum allowable CPU and RAM load of the Central Node and Sensor servers
Configuring the SNMP protocol connection
Description of MIB objects of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Managing Endpoint Agent host information
Selecting a tenant to manage in the Endpoint Agents section
Viewing the table of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component
Viewing information about a host
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by host name
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component that have been isolated from the network
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by PCN and SCN server names
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by computer IP address
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by operating system version on the computer
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by component version
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by their activity
Quickly creating a filter for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component
Resetting the filter for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component
Removing hosts with the Endpoint Agent component
Configuring activity indicators of the Endpoint Agent component
Supported interpreters and processes

- Configuring integration with the Sandbox component
  - Viewing the table of servers with the Sandbox component
  - Creating a request to connect to the server with the Sandbox component
  - Enabling and disabling a connection with the Sandbox component
  - Deleting a connection with the Sandbox component
- Configuring integration with external systems
  - Viewing the table of external systems
  - Processing a request from an external system
  - Removing an external system from the list of those allowed to integrate
  - Configuring the priority for processing traffic from mail sensors
- Configuring integration with Kaspersky Managed Detection and Response
  - Enabling the MDR integration
  - Disabling the MDR integration
  - Replacing the MDR configuration file
- Configuring integration with an SIEM system
  - Enabling and disabling information logging to a remote log
  - Configuring the main settings for SIEM system integration
  - Uploading a TLS certificate
  - Enabling and disabling TLS encryption of the connection with the SIEM system
  - Content and properties of syslog messages about alerts
- Managing the activity log
  - Enabling and disabling the recording of information in the activity log
  - Downloading the activity log file
  - Content and properties of CEF messages about user activity in the web interface
- Updating application databases
  - Selecting a database update source
  - Updating databases manually
- Creating a list of passwords for archives

For security officers: Getting started with the application web interface

- Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Interface
- Selecting a tenant to manage in the web interface of the application
- Monitoring the performance of the application
  - About widgets and layouts
  - Adding a widget to the current layout
  - Moving a widget in the current layout
  - Removing a widget from the current layout
  - Saving a layout to PDF
  - Configuring the data display period in widgets
  - Configuring the widget display scale
  - Basics of managing "Alerts" type widgets
  - Viewing the working condition of modules and components of the application
- Viewing the alert table
- Configuring the alert table display
- Filtering, sorting, and searching alerts
  - Filtering alerts by VIP status
  - Filtering and searching alerts by time
  - Filtering alerts by level of importance

- Filtering and searching alerts by categories of objects detected
- Filtering and searching alerts by obtained information
- Filtering and searching alerts by source address
- Filtering and searching alerts by destination address
- Filtering and searching alerts by server name
- Filtering and searching alerts by technology name
- Filtering and searching alerts by the status of their processing by the user
- Sorting alerts in the table
- Quickly creating an alert filter
- Clearing an alert filter

Recommendations for processing alerts

- Recommendations for processing AM alerts
- Recommendations for processing TAA alerts
- Recommendations for processing SB alerts
- Recommendations for processing IOC alerts
- Recommendations for processing YARA alerts
- Recommendations for processing IDS alerts

Viewing alerts

- Viewing alert details
  - General information about an alert of any type
  - Information in the Object information section
  - Information in the Alert information section
  - Information in the Scan results section
  - Information in the IDS rule section
  - Information in the Network event section
  - Scan results in Sandbox
  - IOC scan results
  - Information in the Hosts section
  - Information in the Change log section
  - Sending alert data

User actions performed on alerts

- Assigning alerts to a specific user
- Marking the completion of single alert processing
- Marking the completion of alerts processing
- Modifying the status of VIP alerts
- Adding a comment to an alert

Events database threat hunting

- Searching events in design mode
  - Event search criteria
  - Operators
- Searching events in source code mode
- Sorting events in the table
- Changing the event search conditions
- Searching events by processing results in EPP applications
- Uploading an IOC file and searching for events based on conditions defined in the IOC file
- Creating a TAA (IOA) rule based on event search conditions

Event information
Recommendations for processing events
Following a recommendation to isolate a host
Following a recommendation to prevent a file from running
Following a recommendation to create a task
Information about events in the tree of events
Viewing parent process information in the tree of events
Viewing information about events initiated by the parent process in the tree of events
Viewing host information in the tree of events
Viewing the table of events
Configuring the event table display
Viewing information about an event
Information about the "Process started" event
Information about the "Process terminated" event
Information about the "Module loaded" event
Information about the "Remote connection" event
Information about the "Prevention rule" event
Information about the "Document blocked" event
Information about the "File modified" event
Information about the "System event log" event
Information about the "Changes in the registry" event
Information about the "Port listened" event
Information about the "Driver loaded" event
Information about the "Alert" event
Information about the "Alert processing result" event
Information about the "Interpreted file run" event
Information about the "AMSI scan" event
Information about the "Interactive command input at the console" event
Managing Endpoint Agent host information
Viewing the table of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component
Configuring the display of the table of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component
Viewing information about a host
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by host name
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component that have been isolated from the network
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by PCN and SCN server names
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by computer IP address
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by operating system version on the computer
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by component version
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by their activity
Quickly creating a filter for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component
Resetting the filter for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component
Removing hosts with the Endpoint Agent component
Configuring activity indicators of the Endpoint Agent component
Supported interpreters and processes
Network isolation of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component
Creating a network isolation rule
Adding an exclusion from a network isolation rule

Deleting a network isolation rule
Limitations that are relevant to network isolation
Automatically sending files from Kaspersky Endpoint Agent hosts to be scanned by the Sandbox component in accordance with Kaspersky TAA (IOA) rules
Enabling and disabling the automatic sending of files from hosts with the Endpoint Agent component to be scanned by the Sandbox component
Selecting operating systems to use when scanning objects in Sandbox
Viewing the table of servers with the Sandbox component
Selecting operating systems to use when scanning objects in Sandbox
Managing tasks
Viewing the task table
Viewing information about a task
Creating a get file task
Creating a forensic collection task
Creating a registry key retrieval task
Creating an NTFS metafile retrieval task
Creating a process memory dump retrieval task
Creating a disk image retrieval task
Converting a file from RAW to EWF format
Creating a RAM dump retrieval task
Creating a process termination task
Creating a task to scan hosts using YARA rules
Creating a service management task
Creating an application execution task
Creating a file deletion task
Creating a file quarantine task
Creating a quarantined file recovery task
Creating a copy of a task
Deleting tasks
Filtering tasks by creation time
Filtering tasks by type
Filtering tasks by name
Filtering tasks by file name and path
Filtering tasks by description
Filtering tasks by server name
Filtering tasks based on the name of the user that created the task
Filtering tasks by processing status
Clearing a task filter
Managing policies (prevention rules)
Viewing the prevention rule table
Configuring prevention rule table display
Viewing a prevention rule
Creating a prevention rule
Importing prevention rules
Enabling and disabling a prevention rule
Enabling and disabling presets
Deleting prevention rules

Filtering prevention rules by name
Filtering prevention rules by type
Filtering prevention rules by file hash
Filtering prevention rules by server name
Clearing a prevention rule filter
Managing user-defined rules
Using indicators of compromise (IOC) and attack (IOA) for Threat Hunting
Managing user-defined IOC rules
Viewing the table of IOC files
Viewing information about an IOC file
Uploading an IOC file
Downloading an IOC file to a computer
Enabling and disabling the automatic use of an IOC file when scanning hosts
Deleting an IOC file
Searching for alerts in IOC scan results
Searching for events using an IOC file
Filtering and searching IOC files
Clearing an IOC file filter
Configuring an IOC scan schedule
Managing user-defined TAA (IOA) rules
Viewing the TAA (IOA) rule table
Creating a TAA (IOA) rule based on event search conditions
Importing a TAA (IOA) rule
Viewing custom TAA (IOA) rule details
Searching for alerts and events in which TAA (IOA) rules were triggered
Filtering and searching TAA (IOA) rules
Resetting the TAA (IOA) rule filter
Enabling and disabling TAA (IOA) rules
Modifying a TAA (IOA) rule
Deleting TAA (IOA) rules
Managing user-defined IDS rules
Importing a user-defined IDS rule
Viewing the information of a user-defined IDS rule
Enabling and disabling the use of an IDS rule when scanning events
Configuring the importance of alerts generated by the user-defined IDS rule
Replacing a user-defined IDS rule
Exporting a user-defined IDS rule file to the computer
Deleting a user-defined IDS rule
Managing user-defined YARA rules
Viewing the YARA rule table
Configuring YARA rule table display
Importing YARA rules
Viewing YARA rule details
Filtering and searching YARA rules
Clearing a YARA rule filter
Enabling and disabling YARA rules
Deleting YARA rules

Managing objects in Storage and quarantine
- Viewing the table of objects that were placed in Storage
- Viewing information about an object manually placed in Storage using the web interface
- Viewing information about an object placed in Storage by a get file task
- Viewing information about an object placed in Storage by a get data task
- Downloading objects from Storage
- Uploading objects to Storage
- Sending objects in Storage for scanning
- Deleting objects from Storage
- Filtering objects in Storage by object type
- Filtering objects in Storage by object description
- Filtering objects in Storage based on scan results
- Filtering objects in Storage based on the name of Central Node, PCN, or SCN server
- Filtering objects in Storage by object source
- Filtering objects based on the time they were placed in Storage
- Clearing a Storage objects filter
- Viewing the table of objects quarantined on computers with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component
- Viewing information about a quarantined object
- Restoring an object from quarantine
- Obtaining a copy of a quarantined object on a Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server
- Removing information about the quarantined object from the table
- Filtering information about quarantined objects by object type
- Filtering information about quarantined objects by object description
- Filtering information about quarantined objects by host name
- Filtering information about quarantined objects by time
- Resetting the filter for information about quarantined objects

Managing reports
- Viewing the table of templates and reports
- Creating a template
- Creating a report based on a template
- Viewing a report
- Downloading a report to a local computer
- Editing a template
- Filtering templates by name
- Filtering templates based on the name of the user that created the template
- Filtering templates by creation time
- Clearing a template filter
- Deleting a template
- Filtering reports by creation time
- Filtering reports by name
- Filtering reports by the name of the server with the Central Node component
- Filtering reports based on the name of the user that created the report
- Clearing a report filter
- Deleting a report

Managing rules for assigning the VIP status to alerts
- Viewing the table of VIP status assignment rules
- Creating a VIP status assignment rule

Deleting a VIP status assignment rule
Modifying a VIP status assignment rule
Importing a list of VIP status assignment rules
Exporting the list of data excluded from the scan
Filtering and searching by type of VIP status assignment rule
Filtering and searching by value of VIP status assignment rule
Filtering and searching by description of VIP status assignment rule
Clearing a VIP status assignment rule filter
Managing the list of scan exclusions
Viewing the table of data excluded from the scan
Adding a scan exclusion rule
Deleting a scan exclusion rule
Editing a rule added to scan exclusions
Exporting the list of data excluded from the scan
Filtering rules in the scan exclusion list by criterion
Searching rules in the scan exclusion list by value
Resetting the rule filter in the scan exclusion list
Managing IDS exclusions
Viewing the table of IDS rules added to exclusions
Adding an IDS rule to exclusions
Editing the description of an IDS rule added to exclusions
Removing an IDS rule from exclusions
Managing TAA exclusions
Viewing the table of TAA (IOA) rules added to exclusions
Adding a TAA (IOA) rule to exclusions
Viewing a TAA (IOA) rule added to exclusions
Removing a TAA (IOA) rule from exclusions
Creating a list of passwords for archives
Viewing server settings
Viewing the table of servers with the Sandbox component
Viewing the settings of the set of operating systems used for scanning objects in Sandbox
Viewing the table of servers with the Sensor component
Viewing the table of external systems
Managing user-defined Sandbox rules
Viewing the table of user-defined Sandbox rules
Configuring the Sandbox rule table display
Filtering and searching Sandbox rules
Clearing a Sandbox rule filter
Viewing the information of a user-defined Sandbox rule
Creating a user-defined Sandbox rule for scanning files
Creating a user-defined Sandbox rule for URL scanning
Copying a user-defined Sandbox rule
Importing user-defined Sandbox rules for file scanning
Editing a user-defined Sandbox rule
Enabling or disabling user-disabling Sandbox rules
Exporting user-defined Sandbox rules for file scanning

Deleting user-defined Sandbox rules
List of extensions for file categories
Sending notifications
Viewing the table of rules for sending notifications
Creating a rule for sending notifications about alerts
Creating a rule for sending notifications about the operation of application components
Enabling and disabling a rule for sending notifications
Modifying a rule for sending notifications
Deleting a rule for sending notifications
Filtering and searching notification forwarding rules by rule type
Filtering and searching notification forwarding rules based on the notification subject
Filtering and searching notification forwarding rules by email address
Filtering and searching notification forwarding rules based on their status
Clearing a notification forwarding rule filter
Managing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows
Managing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
Installing and removing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
Preparing to install Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
Installing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux using Kaspersky Security Center Administration Console
Installing the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux administration plug-in
Adding devices for installing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
Creating an installation package for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
Remote installation of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux on selected devices
Installing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux using Kaspersky Security Center Web Console
Installing the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent web administration plug-in
Adding devices for installing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
Creating an installation package for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
Remote installation of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux on selected devices
Local installation of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
Updating and restoring Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
Removing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
Managing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux policies using Kaspersky Security Center Administration Console
Managing policies of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
Creating a policy for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
Enabling options in the policy of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
Managing database and module update tasks for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent
Managing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux using Kaspersky Security Center Web Console
Managing policies of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
Creating a policy for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
Enabling options in the policy of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
Managing database and module update tasks for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent
Managing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux using the command line
Verifying the integrity of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux components
Managing Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows
Managing Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux

Creating a backup copy and restoring the application from backup
Creating a backup copy of Central Node server settings from the application administrator menu
Downloading a file containing a backup copy of server settings from the Central Node or PCN server to the hard drive of the computer
Uploading a file containing a backup copy of server settings from your computer to the Central Node server
Restoring server settings from a backup copy using the application administrator menu
Creating a backup copy of the application in Technical Support Mode
Restoring the application from a backup copy in Technical Support Mode
Upgrading Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Upgrading the Central Node component
Upgrading the Sensor component
Contents and amount of information kept when upgrading the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Installing the 5.1.1 application update package
Interaction with external systems via API
Integrating an external system with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
API for scanning objects of external systems
Request to scan objects
Request for scan results
Request to delete scan results
Request to display object scan restrictions
API that external systems can use to receive information about application alerts
Request to display alert information
Scope of transmitted data
Data on detected objects
Data on detected threats
Data on the environment of detected objects
API that external systems can use to receive information about application events
Request for querying event information
Query language for filtering events
Fields for filtering events
API for managing Threat Response actions
Request for getting the list of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component
Request for information about network isolation and the existence of prevention rules for hosts with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component
Host network isolation management
Request to enable network isolation
Request to disable network isolation
Request to add an exclusion to a network isolation rule
Managing prevention rules
Request to create a prevention rule
Request to delete a prevention rule
Managing the application run task
Getting information about a task
Request to create a task
Request to delete a task
Sources of information about the application

Contacting the Technical Support Service
Obtaining information about Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux for Technical Support
How to obtain Technical Support
Technical Support via Kaspersky CompanyAccount
Glossary
Advanced persistent threat (APT)
Alternate data stream
Anti-Malware Engine
Backdoor program
Central Node
Communication channel bandwidth
CSRF attack
Distributed solution
Dump
End User License Agreement
ICAP data
Intrusion Detection System
IOA
IOC
IOC file
Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Kaspersky Private Security Network
Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway
Kaspersky Security Network (KSN)
Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal
KATA
KEDR
Kerberos authentication
Keytab file
Local reputation database of KPSN
Malicious web addresses
MIB (Management Information Base)
Mirrored traffic
MITM attack
MITRE technique
Multitenancy
New generation threats
NTP server
OpenIOC
Phishing URL addresses
Sandbox
Sensor
Service principal name (SPN)
SIEM system
Signature
SPAN
Syslog

TAA (IOA) rule
Targeted attack
Targeted Attack Analyzer
Tenant
TLS encryption
Tracing
VIP status
YARA
YARA rules
Zero-day attack
Zero-day vulnerability
Компонент Endpoint Agent
Information about third-party code
Trademark notices

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Help

New functions

- What's new in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Hardware and software requirements

- Hardware and software requirements
- Compatibility of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows and Linux
- Compatibility of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with the Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows and Linux

Licensing

- Licensing the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Getting started

- Distributed solution and multitenancy
- Sizing the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
- Installation and initial configuration of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
- Configuring the integration of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component

Getting started in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface

- Getting started with the application web interface — For administrators
- Getting started with the application web interface — For security officers

Additional features

- Managing the Sandbox component through the web interface
- Interaction with external systems via API

Update

- Updating the previous version of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Contacting the Technical Support Service

- How to obtain Technical Support

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform (hereinafter also referred to as "the application") is a solution designed for the protection of a corporate IT infrastructure and timely detection of threats such as *zero-day attacks*, *targeted attacks*, and complex targeted attacks known as *advanced persistent threats* (hereinafter also referred to as "*APT*"). The solution is developed for corporate users.

The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform solution includes two functional blocks:

- Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack (hereinafter also referred to as "KATA"), which provides perimeter security for the enterprise IT infrastructure.
- Kaspersky Endpoint Detection and Response (hereinafter also referred to as "KEDR"), which provides protection for the local area network of the organization.

The solution can receive and process data in the following ways:

- Integrate into the local area network, receive and process mirrored *SPAN, ERSPAN and RSPAN traffic*, and extract objects and metadata from the HTTP, FTP, SMTP, and DNS protocols.
- Connect to the proxy server via the ICAP protocol, receive and process data of HTTP and FTP traffic, as well as HTTPS traffic if the administrator has configured SSL certificate replacement on the proxy server.
- Connect to the mail server via the POP3 (S) and SMTP protocols, receive and process copies of e-mail messages.
- Integrate with Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway and Kaspersky Security for Linux Mail Server, receive, and process copies of email messages.

  For detailed information on Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway and Kaspersky Security for Linux Mail Server, please refer to the documentation of these applications.
- Integrate with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent and Kaspersky Endpoint Security and receive data (*events*) from individual computers running Microsoft® Windows® and Linux® operating systems in the corporate IT infrastructure. These applications continuously monitor processes running on those computers, active network connections, and files that are modified.
- Integrate with external systems with the use of the REST API interface and scan files on these systems.

The solution uses the following means of Threat Intelligence:

- Infrastructure of Kaspersky Security Network (also referred to as "KSN") cloud services that provides access to the online Knowledge Base of Kaspersky, which contains information about the reputation of files, web resources, and software. The use of data from Kaspersky Security Network ensures faster responses by Kaspersky applications to threats, improves the performance of some protection components, and reduces the likelihood of false alarms.
- Integration with Kaspersky Private Security Network (KPSN) to access the reputation databases of Kaspersky Security Network and other statistical data without sending data from user computers to Kaspersky Security Network.
- Integration with the Kaspersky information system known as Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal, which contains and displays information about the reputation of files and URLs.
- The Kaspersky Threats database.

The solution can detect the following events that occur within the corporate IT infrastructure:

- A file has been downloaded or an attempt was made to download a file to a corporate LAN computer.
- A file has been sent to the email address of a user on the corporate LAN.
- A website link was opened on a corporate LAN computer.
- Network activity has occurred in which the IP address or domain name of a corporate LAN computer was detected.
- Processes have been started on a corporate LAN computer.

The application can provide the results of its operation and Threat Intelligence to the user in the following ways:

- Display the results of work done in the web interface of the Central Node, Primary Central Node (hereinafter also PCN) or Secondary Central Node (hereinafter also SCN) servers.
- Publish alerts to a SIEM system already being used in your organization via the Syslog protocol.
- Integrate with external systems via the REST API and send information on alerts generated by the solution to external systems on demand.
- Publish information on Sandbox component alerts in the local reputation database of Kaspersky Private Security Network.

Users with the **Senior security officer** or **Security officer** role can perform the following actions in the application:

- Monitor the components of the solution.
- View the table of detected signs of targeted attacks and intrusions into the corporate IT infrastructure, filter and search alerts, view and manage each alert, and follow recommendations for evaluating and investigating incidents.
- Look through the table of events occurring on computers and servers of the corporate IT infrastructure, search for threats, filter, view and manage each event, follow recommendations for evaluating and investigating incidents.
- Run tasks on computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent and Kaspersky Endpoint Security: run applications and stop processes, download and delete files, quarantine objects on computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent and Kaspersky Endpoint Security, place copies of files in Storage of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, and restore files from Quarantine.
- Set up policies for preventing the running of files and processes that they consider to be unsafe on selected computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent and Kaspersky Endpoint Security.
- Isolate individual computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent and Kaspersky Endpoint Security from the network.
- Work with TAA (IOA) rules to classify and analyze events.
- Manage user-defined Targeted Attack Analyzer TAA (IOA), Intrusion Detection System (IDS), and YARA rules — upload rules to be used for scanning events and creating alerts.
- Work with OpenIOC compliant files (IOC files) to search for signs of targeted attacks, infected and probably infected objects on hosts with the Endpoint Agent component and in the Alerts database.

- Exclude TAA (IOA) rules and IDS rules defined by Kaspersky from scanning.
- Manage objects in quarantine and copies of objects in Storage.
- Manage reports about application performance and alerts.
- Configure the sending of notifications about alerts and problems encountered by the application to email addresses of users.
- Manage the list of VIP alerts and the list of data excluded from the scan, and populate the local reputation database of KPSN.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can perform the following actions in the application:

- Monitor the components of the solution.
- View the table of detected signs of targeted attacks and intrusions into the enterprise IT infrastructure, filter and search alerts, and view the data of each alert.
- Look through the table of events occurring on the computers and servers of the enterprise IT infrastructure, search for threats, filter and view each event.
- View the list of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component and information about selected hosts.
- View the custom rules for Targeted Attack Analyzer TAA (IOA), Intrusion Detection System (IDS), and YARA.
- View the scan-excluded TAA (IOA) rules and IDS rules defined by Kaspersky experts.
- View reports about application performance and alerts.
- View the list of VIP alerts and the list of data excluded from the scan.
- View all settings made in the application web interface.

Users with the **Local administrator** or **Administrator** role can perform the following actions in the application:

- Edit application settings.
- Configure servers for the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
- Set up the integration of the application with other applications and systems.
- Manage TLS certificates and set up trusted connections between the Central Node server and the Sandbox server, between Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform servers and the Endpoint Agent component, and with external systems.
- Manage accounts of application users.
- Monitor application health.

What's new

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform now includes the following new functionality and fixes:

1. For the Sandbox component, installing custom images of Windows operating systems and analyzing objects in prepared custom environments is now supported.

   You can configure custom operating system images. For example, set the name of the computer, choose a localization, create users, install and configure specific software.

   For the application to send objects for scanning in these operating systems, you must create user-defined Sandbox rules.

2. Now you can use an API to send information about events logged on computers with the Endpoint Agent component to external systems.

3. The role of the Endpoint Agent component can now be filled not only by the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application, but also by Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.1 for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4 for Linux with built-in support of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Changes in Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.14 for Windows:

You can view the list of changes in Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.14 for Windows in the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows Online Help.

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.12 for Linux has the following changes:

Managing the Kaspersky Managed Detection and Response solution is no longer supported. It is not recommended to use Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux with this solution. To work with Kaspersky Managed Detection and Response, use Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux.

Changes in Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.1 for Windows:

You can view the list of changes in Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.1 for Windows in the Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows Online Help.

Changes in Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4.0 for Linux:

You can view the list of changes in Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4.0 for Linux in the Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux Online Help.

About Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal

For additional information about files that you consider to be suspicious, you can go to the website of the Kaspersky application Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal, which analyzes each file for malicious code and shows information about the reputation of the file.

Access to the Kaspersky Threat Intelligence application is provided for a fee. Authorization on the application website requires that an application access certificate is installed in the certificate storage on your computer. In addition, you must have a user name and password for access to the application.

For more details about the Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal, please visit the Kaspersky website.

Distribution kit

The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform distribution kit includes the following files:

1. Disk image (file with the iso extension) containing the installation files for the Ubuntu® Server 20.04.5 operating system and for the Sensor and Central Node components.
2. Disk image (file with the iso extension) containing the installation files for the CentOS 7.9 operating system and for the Sandbox component.
3. Disk images (.iso files) of operating systems in which the Sandbox component runs files.
4. Update package (*tar.gz*.) for the Central Node component.
5. The kata_images.py file for activating operating system images in which the Sandbox component runs files.
6. File with information about third-party code used in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent distribution kit includes the following files:

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent distribution kit

File	Description
`agent\endpointagent.msi`	Kaspersky Endpoint Agent installation package.
`agent\endpointagent.kud`	File for creating Kaspersky Endpoint Agent installation package using Kaspersky Security Center.
`agent\klcfginst.msi`	Installation package for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent Management administration plug-in for Kaspersky Security Center.

File	Description
agent\kpd.loc\en-us.ini	Configuration file required for creating installation package for English version of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using Kaspersky Security Center.
agent\kpd.loc\ru-ru.ini	Configuration file required for creating installation package for Russian version of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using Kaspersky Security Center.
agent\en-us\ksn.txt	File with the text of the terms of participation in Kaspersky Security Network in English.
agent\en-us\license.txt	File with the text of the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy in English.
agent\en-us\release_notes.txt	File with the text of the Release Notes for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in English.
agent\ru-ru\ksn.txt	File with the text of the terms of participation in Kaspersky Security Network in Russian.
agent\ru-ru\license.txt	File with the text of the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy in Russian.
agent\ru-ru\release_notes.txt	File with the text of the Release Notes for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in Russian.

Hardware and software requirements

Hardware and software requirements for servers for installing Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Deploying the application on a virtual platform requires installing the VMware ESXi™ hypervisor version 6.7.0 or 7.0.

> For the application to work correctly in a virtual environment, you must install an up-to-date update package for the hypervisor.

For the Central Node, Sensor and Sandbox hardware requirements see the Sizing Guide.

Hardware requirements for installing the Endpoint Agent component

The Endpoint Agent component can be represented by the following applications:

- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows
- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
- Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows
- Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux

For hardware requirements of the applications, see the Online Help of the relevant application: Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows, Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux, Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows, Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux.

Hardware and software requirements for using the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

One of the following browsers must be installed on the computers in order to configure and manage the application using the web interface:

- Mozilla™ Firefox™ for Linux.
- Mozilla Firefox for Windows.
- Google™ Chrome™ for Windows.
- Google Chrome for Linux.
- Edge (Windows).
- Safari (Mac).

Minimum screen resolution to use web interface: 1366x768.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions

The Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application uses predefined settings that determine the impact that it has on the performance of the local computer under scenarios of information retrieval and interaction with the Central Node component.

If the version of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform installed on Central Node servers is incompatible with the version of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent installed on computers on the corporate LAN, the functionality of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform may be limited.

Information about the compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions is listed in the table below.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions

Version Kaspersky Endpoint Agent	Type Kaspersky Endpoint Agent	Compatibility with KATA 3.7	Compatibility with KATA 3.7.1	Compatibility with KATA 3.7.2	Compatibility with KATA 4.0	Compatibility with KATA 4.1	Compatibility with KATA 5.0	Compatibility with KATA 5.1
Endpoint Agent 3.7	Standalone installation or as part of KES versions 11.2 and 11.3	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
Endpoint Agent 3.8	Standalone installation	Yes	Yes	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	No

Version Kaspersky Endpoint Agent	Type Kaspersky Endpoint Agent	Compatibility with KATA 3.7	Compatibility with KATA 3.7.1	Compatibility with KATA 3.7.2	Compatibility with KATA 4.0	Compatibility with KATA 4.1	Compatibility with KATA 5.0	Compatibility with KATA 5.1
Endpoint Agent 3.9	Standalone installation or as part of EPP applications	Yes	Yes	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	No
Endpoint Agent 3.10	Standalone installation or as part of EPP applications	No	There are limitations	Yes	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	No
Endpoint Agent 3.11	Standalone installation or as part of KES version 11.7	No	There are limitations	Yes	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	No
Endpoint Agent 3.12	Standalone installation	No	No	No	Yes	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations
Endpoint Agent 3.13	Standalone installation	No	No	No	There are limitations	Yes	There are limitations	There are limitations
Endpoint Agent 3.14	Standalone installation	No	No	No	There are limitations	There are limitations	Yes	Yes
Endpoint Agent 3.15	Standalone installation	No	No	No	No	No	No	Yes

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows versions with EPP applications

If you want to use the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application as the Endpoint Agent component, you can install just the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent, or configure the integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent with workstation protection applications (Endpoint Protection Platform, hereinafter also "EPP"), Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows, Kaspersky Security for Windows Server, and Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent. If the integration of applications is configured, Kaspersky Endpoint Agent also sends the information about threats detected by EPP applications and their processing results to the Central Node server.

The integration scenarios described above do not work when Kaspersky Endpoint Agent is installed on a virtual desktop in Virtual Desktop Infrastructure.

Integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent with Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows and Kaspersky Security for Windows Server requires installing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent as part of those applications.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows with versions of Kaspersky Security for Windows Server

You can install the following versions of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent as part of Kaspersky Security for Windows Server:

- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.9 as part of Kaspersky Security 11 for Windows Server.
- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.10 as part of Kaspersky Security 11.0.1 for Windows Server.

When you install Kaspersky Endpoint Agent as part of Kaspersky Security for Windows Server, the standalone Kaspersky Endpoint Agent of the same or earlier version is removed. If Kaspersky Endpoint Agent installed as part of Kaspersky Security for Windows Server has an earlier version, it will not be installed. In this case, you must first remove the standalone Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application.

If necessary, you can upgrade the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application that is already installed as part of Kaspersky Security for Windows Server. Integration between compatible versions of the applications is maintained both when Kaspersky Endpoint Agent is upgraded and when Kaspersky Security for Windows Server is upgraded.

Information about the compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent versions with Kaspersky Security for Windows Server versions is listed in the table below.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent versions with Kaspersky Security for Windows Server versions

Kaspersky Security for Windows Server version	Compatibility with Endpoint Agent 3.8, 3.9, 3.10	Compatibility with Endpoint Agent 3.11, 3.12	Compatibility with Endpoint Agent 3.13, 3.14, 3.15
• KSWS 10.1.2	Yes	No	No
• KSWS 11	Yes	Yes	No
• KSWS 11.0.1	No	Yes	There are limitations

For more details about installing Kaspersky Security for Windows Server, see Kaspersky Security for Windows Server Help.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows with versions of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows

You can install the following versions of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent (Endpoint Sensors) as part of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows:

- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.7 or Kaspersky Endpoint Agent (Endpoint Sensors) 3.6.1 as part of Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.2, 11.3 for Windows.

  Kaspersky Endpoint Agent (Endpoint Sensors) 3.6.1 is not compatible with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform version 4.1 or higher.

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.7 is not compatible with all versions of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.9 as part of Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4, 11.5.
- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.10 as part of Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.6.
- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.11 as part of Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.7, 11.8.

When you install Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.10 or later as part of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows, the standalone Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application of the same or earlier version is removed. If the separately installed Kaspersky Endpoint Agent has a later version, the application bundled with Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows is not installed. In this case, you must first remove the standalone Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application.

If necessary, you can upgrade the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application that is already installed as part of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows. Integration between compatible versions of the applications is maintained both when Kaspersky Endpoint Agent is upgraded and when Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows is upgraded. You can upgrade a previous version of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent to version 3.14 only for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent version 3.7 or higher.

Information about the compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent versions with Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows versions is listed in the table below.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent versions with Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows versions

Kaspersky Endpoint Security version	Compatibility with Endpoint Agent 3.8, 3.9	Compatibility with Endpoint Agent 3.10, 3.12	Compatibility with Endpoint Agent 3.11	Compatibility with Endpoint Agent 3.13, 3.14	Compatibility with Endpoint Agent 3.15
• KES 10 SP2 MR2	No	No	No	No	No
• KES 10 SP2 MR3/MR4	Yes	No	No	No	No
• KES 11.0.0	No	No	No	No	No
• KES 11.0.1	Yes	No	No	No	No
• KES 11.1 • KES 11.1.1	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
• KES 11.2 • KES 11.3	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
• KES 11.4 • KES 11.5	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
• KES 11.6 • KES 11.7 • KES 11.8	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• KES 12.1	No	No	No	No	No
• KES 12.2	No	No	No	No	No

For more details about installing Kaspersky Endpoint Security, see Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows Help.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent with versions of Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent

You can configure the integration of separately installed Kaspersky Endpoint Agent and Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent.

Information about the compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent versions with Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent versions is listed in the table below.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent versions and Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent versions

Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent version	Compatibility with Endpoint Agent 3.8, 3.9, 3.10	Compatibility with Endpoint Agent 3.12	Compatibility with Endpoint Agent 3.11, 3.13, 3.14, 3.15
• KSV 5.1 LA	Yes	Yes	No
• KSV 5.1.1 LA	Yes	No	No
• KSV 5.2 LA	No	Yes	Yes

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent and Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent installed on a virtual machine generate the same load on the Central Node server as Kaspersky Endpoint Agent and Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent installed on the host.

For more details about enabling the integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent with Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent, see Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent Help.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent with versions of Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Nodes

You can install Kaspersky Endpoint Agent on a device with Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Nodes installed. The applications are integrated automatically.

Integration is supported only for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent version 3.14 and Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Nodes version 3.1. Integration between other versions of the applications is not supported.

To integrate with Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Nodes, the corresponding license key must be installed in the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.

For detailed information, you can contact your account manager.

Requirements for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux

This section describes hardware and software requirements of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.12 for Linux.

Software requirements for installing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.12 for Linux

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.12 only works on computers that have one of the following operating systems installed:

- Ubuntu® 16.04 LTS or later
- Ubuntu 18.04 LTS or later
- Ubuntu 20.04 LTS
- Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® 7.2 or later
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8.0 or later
- CentOS 7.2 or later
- CentOS 8.0 or later
- Debian GNU / Linux 9.4 or later
- Debian GNU / Linux 10.1 or later
- Debian GNU / Linux 11 or later
- Oracle® Linux 7.3 or later
- Oracle Linux 8 or later
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 or later
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 15
- Astra Linux Special Edition RUSB.10015-01 (regular update 1.6)
- Astra Linux Special Edition RUSB.10015-01 (regular update 1.7)
- Astra Linux Special Edition RUSB.10015-16 (variant 1) (regular update 1.6)
- Astra Linux Common Edition (regular update 2.12)
- Alt 8 SP Server
- Alt Server 9
- Alt Workstation 9
- Goslinux 7.17
- RED OS 7.3

Hardware requirements for installing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.12 for Linux

Minimum hardware requirements:

- CPU: 2 GHz.
- RAM: 512 MB.
- Available disk space: 1 GB.

Required software

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux requires Linux Audit Daemon 2.8 or later. Installed on hosts with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.12 for Linux with Kaspersky EPP applications

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.12 supports integration with Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.1, 11.2 for Linux.

Integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.12 for Linux with other Kaspersky applications

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.12 can be integrated with the following Kaspersky applications and solutions:

- Kaspersky Security Center 13, 13.2.
- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent administration plug-in 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.
- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent web plug-in 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions

Information about the compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions is listed in the table below.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions

Version of Endpoint Agent	Type of Endpoint Agent	Compatibility with KATA 3.6.1	Compatibility with KATA 3.7, 3.7.1	Compatibility with KATA 3.7.2	Compatibility with KATA 4.0	Compatibility with KATA 4.1, 5.0, 5.1
Endpoint Agent 3.9	Standalone installation or part of KES version 11.1	No	No	Yes	Yes	No
Endpoint Agent 3.12	Standalone installation	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux versions with EPP applications

You can use Kaspersky Endpoint Agent alone or configure the integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent with the workstation protection application (Endpoint Protection Platform, hereinafter also called EPP) Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux. If the integration is configured, Kaspersky Endpoint Agent also sends the information about threats detected by this application and the results of threat processing to the Central Node server.

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.9 and 3.12 are compatible with the following versions of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux: 11.1, 11.2.

For more details about installing Kaspersky Endpoint Security, see *Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux Help*.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux versions with other applications

Integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.12 for Linux with other Kaspersky applications

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.12 can be integrated with the following Kaspersky applications and solutions:

- Kaspersky Security Center versions 12.1 and 12.2.
- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent administration plug-in 3.10.
- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent web plug-in 3.10.

Integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.12 for Linux with other Kaspersky applications

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.12 can be integrated with the following Kaspersky applications and solutions:

- Kaspersky Security Center 13, 13.2.
- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent administration plug-in 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.
- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent web plug-in 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions

You can use Kaspersky Endpoint Security as the Endpoint Agent component.

Information about the compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Security versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions is listed in the table below.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions

Kaspersky Endpoint Security version	Compatibility with KATA 3.7	Compatibility with KATA 3.7.1	Compatibility with KATA 3.7.2	Compatibility with KATA 4.0	Compatibility with KATA 4.1	Compatibility with KATA 5.0	Compatibility with KATA 5.1
Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.1	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.2	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes

To integrate Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.1 with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, you do not need to install Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions

You can use Kaspersky Endpoint Security as a component of Endpoint Agent.

Information about the compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Security versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions is listed in the table below.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions

Kaspersky Endpoint Security version	Compatibility with KATA 3.7	Compatibility with KATA 3.7.1	Compatibility with KATA 3.7.2	Compatibility with KATA 4.0	Compatibility with KATA 4.1	Compatibility with KATA 5.0	Compatibility with KATA 5.1
Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4	No	No	No	No	No	No	Yes

To integrate Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4 with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, you do not need to install Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.

Restrictions

Restrictions that apply when deploying the Central Node component as a cluster:

1. A Central Node cluster must include at least 4 servers: 2 storage servers and 2 processing servers. You can scale the cluster to increase the amount of traffic handled or the number of connected hosts in accordance with the Sizing Guide.
2. It is recommended to add servers with the same hardware configuration to the cluster. Otherwise, a proportional increase in performance is not guaranteed.
3. Adding an extra server to the cluster does not speed up the processing of objects that are already in the scan queue.
4. The web interface of the application can be temporarily unavailable if the server on which it is hosted fails.
5. If the processing server fails, you may lose ICAP, POP3, and SMTP traffic data as well as the copies of emails that are waiting to be processed and the detections associated with them.
6. If the processing server is configured to receive mirrored traffic from SPAN ports, then SPAN traffic is not processed if this server fails.
7. If one of the cluster servers fails or the connection between the server and the Endpoint Agent component is temporarily lost, data in the event database can temporarily become desynchronized.
8. If the configuration of the cluster servers is changed, processing of traffic and events from computers with the Endpoint Agent component may be temporarily slowed down.

Restrictions that apply to the Sandbox component:

1. The following versions of operating systems are supported for custom images:
   - Windows XP SP3 or later
   - Windows 7

- Windows 8.1 64-bit
- Windows 10 64-bit (up to version 1909)

2. Only English and Russian localizations are fully supported for custom operating system images.
3. License keys for activating the operating systems and software in custom images are not provided.
4. If the set of operating systems installed on the Sandbox server does not match the set selected on the Central Node server, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not send objects to be scanned by the Sandbox server. If multiple Sandbox servers are connected to the Central Node server, the application sends objects to those Sandbox servers whose installed operating systems match the set selected on Central Node.

Limitations that apply when integrating with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.1 for Windows:

1. Tasks for getting RAM dumps and disk images can only be assigned to computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.14 for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.1 for Windows.
2. Tasks for getting process memory dumps, NTFS metafiles, and registry keys can only be assigned to computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.13 or later for Windows or Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.1 for Windows.
3. The task of scanning hosts using YARA rules can only be assigned to computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.12 or later for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.1 for Windows. If you simultaneously assign a task to computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent version 3.12 or later, and to computers with earlier versions of that application, the task runs only on computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.12 or later.
4. If autorun points are selected as the scan scope, the task runs only on computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.13 or later and Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.1 for Windows.

Limitations that apply when integrating with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.12 for Linux and Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4 for Linux:

1. Computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux and Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4 for Linux, the following functionality is not available:
   - Network isolation of a host.
   - Creating a prevention rule.

     The application does not create notifications about failing to apply a prevention rule on computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux and Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4 for Linux.
   - Finding indicators of compromise on hosts using IOC files.

     The application does not create notifications about failing find indicators of compromise on computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux and Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4 for Linux.

2. The **OS name** field in event information is only filled in for events that are logged in the events database by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux and Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4 for Linux. Event information for events logged in the event database by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.1 for Windows does not have this field filled in.

3. The list of events that Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux and Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4 for Linux log in the event database is limited to the following types:

   - **File modified**
   - **Process started**
   - **System event log**
   - **Scan: detect**
   - **Scan: detect processing result**

4. The tasks that you can create on computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux version 11.4 are limited to the following types:

   - Get file.
   - Run application

     When you create the task, the application does not attempt to verify the path to the executable file or the file that you want to retrieve.

5. In information about events registered in the events database by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux and Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4 for Linux, the **Time created** field displays file modification time.

Limitations of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.14 for Windows:

You can view the list of limitations of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.14 for Windows in the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows Online Help.

Limitations of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.12 for Linux:

1. Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux does not support AppArmor and SELinux mandatory access control systems in their enforcing modes. For the application to work correctly, these systems must be switched to permissive mode.

2. Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux requires installing Linux Audit Daemon 2.8 or later on the device.

3. For connection of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux with Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux, rsyslog service with loaded imuxsock module is used. To check if the module is loaded in the rsyslog service configuration, run the following command: grep -r imuxsock /etc/rsyslog*. If the module loading string is commented, remove the # comment sign before the string and restart rsyslog service to save the changes.

Limitations of Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.1 for Windows:

You can view the list of limitations of Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.1 for Windows in the Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows Online Help.

Limitations of Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4.0 for Linux:

You can view the list of limitations of Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4.0 for Linux in the Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux Release Notes.

Data provision

The operation of certain components of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform requires data processing on the Kaspersky side. Components do not send data without the consent of the administrator of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

You can view the list of data and the terms on which it is used as well as give consent to data processing in the following agreements between your organization and Kaspersky:

- In the End User License Agreement (for example, during installation of the application).

  According to the terms of the End User License Agreement, you agree to automatically send Kaspersky the information listed in the End User License Agreement under Data Provision. The End User License Agreement is included in the application distribution kit.

- In the KSN Statement (for example, during installation of the application or in the administrator menu after installation).

  When you participate in Kaspersky Security Network, information obtained as a result of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform operation is automatically sent to Kaspersky. The list of transmitted data is specified in the KSN Statement. The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user independently decides on his/her participation in KSN. The KSN Statement is included in the application distribution kit.

  Before KSN statistics are sent to Kaspersky, they are accumulated in the cache on servers hosting Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform components.

Kaspersky protects any information received in this way as prescribed by law and applicable rules of Kaspersky. Data is sent over encrypted communication channels.

When using Kaspersky Private Security Network, Kaspersky is not sent information about the operation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. However, KSN statistical data is accumulated in the cache on servers hosting Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform components to the same extent as when using Kaspersky Security Network. This accumulated KSN statistical data may be transmitted beyond the perimeter of your organization if a server with the Kaspersky Private Security Network application is located outside of your organization.

The Kaspersky Private Security Network administrator must personally ensure the security of such data.

Service data of the application

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform resources provide no capability to restrict the rights of the users of servers and operating systems to which the Central Node component is installed. The administrator is advised to use any system resources at their own discretion to control how the users of servers and operating systems with the application installed may be granted access to the personal data of other users.

Service data of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform include:

- Data on user accounts.
- Information about computers connected to the Central Node component on which the Endpoint Agent component is installed.
- Data about presets and prevention rules.
- Information about tasks assigned to computers with the Endpoint Agent component.
- Data about TAA (IOA) user-defined rules.
- Data about user IDS user-defined rules.
- Data about IOC user-defined rules.
- Data on network isolation rules.
- Data about scan exclusions.
- Data on report templates.
- Information about Endpoint Agent component certificates.

  The above data is stored indefinitely on the server hosting the Central Node component in the `/ data` directory if the Central Node component is installed on the server. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, data is stored on storage servers indefinitely.

- System event log

  OS log files are stored indefinitely in the `/var/log` directory on the server hosting the Central Node component.

- Log with information about the application operation.

  The log file is stored indefinitely in the `/data` directory on the server hosting the Central Node component, if the component is installed on the server. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, data is stored on storage servers indefinitely.

- File scan queue.

  Files are stored on the server hosting the Central Node component in the `/data` directory if the component is installed on the server. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, data is stored on storage servers. The data is retained until the scan is completed.

- Files received from computers with the Endpoint Agent component.

  Files are stored on the server hosting the Central Node component in the `/data` directory if the component is installed on the server. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, data is stored on storage servers. Data is rotated when disk space becomes full.

- Files with YARA and IDS rules (user-defined and from Kaspersky).

  Files are stored indefinitely in the `/data` directory on the server hosting the Central Node component, if the component is installed on the server. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, data is stored on storage servers indefinitely.

- Files with data about alerts sent to external systems.

  Files are stored indefinitely on the server hosting the Central Node component in the `/data` directory if the component is installed on the server. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, data is stored on storage servers indefinitely.

- Artifacts of the Sandbox component.

  Files are stored on the server hosting the Central Node component in the `/data` directory if the component is installed on the server. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, data is stored on storage servers. Data is rotated when disk space becomes full.

- Files for which alerts were created by the Sandbox component.

  Files are stored on the server hosting the Central Node component in the `/data` directory if the component is installed on the server. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, data is stored on storage servers. Data is rotated when disk space becomes full.

- Certificate files used for the authentication of application components.

  Files are stored indefinitely in the `/var/log` directory on the server hosting the Central Node, PCN, SCN, Sensor component or on the computer with the Endpoint Agent component.

- Encryption keys that are transmitted between application components.

  Files are stored indefinitely in the `/var/log` directory on the server hosting the Central Node, PCN, SCN, Sensor component or on the computer with the Endpoint Agent component.

The application stores the following information about user accounts:

- Account ID.
- Account name.
- The hash and salt of the account password.
- Domain name of the user.
- Account role.
- Account status.
- Access rights to tenants in distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
- ID of the tenant in distributed solution and multitenancy mode.

The application stores the following information about computers connected to the Central Node component on which the Endpoint Agent component is installed:

- ID of the computer assigned by Kaspersky Security Center.
- Computer name.
- IP address of the computer.
- The operating system used on the computer.
- The version of the application that fills the role of the component.

- Self-Defense status.
- Date and time when the first and last telemetry packet were sent to the Central Node component.
- Date and time of the last IOC scan run.
- Result of the last IOC scan run.

The application stores the following information about the prevention rules:

- MD5 or SHA256 hash of the file that is prevented from running.
- The account name of the user who created the prevention rule.
- The account name of the user who changed the prevention rule.
- List of computers on which the file is prevented from running.
- Prevention rules change log.

The application stores the following information about tasks assigned to computers with the Endpoint Agent component:

- Task type.
- Computer name.
- IP address of the computer.
- Task creation date and time.
- Task expiration date.
- Name of the user account that created the task.
- Task settings data.
- Task report data.
- Task comments.

The application stores the following information about TAA (IOA) user-defined rules:

- Rule name.
- Source code of the request being scanned.
- Rule ID.
- Rule status.
- Rule creation date and time.

- The importance that was specified when the rule was added.
- Level of confidence that depends on the likelihood of false alarms as defined by the user when the rule was added.

The application stores the following information about IDS user-defined rules:

- Account name of the user who uploaded the rules file.

The application stores the following information about IOC user-defined rules:

- Account name of the user who uploaded the rules file.
- Name of the IOC file.
- Contents of the IOC file.

The application stores the following information about network isolation rules:

- Account name of the user that enabled network isolation.
- ID of the isolated computer.
- Rule name.
- Rule status.
- List of resources excluded from network isolation.

The application stores the following information about scan exclusions:

- Account name of the user that added the exception.
- List of objects excluded from the scan.
- Rule exception ID.

The application stores the following information about report templates:

- ID of the user account that created or modified the template.
- Template creation date.
- Date of last modification of the template.
- Text of the template as HTML code.

The application stores the following information about Endpoint Agent component certificates:

- Account name of the user who uploaded the certificate file.
- Digest of the certificate.
- Serial number of the certificate.
- Public key.

Data of the Central Node and Sensor components

This section contains the following information about user data that is stored on the server with the Central Node component and on the server with the Sensor component:

- Contents of stored data
- Storage location
- Storage duration
- User access to data

Traffic data of the Sensor component

Traffic data of the Sensor component is stored on the server with the Sensor component or on the server with Sensor and Central Node components if Sensor and Central Node are installed on the same server or deployed as a cluster.

Traffic data is recorded and stored in sequentially created files. The application stops recording data in one file and starts logging data in the next file if:

- The maximum file size is reached (you can configure this setting)
- The configured time interval has elapsed (you can configure this setting)
- The traffic saving service or the entire Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform application is restarted

As traffic data accrues, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform filters data and keeps only the following information:

- Information related to alerts generated by the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology
- PCAP files in which:
  - Source or destination IP address matches an IP address from the alert
  - Traffic data belongs to the time period within 15 minutes from the alert time

Filtered traffic data is moved to a separate section. The rest of the traffic data (that do not satisfy filtering criteria) is deleted.

Filtered traffic data is saved in sequentially created files. The application stops recording data in one file and starts logging data in the next file if:

- The maximum file size is reached
- The configured time interval has elapsed

Filtered data traffic is stored for the last 24 hours. Older data is deleted.

Data in alerts

Alerts may contain user data. If the Central Node component is installed on the server, information about alerts and files that resulted in an alert are stored on the server hosting the Central Node component in the `/data/var/lib/kaspersky/storage/pgsql/10/data/` directory. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, information about alerts and files that resulted in an alert are stored on the storage servers.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform resources provide no capability to restrict the rights of the users of servers and operating systems to which the Central Node component is installed. The administrator is advised to use any system resources at their own discretion to control how the users of servers and operating systems with the application installed may be granted access to the personal data of other users.

The following information is stored in all alerts:

- Alert time.
- Category of the detected object.
- Name of the detected file.
- Detected URL.
- MD5 and SHA256 hash of the detected file.
- User comments added to the alert information.
- ID of the TAA rule by which the alert was generated.
- IP address and name of the computer on which the alert was generated.
- ID of the computer on which the alert was generated.

When an alert is changed, the following information is stored on the server:

- The user account that modified the alert.
- The user account to which the alert was assigned.
- Date and time of alert modification.

If an email message was detected, the following information may be stored on the server:

- Email addresses of the sender and recipients of the message, including the recipients of copies and blind carbon copies of the message.
- Subject of the email message.
- Date and time when the message was received by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, with precision up to the second.
- All service headers of the message (as they appear in the message).

If the alert was generated by URL Reputation technology, the following information may be stored on the server:

- Name of the computer from which the data was sent.
- Name of the computer that received the data.
- The IP address of the computer from which the data was sent.
- The IP address of the computer that received the data.
- The URI of the transferred resource.
- Information about the proxy server.
- Unique ID of the email message.
- Email addresses of the sender and recipients of the message (including the recipients of copies and blind carbon copies of the message).
- Subject of the email message.
- Date and time when the message was received by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, with precision up to the second.
- List of detected objects.
- Time of network connection.
- URL of network connection.

If the alert was generated by Intrusion Detection System technology, the following information may be stored on the server:

- Name of the computer from which the data was sent.
- Name of the computer that received the data.
- The IP address of the computer from which the data was sent.
- The IP address of the computer that received the data.
- Transmitted data.
- Data transfer time.
- URL extracted from the file containing the traffic, User Agent, and method.
- File containing the traffic where the alert occurred.

If the alert was generated using YARA rules, the following information can be stored on the server:

- Version of YARA rules that was used to generate the alert.
- Category of the detected object.

- Name of the detected object.
- MD5 hash of the detected object.

If the alert was generated using the Sandbox component, the following information may be stored on the server:

- Version of the application databases used to generate the alert.
- Category of the detected object.
- Names of detected objects.
- MD5 hashes of detected objects.
- Information about detected objects.

If the alert was generated by IOC or TAA (IOA) user rules, the following information can be stored on the server:

- Date and time of scan completion.
- IDs of the computers on which the alert was generated.
- Name of TAA (IOA) rule.
- Name of the IOC file.
- Information about detected objects.

If the alert was generated by Anti-Malware Engine technology, the following information may be stored on the server:

- Versions of databases of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform components that were used to generate the alert.
- Category of the detected object.
- List of detected objects.
- MD5 hash of detected objects.
- Additional information about the alert.

Data in events

Events may contain user data. If the Central Node component is installed on the server, information about occurred events is stored on the server with the component in the `/data/var/lib/kaspersky/storage/fastsearch/elasticsearch/data/` directory. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, information is stored on storage servers.

Data is rotated as the disk becomes full.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform resources provide no capability to restrict the rights of the users of servers and operating systems to which the Central Node component is installed. The administrator is advised to use any system resources at their own discretion to control how the users of servers and operating systems with the application installed may be granted access to the personal data of other users.

Event data can contain information related to the following:

- Name of the computer where the event occurred.
- Unique ID of the computer with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.
- Name of the user account under which the event occurred.
- Name of the group that the user belongs to.
- Event type.
- Event time.
- Information about the file for which the event was logged: name, path, full name.
- MD5 and SHA256 hash of the file.
- File creation time.
- File modification time.
- File access rights.
- Environment variables of the process.
- Command-line parameters.
- Text of the command entered into the command line.
- Local IP address of the adapter.
- Local port.
- Remote host name.
- Remote host IP address.
- Port on the remote host.
- URLs and IP addresses of visited websites, and links from these websites.
- Network connection protocol.
- HTTP request method.
- HTTP request header.

- Information about Windows registry variables: path to the variable, variable name, variable value.
- Contents of a script or binary file sent for AMSI scanning.
- Information about the event in the Windows log: event type, event type ID, event ID, user account under which the event was logged, full text of the event from the Windows Event Log in XML format.

Data in reports

Reports may contain user data. If the Central Node component is installed on the server, information about occurred events is stored indefinitely on the server with the component in the `/data/var/lib/kaspersky/storage/pgsql/10/data/` directory. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, information is stored on storage servers.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform resources provide no capability to restrict the rights of the users of servers and operating systems to which the Central Node component is installed. The administrator is advised to use any system resources at their own discretion to control how the users of servers and operating systems with the application installed may be granted access to the personal data of other users.

Reports may contain the following information:

- Report creation date.
- Time period covered in the report.
- ID of the user account that generated the report.
- Report status.
- Text of the report as HTML code.

Data on objects in Storage and quarantine

Objects in Storage and quarantine may contain user data. Information about objects in Storage and about copies of objects quarantined on computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using the **Get file** tasks is stored indefinitely on the Central Node server in the `/data/var/lib/kaspersky/storage/pgsql/10/data/` directory.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform resources provide no capability to restrict the rights of the users of servers and operating systems to which the Central Node component is installed. The administrator is advised to use any system resources at their own discretion to control how the users of servers and operating systems with the application installed may be granted access to the personal data of other users.

Data on objects in Storage and quarantine may contain the following information:

- Name of the object.
- Path to the object on the computer with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.

- MD5 and SHA256 hash of the file.
- ID of the user who quarantined the object on the computer with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.
- ID of the user who placed the object in Storage.
- IP address of the computer on which the quarantined object is stored.
- Name of the computer on which the quarantined object is stored.
- Unique ID of the computer on which the quarantined object is stored in Storage.
- ID of the TAA (IOA) rule by which the alert was generated.
- Category of the detected object.
- Results for the object scanned using individual modules and technologies of the application.

Sandbox component data

For the processing time, the body of the file sent by the Central Node component is saved in open form on the server hosting the Sandbox component. During processing, the server administrator can access the sent file in Technical Support Mode. The scanned file is deleted by a special script according to the schedule. Once every 60 minutes by default.

Information about the data stored on the server with the Sandbox component is provided in the table below.

Data stored on the server with the Sandbox component

Scope of data	Storage location	Storage duration	Access to data
Scanned files	`/var/opt/kaspersky/sandbox/library/`	After the Central Node component receives the scan results or until automatic deletion, but no more than 24 hours.	User access is defined by the admi using operating system tools.
File scan results	• `/var/opt/kaspersky/sandbox/library/` • `/tmp/`	After the Central Node component receives the scan results or until automatic deletion, but no more than 24 hours.	User access is defined by the admi using operating system tools.
Task settings	• `/var/opt/kaspersky/sandbox/library/` • Sandbox component database	After the Central Node component receives the scan results or until automatic deletion, but no more than 24 hours in the directory `/var/opt/kaspersky/sandbox/library/`. Up to 90 days in the Sandbox component database.	User access to the directory `/var/opt/kaspersky/sandbox/` is defined by the administrator usin operating system tools. A password is required for user authentication in the database. Acc database files is granted only to us started database processes and us root privileges. Access is provided only over an enc IPSec channel.
Trace files	`/var/log/kaspersky/sandbox/`	Up to 21 days.	User access is defined by the admi using operating system tools. Only authorized users can perform with trace files. Information about actions with trac saved in the application event log.

Data transmitted between application components

Central Node, Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows, Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows

The Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows applications send the following to the Central Node component: reports about running tasks, information about events and alerts that occurred on computers running these applications, and information about terminal sessions.

> If there is no connection with the Central Node component, all data to be sent is accumulated until it is sent to the Central Node component, or until Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows is removed from the computer, but no longer than 21 days.

If an event occurred on the user's computer, the applications send the following data to the events database:

1. General information for all events:
   - Event type.
   - Event time.
   - User account for which the event was generated.
   - Name of the host where the event occurred.
   - IP address of the host.
   - Type of the operating system installed on the host.
2. File creation event.
   - Details of the process that created the file: process file name, and MD5- and SHA256 hash of the process file.
   - File name.
   - Path to the file.
   - Full name of the file.
   - MD5 and SHA256 hash of the file.
   - Date of file creation and modification.
   - File size.

3. Registry monitoring event.

- Details of the process that modified the registry: Process ID, process file name, and MD5- and SHA256 hash of the process file.
- Path to the registry key.
- Registry value name.
- Registry value data.
- Registry value type.
- Previous path to the registry key.
- Previous registry value data.
- Previous registry value type.

4. Driver loading event.

- File name.
- Path to the file.
- Full name of the file.
- MD5 and SHA256 hash of the file.
- File size.
- Date of file creation and modification.

5. Listening port opening event.

- Details of the process that opened the listening port: process file name, and MD5- and SHA256 hash of the process file.
- Port number.
- Adapter IP address.

6. Event in the operating system log.

- Time of the event, host on which the event occurred, and user account name.
- Event ID.
- Channel/log name.
- Event ID in the log.
- Provider name.
- Authentication event subtype.

- Domain name.
- Remote IP address.
- Event header fields: ProviderName, EventId, Version, Level, Task, Opcode, Keywords, TimeCreatedSystemTime, EventRecordId, CorellationActivityId, ExecutionProcessID, ThreadID, Channel, Computer.
- Event body fields: AccessList, AccessFiles mask, AccountExpires, AllowedToDelegateTo, Application, AuditPolicyChanges, AuthenticationPackageName, CategoryId, CommandLine, DisplayName, Dummy, ElevatedToken, EventCode, EventProcessingFailure, FailureReason, FilterRTID, HandleId, HomeDirectory, HomePath, ImpersonationLevel, IpAddress, IpPort, KeyLength, LayerName, LayerRTID, LmPackageName, LogonGuid, LogonHours, LogonProcessName, LogonType, MandatoryLabel, MemberName, MemberSid, NewProcessId, NewProcessName, NewUacValue, NewValue, NewValueType, ObjectName, ObjectServer, ObjectType, ObjectValueName, OldUacValue, OldValue, OldValueType, OperationType, PackageName, ParentProcessName, PasswordLastSet, PrimaryGroupId, PriviledgeList, ProcessId, ProcessName, ProfileChanged, ProfilePath, Protocol, PublisherId, ResourceAttributes, RestrictedAdminMode, SamAccountName, ScriptPath, ServiceAccount, ServiceFileName, ServiceName, ServiceStartType, ServiceType, SettingType, SettingValue, ShareLocalPath, ShareName, SidHistory, SourceAddress, SourcePort, Status, SubcategoryGuid, SubcategoryId, SubjectDomainName, SubjectLogonId, SubjectUserName, SubjectUserSid, SubStatus, TargetDomainName, TargetLinkedLogonId, TargetLogonId, TargetOutboundDomainName, TargetOutboundUserName, TargetUserName, TargetUserSid, TaskContent, TaskName, TokenElevationType, TransmittedServices, UserAccountControl, UserParameters, UserPrincipalName, UserWorkstations, VirtualAccount, Workstation, WorkstationName.

7. Process start event.

- Information about the process file: file name, file path, MD5 or SHA256 hash of the file, file size, creation and modification date, name of the organization that issued the digital certificate of the file, digital signature verification result.
- UniquePID.
- Process start options.
- Process start time.
- Information about the parent process: file path, UniquePID, MD5 or SHA256 hash of the process file, process start options.

8. Process stop event.

- Information about the file of the process: file name, file path, full name of the file, MD5 or SHA256 hash of the file, file size, and process end time.
- UniquePID.
- Process start options.
- Information about the parent process: file path, UniquePID, MD5 or SHA256 hash of the process file, process start options.

9. Module loading event.

    - Details of the file that loaded the module: UniquePID, file name, file path, full name of the file, MD5- and SHA256 hash of the file, and file size.
    - DLL name.
    - Path to DLL.
    - DLL full name.
    - MD5 or SHA256 hash of the DLL.
    - DLL size.
    - Date of DLL creation and modification.
    - Name of the organization that issued the digital certificate of the DLL.
    - DLL digital signature verification result.

10. Process startup blocking event.

    - Details of the file that attempted to run: file name, file path, full name of the file, MD5- and SHA256 hash of the file, file size, and date of file creation and modification.
    - Command-line parameters.

11. File startup blocking event.

    - Details of the file that attempted to open: file name, file path, full name of the file, MD5- and SHA256 hash of the file, type of checksum used for file size blocking (0 – MD5, !=0 – SHA256, not used for search).
    - Details of the executable file: file name, file path, full name of the file, MD5- and SHA256 hash of the file, file size, and date of file creation and modification.
    - Details of the parent process: file name, file path, full name of the file, MD5- and SHA256 hash of the file, PID, and UniquePID.

12. Event of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows.

    - Scan result.
    - Name of the detected object.
    - ID of the record in application databases.
    - Release time of the application databases with which the alert was generated.
    - Object processing mode.
    - Category of the detected object (for example, name of a virus).
    - MD5 hash of the detected object.

- SHA256 hash of the detected object.
- Unique ID of the process.
- Process PID displayed in the Windows Task Manager.
- Process run command line.
- Reason for the error when processing the object.
- Contents of the script scanned using AMSI.

13. AMSI scan event.
    - Contents of the script scanned using AMSI.

Central Node, Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux, Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux

The Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux applications send the following to the Central Node component: reports about running tasks, information about events and alerts that occurred on computers running these applications, and information about terminal sessions.

> If there is no connection with the Central Node component, all data to be sent is accumulated until it is sent to the Central Node component, or until Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux is removed from the computer, but no longer than 21 days.

If an event occurred on the user's computer, the applications send the following data to the events database:

1. General information for all events:
    - Event type.
    - Event time.
    - User account for which the event was generated.
    - Name of the host where the event occurred.
    - IP address of the host.
    - Type and version of the operating system that is installed on the host.
    - Name of the host that was used to remotely log in to the system.
    - Name of the user assigned when registering in the system.
    - Group to which the user belongs.
    - User name that was used to log in to the system.
    - Group of the user whose name was used to log in to the system.

- Name of the user who created the file.
- Name of the group whose users can modify or delete the file.
- Permissions that can be used to gain access to the file.
- Inherited privileges of the file.

2. Process start event.

- Information about the file of the process: file name, file path, full name of the file, MD5 or SHA256 hash of the file, and file size.
- UniquePID.
- Command that was used to start the process.
- Process type.
- Environment variables of the process.
- Process start time.
- Process end time.
- Information about the parent process: file path, UniquePID, MD5 or SHA256 hash of the process file, command that was used to start the process.

3. File creation event.

- Details of the process that created the file: process file name, and MD5- and SHA256 hash of the process file.
- File name.
- Path to the file.
- Full name of the file.
- File type.
- MD5 and SHA256 hash of the file.
- Date of file creation and modification.
- File size.

4. Event in the operating system log.

- Event time.
- Event type.

- Result of the operation.
- Information about the parent process: file path, UniquePID, MD5 or SHA256 hash of the process file, command that was used to start the process.

Central Node and Sandbox

The Central Node component sends to the Sandbox component files and URLs extracted from the network and email traffic. The files are not changed in any way prior to sending. The Sandbox component sends scan results to the Central Node component.

Central Node and Sensor

The application may transmit the following data between Central Node and Sensor components:

- Files and email messages.
- Data on alerts generated by the Intrusion Detection System and URL Reputation technologies.
- License information.
- List of data excluded from the scan.
- Data of the Endpoint Sensors application, if integration with a proxy server has been configured.
- Application databases, if receiving database updates from the Central Node component is configured.

Servers with PCN and SCN roles

If the application is running in distributed solution mode, the following data is transmitted between the PCN and connected SCNs:

- Data on alerts.
- Data on events.
- Data on tasks.
- Data on policies.
- Data on scans using IOC, TAA (IOA), IDS, YARA user rules.
- Data on files in Storage.
- Data on user accounts.

- About the license.
- The list of computers with the Endpoint Agent component.
- Objects placed in Storage.
- Objects quarantined on computers with the Endpoint Agent component.
- Files attached to alerts.
- IOC and YARA files.

Data contained in application trace files

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform resources provide no capability to restrict the rights of the users of servers and operating systems to which the Central Node component is installed. The administrator is advised to use any system resources at their own discretion to control how the users of servers and operating systems with the application installed may be granted access to the personal data of other users.

Trace files can include any personal data of the user or confidential data of your organization. Files are stored in the `/data/var/log/kaspersky` directory indefinitely.

Data of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows

You can view detailed information about Kaspersky Endpoint Agent data that is stored and processed locally in the Online Help of the application:

- Data in requests to the KATA Central Node component.
- Service data.
- Data contained in trace files and dumps.
- Information about acceptance of the KSN Statement.
- Windows Event Log event data.

Data received from the Central Node component

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent saves the values of settings received from the Central Node component on the hard disk of the computer. Data is saved in open non-encrypted form in the folder `C:\ProgramData\Kaspersky Lab\Endpoint Agent\protected\data`.

By default, only users with System and Administrator permissions have read-access to files when Self-Defense is enabled. When Self-Defense is disabled, users with System and Administrator permissions can also delete the files, modify their contents, and modify the access rights to them. The Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application does not manage access permissions to this folder or any files in it. It is the system administrator who determines access permissions.

The data is deleted when Kaspersky Endpoint Agent is removed.

Data received from the Central Node component may contain the following information:

- Data on network connections.
- Data on the operating system that is installed on the server with the Central Node component.
- Data on operating system user accounts.
- Data on user sessions in the operating system.
- Data on Windows event log.
- About a RT_VERSION resource.
- About the contents of a PE file.
- About operating system services.
- Certificate of the server with the Central Node component.
- URL- and IP addresses of visited websites.
- HTTP protocol headers.
- Computer name.
- MD5 hashes of files.
- Unique ID of the computer with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.
- Names and values of Windows registry keys.
- Paths to Windows registry keys.
- Names of Windows registry variables.
- Name of the local DNS cache entry.
- Address from the local DNS cache entry in IPv4 format.
- IP address or name of the requested host from the local DNS cache.
- Host of the local DNS cache element.
- Domain name of the local DNS cache element.
- Address of the ARP cache element in IPv4 format.

- Physical address of the ARP cache element.
- Serial number of the logical drive.
- Home folder of the local user.
- Name of the user account that started the process.
- Path to the script that is run when the user logs in to the system.
- Name of the user account under which the event occurred.
- Name of the computer where the event occurred.
- Full paths to files on computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.
- Names of files on computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.
- Masks of files on computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.
- Full names of folders on computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.
- Comments of the file publisher.
- Mask of the process file image.
- Path to the process file image that opened the port.
- Name of the process that opened the port.
- Local IP address of the port.
- Trusted public key of the digital signature of executable modules.
- Process name.
- Process segment name.
- Command-line parameters.

Data in alerts and events

Event data is saved in binary form in the folder `C:\ProgramData\Kaspersky Lab\Endpoint Agent\protected\kata` in open non-encrypted form.

By default, only users with System and Administrator permissions have read-access to files when Self-Defense is enabled. When Self-Defense is disabled, users with System and Administrator permissions can also delete the files, modify their contents, and modify the access rights to them. The Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application does not manage access permissions to this folder or any files in it. It is the system administrator who determines access permissions.

Event data can contain information related to the following:

- Data on executable modules.
- Data on network connections.
- About the operating system that is installed on the computer with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.
- Data on user sessions in the operating system.
- Data on operating system user accounts.
- Data on Windows event log.
- About alerts of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows.
- About organizational units (OU) of Active Directory.
- HTTP protocol headers.
- Fully qualified domain name of the computer.
- MD5- and SHA256 hash of files and their fragments.
- Unique ID of the computer with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.
- Unique IDs of certificates.
- Certificate publisher.
- Certificate subject.
- Name of the algorithm used to generate the certificate fingerprint.
- Address and port of the local network interface.
- Address and port of the remote network interface.
- Application vendor.
- Application name.
- Name of the Windows registry variable.
- Path to the Windows registry key.
- Windows registry variable data.
- Name of the detected object.
- Kaspersky Security Center Network Agent ID.
- Contents of the hosts file.
- Process start command line.

Data contained in task completion reports

Prior to being sent to the Central Node component, the reports and relevant files are temporarily saved on the hard disk of the computer with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application. The task completion reports are saved in archived non-encrypted form in the folder C:\ProgramData\Kaspersky Lab\Endpoint Agent\protected\kata\data_queue.

By default, only users with System and Administrator permissions have read-access to files when Self-Defense is enabled. When Self-Defense is disabled, users with System and Administrator permissions can also delete the files, modify their contents, and modify the access rights to them. The Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application does not manage access permissions to this folder or any files in it. It is the system administrator who determines access permissions.

Task completion reports contain the following information:

- Data on task output.
- Data on executable modules.
- Data on operating system processes.
- Data on user accounts.
- Data on user sessions.
- Fully qualified domain name of the computer.
- Unique ID of the computer with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.
- Files of the computer with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.
- Names of alternate streams of NTFS
- Full paths to files on the computer with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.
- Full names of folders on the computer with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.
- Content of the process standard output.
- Content of the process standard error stream.

Data contained in an install log

The administrator can enable the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent installation log (using the msiexec standard procedure) during installation using the command line. The administrator shows the path to the file where the install log will be saved.

The log records installation process steps and the msiexec command line containing the address of the server hosting the Central Node component and the path to the install log file.

Data on files that are blocked from starting

Data on files that are blocked from starting is stored in open non-encrypted form in the folder C:\ProgramData\Kaspersky Lab\Endpoint Agent\protected\kata.

By default, only users with System and Administrator permissions have read-access to files when Self-Defense is enabled. When Self-Defense is disabled, users with System and Administrator permissions can also delete the files, modify their contents, and modify the access rights to them. The Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application does not manage access permissions to this folder or any files in it. It is the system administrator who determines access permissions.

Data on files that are blocked from starting may contain the following information:

- Full path to the blocked file.
- MD5 hash of the file.
- SHA256 hash of the file.
- Process start command.

Data related to the performance of tasks

When performing a task for placing a file in quarantine, the archive containing this file is temporarily saved in one of the following folders:

- C:\ProgramData\Kaspersky Lab\Endpoint Agent\protected\kata\temp for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent that is installed as part of Kaspersky Endpoint Security.
- C:\ProgramData\Kaspersky Lab\Endpoint Agent\protected\data\kata\temp for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent that is installed from the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform distribution kit.

When performing an application run task on a host, Kaspersky Endpoint Agent locally stores the contents of standard output streams and errors of the running process in plain unencrypted form until the task completion report is sent to the Central Node component. Files are stored in one of the following folders:

- `C:\ProgramData\Kaspersky Lab\Endpoint Agent\protected\kata\temp` for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent that is installed as part of Kaspersky Endpoint Security.
- `C:\ProgramData\Kaspersky Lab\Endpoint Agent\protected\data\kata\temp` for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent that is installed from the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform distribution kit.

By default, only users with System and Administrator permissions have read-access to files when Self-Defense is enabled. When Self-Defense is disabled, users with System and Administrator permissions can also delete the files, modify their contents, and modify the access rights to them. The Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application does not manage access permissions to this folder or any files in it. It is the system administrator who determines access permissions.

Data of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux stores and processes data locally to provide base functionality and audit capability, as well as to improve the speed with which Kaspersky Technical Support can solve potential problems.

Computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux store data prepared to be sent automatically to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform servers and Kaspersky Security Center.

This data may include personal data of the user or confidential data of your organization.

Transmission of data from computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux to the server with the Central Node component cannot be disabled.

Do not use the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux application on computers from which data transfer is forbidden by your corporate policy.

Data received from Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux is stored in a database on the server hosting the Central Node component and is rotated as disk space is filled.

Files that are prepared to be sent by Endpoint Agent for Linux to the server with the Central Node component are stored on computers hosting Endpoint Agent for Linux in plain unencrypted form in the same folder that is used as the default folder for storing files on each computer with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent before they are sent.

Files from computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux are only sent to the server with the Central Node component via a secure SSL connection.

The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator must take steps to ensure the security of computers with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux and Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform servers with the data listed above. The administrator of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is responsible for access to this information.

This section contains the following information about user data that is stored on computers with Endpoint Agent for Linux:

- Contents of stored data
- Storage location
- Storage duration
- User access to data

All data that is stored locally on the device, except for trace and dump files, is deleted from the device when the application is removed.

Data in Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux requests to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

When integrated with the Central Node component, the following data is stored locally on the device with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux installed.

All data that is stored locally on the device, except for trace and dump files, is deleted from the device when the application is removed.

1. In the synchronization requests:
   - Unique ID of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux.
   - Device name.
   - Local time on the device.
   - Name and version of the operating system that is installed on the device.
   - Version of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux.
   - Versions of application settings and task settings.
   - Task statuses in Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux: identifiers of running tasks, execution statuses, execution error codes.
2. Data on running processes:
   - Information about the executable file of the process. For the scope of data about the file, see below.
   - Process autorun settings.
   - Values of environment variables.
   - Process ID.
   - Parent process ID.
   - Logon session code.
   - Logon session name.

- IDs of users and groups that started the process.
- Date and time when the process started.
- Information about stopped processes:
  - Process ID.
  - Date and time when the process was stopped.
- Data on files:
  - Path to the file.
  - File name.
  - File size.
  - File attributes.
  - File creation date and time.
  - Date and time of the last modification of the file.
  - Names and unique IDs of the user and group that own the file.
  - Access rights of the file.
  - Unique identifier of the file.
- Information about file modifications:
  - Unique identifier of the file.
  - Type of operation performed on the file (writing, reading, attribute modification, renaming, deletion).
- Information about the logon session:
  - Date and time when the logon session began.
  - Type of the session.
  - Name of the user that initiated the session.
  - Type of the user that initiated the session.
  - Remote computer IP address.
- Data about detections on the computer with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux.
  - Type of detected object.
  - Name of the object and full path to the object.
  - Name of the alert.

- MD5 hash of the object.
- URL from which the object was downloaded.
- Remote computer IP address.
- IP address of the local computer.
- Alert processing result.

Before it is sent, data is stored in the /var/opt/kaspersky/epagent/data/cache/queue directory in plain unencrypted form. By default, only users with root permissions have access to the files.

3. Settings of tasks received by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux from the Central Node:

- Task types.
- Task schedule settings.
- Names and passwords of the accounts under which the tasks can be run.
- Versions of settings.
- Paths to objects.
- MD5 and SHA256 hashes of objects.
- Command line to start the process together with the arguments.
- Information about the individual task is stored on the device until Kaspersky Endpoint Agent receives a deletion request from the Central Node or until Kaspersky Endpoint Agent itself is removed from the device.

Task data is stored in the /var/opt/kaspersky/epagent/tasks directory in plain unencrypted form. By default, only users with root permissions have access to the files.

4. In the reports on task execution results sent by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux to the Central Node:

- Task execution errors and return codes.
- Task completion statuses.
- Task completion time.
- Versions of settings used for task execution.
- Information about objects sent to the server (paths to objects, MD5 and SHA256 hashes of objects).
- Files requested by the server.
- Content of the process standard output.

- Content of the process standard error stream.
- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux sends task execution result reports to the Central Node.

Task execution result data is stored in the /var/opt/kaspersky/epagent/tasks directory in plain unencrypted form. By default, only users with root permissions have access to the files.

Information with the task execution report is deleted after the information is sent to the Central Node.

Service data of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux

Service data of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux includes data that is stored in configuration files as a result of an administrator configuring settings locally or using the Kaspersky Security Center plug-in.

Service data is stored in the /var/opt/kaspersky/epagent/settings and /var/opt/kaspersky/epagent/policy directories. The data is stored until Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux is uninstalled.

This data can be automatically sent to Kaspersky Security Center.

By default, only users with root permissions have access to the files.

All data that is stored locally on the device, except for trace and dump files, is deleted from the device when the application is removed.

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux stores the following data:

- Address of the Central Node server.
- Public key of the server certificate for integration with the Central Node.
- Container with the client certificate for integration with the Central Node.
- Authorization credentials for the proxy server.
- Addresses of custom update sources.
- Configuring the frequency of synchronization and sending telemetry to the Central Node server.

Data contained in Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux trace files and dumps

Data contained in trace files

Users are responsible for the security of data stored on their computers, in particular for monitoring and restricting access to the data before it is sent to Kaspersky.

Trace files are stored on the computer during the entire period when the application is used and are permanently deleted when the application is removed.

By default, trace files are saved in the /var/log/kaspersky/epagent/ directory. You can view data in trace files. Accessing the default trace file directory requires root permissions.

All trace files contain the following general data:

- Time when the event occurred.
- Number of the thread of execution.
- Application component that initiated the event.
- Event importance level (information, warning, critical, error).
- Description of the event that occurred in connection with an application component running a command, and the result of the command.

In addition to general information, trace files can contain the following data:

- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component statuses and their working data
- Information about all operating system objects and events including user activity information
- Data contained in operating system objects (for example, contents of files that can include personal data of users)
- Network traffic data (for example, contents of website forms that can include bank card data or other confidential data)
- Data received from Kaspersky servers (for example, version of the application databases)

Trace data is recorded to the lena2021-01-18T052236.log file. When the file size reaches 10 MB, the file is saved in the /var/log/kaspersky/epagent/ directory. A new file with a timestamp is created to record current data. Up to 10 files with trace data can be stored in the directory. When the size of the last created file reaches 10 MB, the oldest file is deleted.

Trace files of other applications are stored on the computer until the application is removed.

Data contained in dump files

Stored dump files can contain personal data. To monitor and restrict access to data, you must take steps to ensure the security of dump files.

Dump files are generated automatically whenever the application crashes, and are stored on the computer during the entire period when the application is used. Dump files are permanently deleted when the application is removed.

Dump files are stored in the /var/opt/kaspersky/epagent/dumps/ directory.

A dump file contains the entire memory dump of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux processes for the moment when the dump file is created. The dump file can also contain personal data.

Accessing dump files requires root permissions.

Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows data

For detailed information about data transmitted by Kaspersky Endpoint Security, see the Online Help of the application:

- Provision of data under the End User License Agreement.
- Provision of data when Kaspersky Security Network is used.
- Compliance with European Union law (GDPR).

Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux data

For detailed information about data transmitted by Kaspersky Endpoint Security, see the Online Help of the application.

Application licensing

This section covers the main aspects of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform licensing.

About the End User License Agreement

The *End User License Agreement (EULA)* is a binding agreement between you and AO Kaspersky Lab, stipulating the terms on which you may use the application.

Read through the terms of the End User License Agreement carefully before you start using the application.

You can view the terms of the End User License Agreement (EULA) in the following ways:

- During installation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
- By reading the text named /EULA/License.<language>.

  This file is included in the application distribution kit.
- In the application web interface, in the **Settings** section, **License** subsection, by clicking the **License agreement** button.
- In the web interface of the Sandbox component, in the menu, by clicking the **End User License Agreement** link.

By confirming that you agree with the End User License Agreement when installing the application, you signify your acceptance of the terms of the EULA. If you do not accept the terms of the End User License Agreement, you must abort application installation and must not use the application.

About the license

A license is a limited-time right to use Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform granted under the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement (EULA).

The list of available functionality and the period for which you can use the application depend on the license under which you are using the application.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform provides the following types of licenses:

- NFR (not for resale) is a free license for a set period, intended to familiarize the user with the application and to carry out test deployments.
- Commercial—Paid license that is provided when you buy the application.

When the license expires, the application continues to work but with limited functionality. To use the application full functionality, you must purchase a commercial license or renew a commercial license.

In the current version of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, the available functionality of the application also depends on the type of key installed.

The update functionality (including anti-virus signature updates and code base updates), as well as the KSN functionality may be unavailable in the territory of the USA.

About the license certificate

The *License Certificate* is a document provided with the key file or activation code.

The License Certificate contains the following license information:

- License key or order number.
- Details of the license holder.
- Information about the application that can be activated using the license.
- Limitation on the number of licensing units (devices on which the application can be used under the license).
- License start date.
- License expiration date or license validity period.
- License type.

About the key

A *license key* is a sequence of bits used to activate and use the application in accordance with the End User License Agreement. A license key is generated by Kaspersky.

To add a key to the application, upload the key file.

Kaspersky can block a key over violations of the End User License Agreement. If the key has been blocked, you have to add a different key to continue using the application.

In the current version of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, the available functionality of the application depends on the type of the added license key:

- **KATA and KEDR keys**. Full functionality of the application.
- **KEDR key**. Receiving and processing of data from network traffic and mail traffic is limited.
- **KATA key**. The web interface sections **Threat Hunting**, **Tasks**, **Prevention**, **Custom rules**, **Storage**, and **Endpoint Agents** have limited functionality.

About the key file

A *key file* is a file with the .key extension that you receive from Kaspersky. Key files are designed to activate the application by adding a license key.

After purchasing the application or ordering the trial version of the application, you receive a key file at the email address you specified.

You do not need to connect to Kaspersky activation servers in order to activate the application with a key file.

You can recover a key file if it is accidentally deleted. You may need a key file to register with Kaspersky CompanyAccount.

To restore a key file, contact the vendor of the license.

Viewing information about the license and added keys in the web interface of the Central Node

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can view information about the license and added keys in the web interface of PCN servers and all connected SCNs under the account of a local administrator, administrator, or users of the application web interface.

To view information about the license and added keys,

In the web interface of the server hosting the Central Node component, select the **Settings** section, **License** subsection.

The web interface shows the following information about the license and added keys:

- License serial number.
- Application activation date.
- License expiration date.
- Number of days until license expiration.

During the period within 30 days of license expiration, the **Dashboard** section displays a notification about the need to renew the license. This notification is displayed on all servers with the Central Node component (in distributed solution and multitenancy mode – on PCNs and all connected SCNs) for all users, regardless of their role.

Viewing the text of the End User License Agreement in the web interface of the Central Node

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can view the text of the End User License Agreement in the web interface of PCN servers and all connected SCNs under the account of a local administrator, administrator, or users of the application web interface.

To view the text of the End User License Agreement, perform the following steps in the web interface of the server hosting the Central Node component:

1. Select section **Settings**, subsection **License**.
2. Click the **License agreement** button in the upper-right corner of the workspace.
3. In the opened window, carefully read the text of the End User License Agreement.
4. When you are done, click the **Close** button.

Viewing the text of the Privacy Policy in the web interface of the Central Node

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can view the text of the Privacy Policy in the web interface of PCN servers and all connected SCNs under the account of a local administrator, administrator, or users of the application web interface.

To view the text of the Privacy Policy, perform the following steps in the web interface of the server hosting the Central Node component:

1. Select section **Settings**, subsection **License**.
2. Click the **Privacy Policy** button in the upper-right corner of the workspace.
3. In the opened window, carefully read the text of the Privacy Policy.
4. When you are done, click the **Close** button.

Viewing information about the third-party code used in the application

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can view information about third-party code used in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in the web interface of PCN servers and all connected SCNs under the account of a local administrator, administrator, or users of the application web interface.

To view information about third-party code, perform the following steps in the web interface of the server hosting the Central Node component:

1. Select section **Settings**, subsection **License**.
2. Click the **Third-party code** button in the upper-right corner of the workspace.
3. In the opened window, view the information about third-party code.
4. When you are done, click the **Close** button.

Viewing the text of the End User License Agreement in the web interface of the Sandbox

To view the text of the End User License Agreement in the web interface of the server hosting the Sandbox component:

1. Sign in to the Sandbox web interface using the account credentials that you specified during installation of the Sandbox component.
2. Click the button in the lower-left part of the web interface window.
3. This opens a window containing information about the Sandbox component.
4. Click the **End User License Agreement** link to open the window containing the text of the End User License Agreement for the application.
5. Carefully read the text of the End User License Agreement.
6. When you are done, click the × button.

Viewing the text of the End User License Agreement for the Endpoint Agent component

You can view the text of the End User License Agreement for the application that is being used as the Endpoint Agent component. For details on how to view the text of the End User License Agreement, see the Online Help for the relevant application.

About the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows End User License Agreement

About the Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows End User License Agreement

About the Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux End User License Agreement

The text of the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux End User License Agreement is located in the EULA folder in the directory where Kaspersky Endpoint Agent is installed.

Adding a key

In distributed solution mode, a key can be added only on the PCN server.

To add a key:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **License** subsection.
2. Select the type of key: KATA or KEDR.
3. In the section with the selected key type, click the **Upload** button.
   This opens the file selection window.
4. Select a key file to download and click the **Open** button.
   This closes the file selection window.

The key is added to the application.

Replacing a key

In distributed solution mode, a key can be replaced only on the PCN server.

To replace the active application key with a different key:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **License** subsection.
2. Select the type of key: KATA or KEDR.
3. In the section with the selected key type, click the **Replace** button.
   This opens the file selection window.
4. Select a key file you want to use to replace the active key and click the **Open** button.
   This closes the file selection window.

The loaded key replaces the active key of the application.

Removing a key

In distributed solution mode, a key can be removed only on the PCN server.

To remove a key:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **License** subsection.
2. Select the type of key: KATA or KEDR.
3. In the section with the selected key type, click **Delete**.

   This opens the key removal confirmation window.
4. Click **Yes**.

   The key removal confirmation window closes.

The key is removed.

Application modes based on the license

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform provides various operating modes depending on the added keys.

No license

After the application is installed and the web interface is started, the application operates in this mode until you add a key.

Unlicensed mode has the following limitations:

- Application databases are not updated.
- There is no connection to the Kaspersky Security Network Knowledge Base.
- Receiving and processing of data from network traffic and mail traffic is limited.
- The web interface sections **Threat Hunting**, **Tasks**, **Prevention**, **Custom rules**, **Storage**, and **Endpoint Agents** have limited functionality.

Commercial license

In this operating mode, the application connects to the Kaspersky Security Network Knowledge Base and updates its databases.

When the key for commercial license expires, the application stops updating its databases and does not connect to the Knowledge Base of Kaspersky Security Network.

To resume the operation of the application, you must replace the key or add a new commercial license key.

In the current version of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, the available functionality of the application also depends on the type of the added license key:

- **KATA and KEDR keys**. Full functionality of the application.
- **KEDR key**. Receiving and processing of data from network traffic and mail traffic is limited.
- **KATA key**. The web interface sections **Threat Hunting**, **Tasks**, **Prevention**, **Custom rules**, **Storage**, and **Endpoint Agents** have limited functionality.

Architecture of the application

The application includes the following main components:

- *Sensor*. Receives and scans data, can also be used as a proxy server for communication of the Endpoint Agent component (if it is represented by the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application) with the Central Node component.
- *Central Node*. Receives and scans data, analyzes the behavior of objects, and publishes analysis results in the web interface of the application.
- *Sandbox*. Starts virtual images of operating systems. Starts files in these operating systems and tracks the behavior of files in each operating system to detect malicious activity and signs of targeted attacks to the corporate IT infrastructure.
- *Endpoint Agent*. Installed on workstations and servers in the IT infrastructure of the organization. Continuously monitors processes running on those computers, active network connections, and files that are modified.

Sensor component

The following modules of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform run on each server hosting the Sensor component:

- *Sensor*. Receives data from network and mail traffic and sends the data for processing to the server with the Central Node component.
- *Intrusion Detection System* (hereinafter also referred to as *IDS*). Scans the Internet traffic for signs of intrusions into the corporate IT infrastructure.
- *KSN*. Checks the reputation of files and URL addresses in the Knowledge Base of Kaspersky Security Network on behalf of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and provides information about categories of websites (for example, malicious website, phishing website).

  *Kaspersky Security Network (*hereinafter also *"KSN")* is an infrastructure of online services that provides access to Kaspersky's online Knowledge Base with information on the reputation of files, web resources, and software. The use of data from Kaspersky Security Network ensures faster responses by Kaspersky applications to threats, improves the performance of some protection components, and reduces the likelihood of false alarms.

  If you do not want to participate in KSN, you can use *Kaspersky Private Security Network* (hereinafter also referred to as *KPSN*). KPSN is a solution that allows users to access the reputation databases of Kaspersky Security Network and other statistical data without actually sending data from their own computers to Kaspersky Security Network.
- *URL Reputation*. Detects malicious and phishing URL addresses, and URL addresses that were previously used by hackers in targeted attacks against and intrusions into the corporate IT infrastructure.

You can also use a mail sensor as a Sensor component, which is a server or virtual machine on which Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway (KSMG) or Kaspersky Security for Linux Mail Server (KLMS) is installed. These applications send email messages to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform for processing. Based on the results of processing of email messages in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, KSMG and KLMS may block the transfer of messages.

The Sensor component can also be used as a proxy server for outgoing connections from the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application.

If KSMG or KLMS is being used as a Sensor component, scan exclusion lists configured for message recipients and MD5 checksums of files are not transmitted to KSMG and KLMS and are not applied when messages are processed by KSMG and KLMS.

Central Node component

The component can be deployed on one server or as a fault-tolerant cluster that consists of 2 roles: storage servers and processing servers.

Fault tolerance is achieved through duplication of data between the storage servers and the redundancy of computing resources: if one server fails, its functions are performed by another server with the same role. Meanwhile, the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform continues to work.

The following application modules, kernels and technologies run on each server or cluster with the Central Node component:

- *Anti-Malware Engine* (hereinafter also referred to as *AM* or *AM Engine*). Scans files and objects for viruses and other threats to the corporate IT infrastructure using anti-virus databases.
- *Mobile Attack Analyzer* (also referred to as *MAA*). Scans executable files in the APK format in the cloud infrastructure using a machine learning technology. As a result of the scan, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform receives information about detected threats or absence of threats.
- *YARA*. Scans files and objects for signs of targeted attacks on the corporate IT infrastructure using YARA Rules databases created by users of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
- *Targeted Attack Analyzer* (hereinafter also referred to as *TAA* or *TA Analyzer*). Analyzes and monitors network activity of software installed on computers of the corporate LAN using TAA (IOA) rules. Searches for signs of network activity that the user of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is advised to direct his/her attention, as well as signs of targeted attacks to the corporate IT infrastructure.
- *KSN*. Checks the reputation of files and URL addresses in the Knowledge Base of Kaspersky Security Network on behalf of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and provides information about categories of websites (for example, malicious website, phishing website).

Sandbox component

Servers hosting the Sandbox component run virtual machines with images of operating systems.

The Sandbox component starts objects in these operating systems and analyzes the behavior of the objects to detect malicious activity and signs of targeted attacks to the corporate IT infrastructure.

By default, the maximum file size scanned by the Sandbox module is 100 MB. You can configure scan settings in the administrator menu of the application management console.

The maximum level of nesting for scanned archives is 32.

The maximum number of objects that can be in queue to be scanned by the Sandbox component per day is 20,000 objects. When this limit is reached, the application deletes 10% of the objects that have been queued for scanning the longest and replaces them with new objects queued for scanning. The deleted objects are saved in the application with the NOT_SCANNED status.

Endpoint Agent component

Software component. It can be represented by the following applications:

- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows
- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux
- Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows
- Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux

The applications are installed on workstations and servers in the IT infrastructure of the organization (hereinafter also referred to as "computers"). On these computers, the applications continually monitor processes, active network connections, and files being modified, and send this monitoring data to the Central Node server.

Computers intended for installation of applications must meet hardware and software requirements.

Operating principle of the application

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform includes two functional blocks:

- Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack (hereinafter also referred to as "KATA"), which detects threats on the perimeter of the enterprise IT infrastructure.
- Kaspersky Endpoint Detection and Response (hereinafter also referred to as "KEDR"), which provides protection for the local area network of the organization.

You can use the full functionality of the application (KATA key and KEDR key) or partial functionality (only KATA key or only KEDR key).

Principle of operation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack includes the following components:

- Sensor.
- Central Node.
- Sandbox.

Sensor, Central Node and Sandbox interoperate as follows:

- The Sensor component receives mirrored SPAN, ERSPAN, RSPAN traffic, objects metadata of HTTP, FTP, SMTP, and DNS protocols, HTTP and FTP traffic data, as well as HTTPS traffic (if the administrator has configured SSL certificate replacement on the proxy server), copies of email messages, and does the following with the gathered data:
  - Scans Internet traffic for signs of intrusion into the corporate IT infrastructure using the Intrusion Detection System technology (hereinafter also referred to as IDS).

    IDS technology can recognize and detect network activity in 80 protocols, particularly in 53 application layer protocols of the TCP/IP model, detecting suspicious traffic and network attacks. Supported protocols include TCP, UDP, FTP, TFTP, SSH, SMTP, SMB, CIF, SSL, HTTP, HTTP/2, HTTPS, TLS, ICMPv4, ICMPv6, IPv4, IPv6, IRC, LDAP, NFS, DNS, RDP, DCERPC, MS-RPC, WebSocket, Citrix and others.
  - Checks the reputation of files and URLs against the Kaspersky Security Network database (hereinafter also referred to as "KSN") or Kaspersky Private Security Network (hereinafter also referred to as "KPSN").
  - Sends objects and files to be scanned by the Central Node component.

  You can also use a *mail sensor* as a Sensor component, which is a server or virtual machine on which Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway (KSMG) or Kaspersky Security for Linux Mail Server (KLMS) is installed.

- The Central Node component scans files and objects using anti-virus databases, YARA rule databases created by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack users, and if necessary, sends files and objects to be scanned by the Sandbox component.

- The Sandbox component analyzes the behavior of objects in virtual operating systems to detect malicious activity and signs of targeted attacks on corporate IT infrastructure, and sends scan results to the Central Node server.

If any threats are detected, the Central Node server records relevant information in the alert database. You can view the alert table in the **Alerts** section of the application web interface or by generating an alert report.

Alert information can also be published to a SIEM system that is used in your organization, as well as external systems. Information on Sandbox component alerts can be published in the local reputation database of Kaspersky Private Security Network.

Principle of operation of Kaspersky Endpoint Detection and Response

Kaspersky Endpoint Detection and Response includes the following components:

- Central Node.

- Endpoint Agent.

  The component can be represented by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows 3.8 to 3.14, Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.9, 3.12 for Linux, Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.1 for Windows, and Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4 for Linux.

- Sandbox.

  Optional component.

  > The Sensor component can be used as a proxy server for outgoing connections from Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.

The Endpoint Agent and Central Node components interoperate as follows:

One of the applications that represents the Endpoint Agent component is installed on individual computers within the corporate IT infrastructure and continuously monitors processes, open network connections, and files being modified. The monitoring data are sent to the server with the Central Node component. Events are generated based on these data.

- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows transmit data about the following events to the Central Node server:

  - **Process started**
  - **Module loaded**
  - **Connection to remote host**
  - **Prevention rule**
  - **Document blocked**

- **File changed**
- **System event log**
- **Registry modified**
- **Port listened**
- **Driver loaded**
- **Process: interpreted file run**
- **Process: console interactive input**

- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux transmit data about the following events to the Central Node server:
  - **Process started**
  - **File changed**
  - **System event log**

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows or Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux can integrate with Endpoint Protection Platform (hereinafter also "EPP") applications.

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows can integrate with the following EPP applications:

- Kaspersky Endpoint Security 10 to 11.2 for Windows
- Kaspersky Security 10 to 11.0.1 for Windows Server
- Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent 5.1 to 5.2 for Windows

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux can integrate with Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.1 to 11.2 for Linux.

In this case, Kaspersky Endpoint Agent also sends information about threats detected by the EPP applications and results of threat processing by these applications to the Central Node server.

EPP applications, Kaspersky Endpoint Agent, and Central Node components interoperate as follows:

- EPP applications send information about detected threats and results of threat processing to Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.

  Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows can also supply Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows with information about third-party applications with Antimalware Scan Interface support (hereinafter also referred to as "AMSI") sending objects (for example, PowerShell scripts) to Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows for additional scanning.

- Kaspersky Endpoint Agent sends data gathered while monitoring processes, open network connections, and files being modified, as well as data received from EPP applications, to the Central Node server.

  The Central Node server processes received data and displays the corresponding events in the application web interface.

  EPP application data processing generates **Scan: detect**, **Scan: detect processing result**, **AMSI scan** events (when Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows is integrated with Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows).

Events arriving at the Central Node server are marked by TAA (IOA) rules. As a result of this markup, alerts can be generated for events that require user attention. If you have the Sandbox component, you can also automatically send files from Kaspersky Endpoint Agent hosts to be scanned by the Sandbox component in accordance with Kaspersky TAA (IOA) rules.

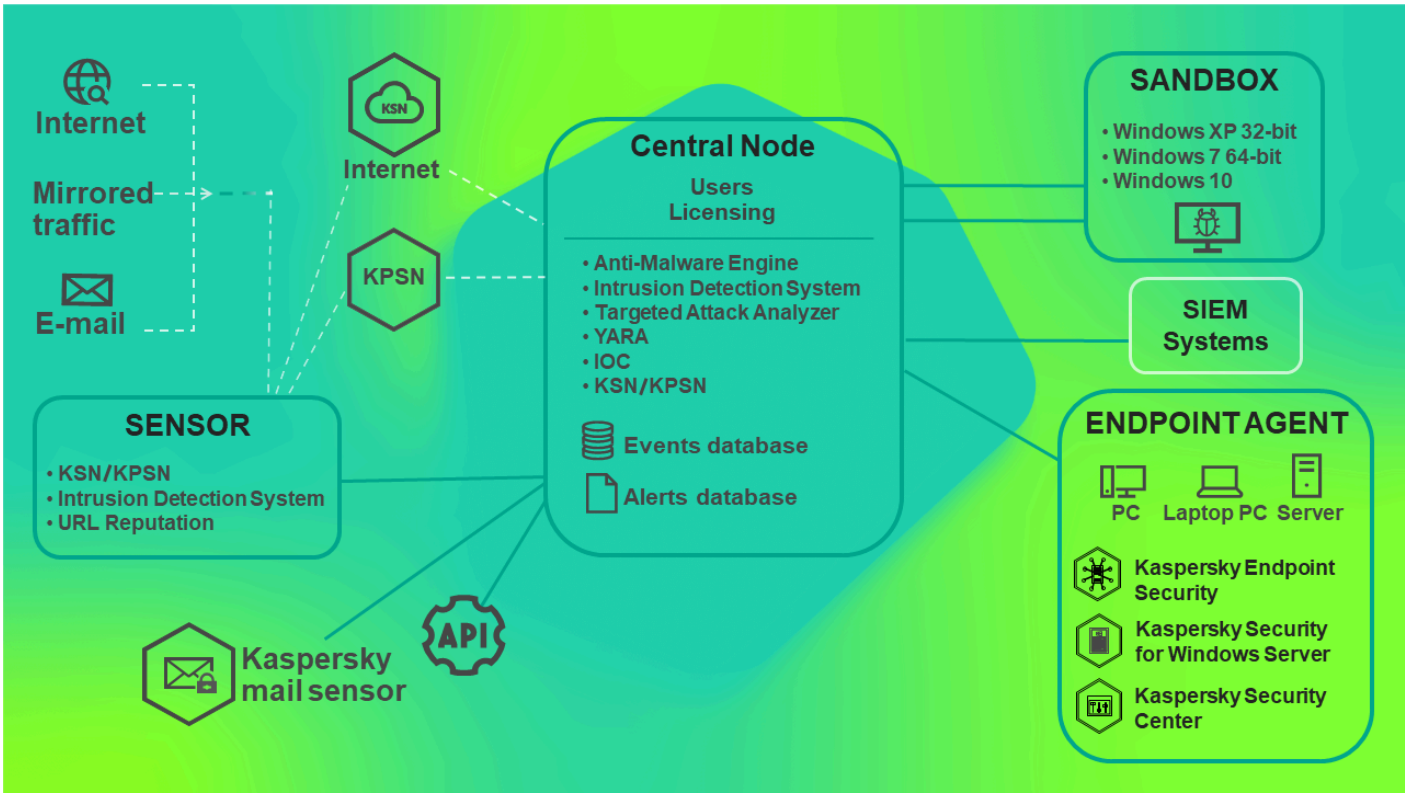
When the Central Node server is integrated with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows, you can do the following to react to detected threats:

- Manage files and applications by running the following tasks on Kaspersky Endpoint Agent hosts: **Kill process**, **Get forensics**, **Start YARA scan**, **Run application**, **Get file**, **Delete file**, **Quarantine file**, **Restore file from quarantine**, **Service management**, **Get disk image**, **Get memory dump**.
- Configure policies for preventing the running of files and processes on selected hosts.
- Isolate individual hosts from the network.
- Work with TAA (IOA) rules to classify and analyze events.
- Work with OpenIOC compliant files (IOC files) to search for signs of targeted attacks, infected and probably infected objects on hosts and in the Alerts database.
- Perform Threat Response actions using the API.

When the Central Node server is integrated with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux, you can do the following to react to detected threats:

- Manage files and applications by running **Get file**, **Run application** tasks.
- Work with TAA (IOA) rules to classify and analyze events.
- Perform the following Threat Response actions using the API: Managing the application run task.

The principle of operation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is shown in the following picture.

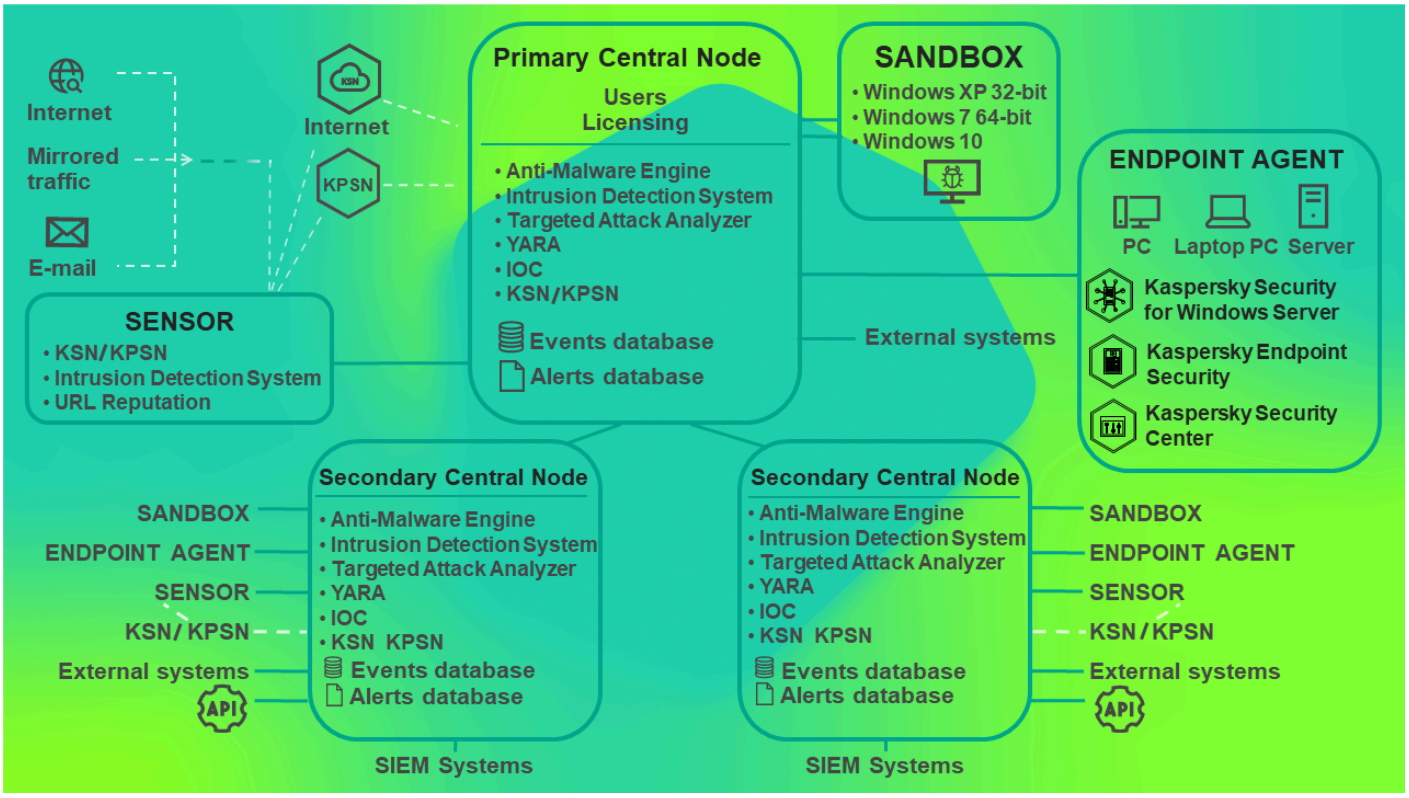


Principle of operation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

You can configure settings of each Central Node component individually or manage several components in a centralized way in distributed solution mode.

A distributed solution is a two-tier hierarchy of Central Node servers. This structure sets apart a primary control server known as the Primary Central Node (PCN) and secondary servers known as Secondary Central Nodes (SCN).

The principle of operation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in distributed solution mode is shown in the following picture.



Principle of operation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in distributed solution mode

Distributed solution and multitenancy

You can configure settings of each Central Node component individually or manage several components in a centralized way in distributed solution mode.

The distributed solution is a two-tier hierarchy of servers with Central Node components installed. This structure sets apart a primary control server known as the *Primary Central Node (PCN)* and secondary servers known as *Secondary Central Nodes (SCN)*. Interaction of servers requires connecting SCN to PCN.

If you have deployed the Central Node component as a cluster, the entire cluster takes on the role of a PCN or SCN.

PCN and SCN scan files and objects using the same technology as the individually managed Central Node component.

The distributed solution allows centralized management of the following functional areas of the application:

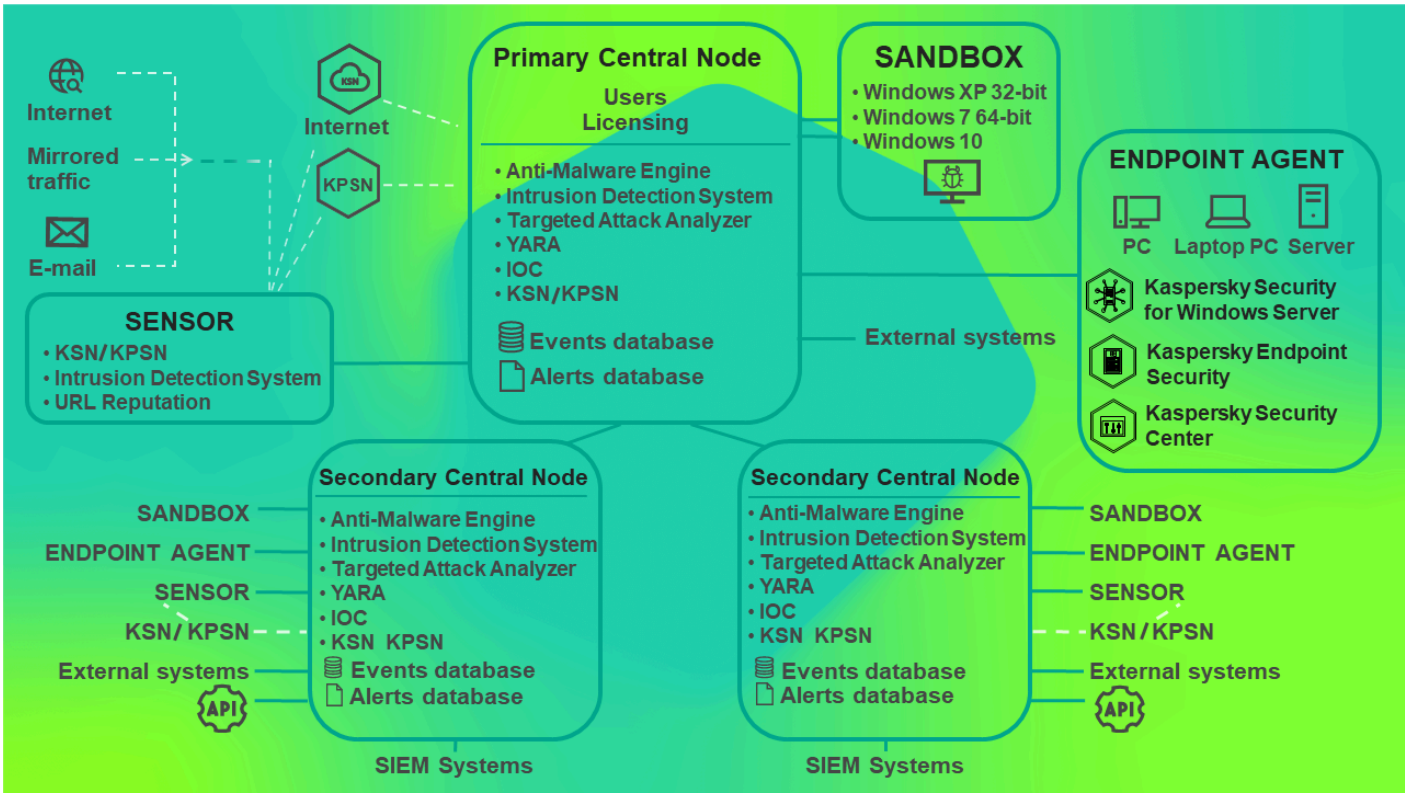
- Users.
- Alerts.
- Threat Hunting.
- Tasks.
- Prevention.
- Custom rules.
- Storage.
- Endpoint Agents, including network isolation of hosts.
- Reports.

If you are supporting multiple organizations or branch offices of the same organization, you can use the application in multitenancy mode.

Multitenancy mode lets you use the application to simultaneously protect the infrastructure of multiple organizations or branch offices of the same organization (hereinafter also referred to as "tenants"). You can install Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform on one or more Central Node for each tenant. Each tenant can manage the application independently from other tenants. The service provider can manage the data of multiple tenants.

For each user account, the number of simultaneous application management sessions is limited to one IP address. If the same user name is used to log in to the application from a different IP address, the earlier session is terminated.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the limit is enforced for each PCN and SCN server separately.



Operation of the application in distributed solution mode

You can use the distributed solution and multitenancy mode in the following cases:

- To protect more than 10,000 hosts of a tenant
- For centralized management of the application in different business units of the tenant
- For centralized management of the application on servers of multiple tenants

When the application switches to the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, all previously added license keys are deleted from servers with the SCN role. Each connected SCN receives a key from the PCN. If full functionality of the application is used for the PCN (KATA and KEDR key), and partial functionality is used for the SCN (only KATA key or only KEDR key), the SCN server load limit may be exceeded because of the increased volume of data. If partial application functionality is used for the PCN (only KATA key or only KEDR key), and full functionality is used for the SCN (KATA and KEDR key), the application functionality is partially unavailable.

License keys can be managed only on the PCN.

You can use the following scenarios to deploy the application in distributed solution and multitenancy mode:

- Install the Central Node component on new servers and assign PCN and SCN roles to those servers.
- Assign PCN and SCN roles to servers that already have the Central Node component installed.

  In this case, you must upgrade the Central Node component to version 5.1.

Before you switch servers with Central Node components installed to distributed solution mode, you should review the changes that will be applied to the system after the operating mode is changed. Assigning the PCN role to a server is irreversible.

Distributed solution and multitenancy mode transition scenario

Switching the application to the distributed solution and multitenancy mode involves the following steps:

1. Installing the Central Node components.
2. Assigning the PCN role to one of the servers.
3. Assigning the SCN role to the rest of the servers and sending requests to connect to the PCN.
4. Processing a SCN to PCN connection request.

Modifications of application settings for the distributed solution and multitenancy mode

Modifications of application settings for the distributed solution and multitenancy mode are listed in the following table.

Modifications of application settings when switching to the distributed solution and multitenancy mode

Functional area	PCN	SCN
Users	Users and roles assigned to them are preserved. Additionally, PCN users are granted access rights to work with PCN and all connected SCNs.	All users are deleted except the user that was created while Central Node was deployed. After that, the SCN requests a list of users from the PCN and uses that list to create local users with the same parameters: • Name • Password • Role • Status Users that do not have rights to access the SCN, are not displayed in the list of users.
Alerts	Information about all alerts from all connected SCNs is added to the PCN database.	The user name is no longer displayed in existing alert information. User data are deleted from alert operation history.
Dashboard	On the **Alerts** tab, you can now select the SCNs whose information must be displayed in the widget. On the **System health** tab, the status of connection of the PCN with connected SCNs is now displayed.	On the **System health** tab, the status of connection with the PCN is now displayed.
Tasks	Tasks created on the Central Node server before it was assigned the PCN role, as well as tasks created on the PCN after switching to distributed solution mode, apply to all connected SCNs. Tasks created on SCNs are also displayed in the task list. Settings of these tasks cannot be changed on the PCN.	Tasks created on the PCN are displayed, as well as tasks created on this SCN. Settings of tasks created on the PCN cannot be changed.

Functional area	PCN	SCN
Reports	Templates and reports created before the switch to distributed solution mode are preserved. A **Servers** column is added to the report table, containing information about the relevant SCN for the alert. After switching to distributed solution mode, only reports created on a PCN are displayed.	Templates and reports created before the switch to distributed solution mode are preserved. Information about the user who created the report is preserved if the PCN has a user with the same ID (guid). In other cases user information is deleted. After switching to distributed solution mode, only reports created on an SCN are displayed.
Prevention	Policies created on the Central Node server before it was assigned the PCN role, as well as policies created on the PCN after switching to distributed solution mode, apply to all connected SCNs. Policies created on SCNs are also displayed in the policy list. Settings of these policies cannot be changed on the PCN.	Policies created on the PCN are displayed, as well as policies created on this SCN. Settings of policies created on the PCN cannot be changed.
Storage	All files and metadata that were stored on PCNs before the switch to distributed solution mode are preserved. The name of the PCN is displayed for them in the **Central Node** column. The PCN also keeps the contents of the Storage of all connected SCNs.	All files and metadata that were stored on SCNs before the switch to distributed solution mode are preserved.
TAA exclusions	No changes.	No changes.
VIP status	No changes.	No changes.
Notification rules	No changes.	No changes.
Integration with mail sensors	No changes.	No changes.
Threat Hunting	During threat hunting in the database, the PCN sends a request to all connected SCNs. After the search query is processed, a list of PCN and SCN events of the selected tenant is displayed.	No changes.
Custom rules - TAA	IOC files added on the Central Node server before it was assigned the PCN role are applied to the PCN. TAA (IOA) rules that were added on the Central Node server before it was assigned the PCN role are applied to the PCN.	IOC files and TAA (IOA) rules added on the PCN, as well as IOC files and TAA (IOA) rules added on this SCN before and after switching to distributed solution mode are displayed.
Backup of the application	Backup of the application is only available on a PCN that does not have SCNs connected. To back up the application on a PCN, disconnect all SCNs from the PCN.	Backup of the application on an SCN is not available. To back up the application on an SCN, disconnect that server from the PCN by switching it to standalone server mode.

Assigning the PCN role to a server

Assigning the PCN role to a server is irreversible. After changing the server role to PCN, you will not be able to change the role of that server to SCN or standalone server. To change the role of that server you will have to reinstall the application.

To assign the PCN role to the server:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.

   You need to log in to the web interface of the server to which you want to assign the PCN role.

2. Select the **Operation mode** section.

3. Click **Distributed solution**.

4. In the **Server role** drop-down list, select **Primary Central Node**.

5. In the **Tenant name** field, enter the name of the tenant to which this Central Node server belongs.
6. Click **Assign the PCN role**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

   > After confirming the action, log in to the application web interface again.

7. Click **Yes**.

The server is assigned the PCN role and the name of the tenant.

After logging in to the application web interface with administrator credentials, the **Operation mode** section of the application web interface displays the following information:

- **Current mode** – Distributed solution.
- **Server role** – Primary Central Node.
- **Certificate fingerprint** – the fingerprint of the server's certificate required for authentication when establishing connection with an SCN.
- **Tenants** – information about tenants to which this server and connected SCN servers belong:
  - **IP** – Primary Central Node for this server and IP addresses of SCN servers (after they connect).
  - **Server** – name of this server and names of SCN servers (after they connect).

    This name is not related to name of the host where the application is installed. You can change it.
  - **Certificate fingerprint** – blank value for this server and certificate fingerprints of SCN servers (after they connect).
  - **Status** – connection state of SCN servers (after they connect) and the number of servers connected to tenants.
- The **Servers pending authorization** table contains information about connected SCN.

Assigning the SCN role to a server

To assign the SCN role to the server:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.

   You need to log in to the web interface of the server to which you want to assign the SCN role.
2. Select the **Operation mode** section in the window of the application web interface.
3. Click **Distributed solution**.
4. In the **Server role** drop-down list, select **Secondary Central Node**.

5. In the **PCN IP** field, enter the IP address of the server that has the PCN role, to which you want to connect the SCN.

6. Click **Get certificate fingerprint**.

   A fingerprint of the certificate of the server that has the PCN role is displayed in the workspace.

7. Contact the administrator of the PCN and compare the certificate fingerprint you received with the fingerprint displayed on the PCN in the **Certificate fingerprint** field of the **Operation mode** section.

8. If certificate fingerprints on the SCN and the PCN match, click **Send connection request**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

9. Click **Yes**.

The server is assigned the SCN role after the PCN administrator accepts the connection request. The SCN server is assigned to the tenant specified by the PCN administrator.

Processing SCN to PCN connection requests

To process a SCN to PCN connection request:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.

   You need to log in to the web interface of the PCN server that you want to use to process connection requests from other servers.

2. Select the **Operation mode** section in the window of the application web interface.

   The workspace displays the **Servers pending authorization** table.

3. Contact the SCN administrator who sent the connection request and verify the certificate fingerprint in the **Servers pending authorization** table. It must match the fingerprint displayed on the SCN in the **Certificate fingerprint from request** field of the **Operation mode** section.

4. If certificate fingerprints on the PCN and the SCN match, do one of the following:

   - If you want to reject the connection request from the SCN, click **Reject**.

   - If you want to accept the connection request from the SCN:

     1. Click **Accept**.

        This opens the **Accept connection request** window.

     2. In the **Tenant** list, select the tenant to which you want to assign this SCN server. The list includes previously added tenants.

     3. Click **Accept**.

Accepting connection requests is not recommended if certificate fingerprints do not match. Make sure the data you entered is correct.

If you reject the connection request, the SCN will continue to operate as a standalone Central Node server.

Viewing information about tenants, PCN and SCN servers

In the web interface of the PCN server, you can view information about this server and about all SCN servers that are connected to it.

To view information about PCN and SCN servers in multitenancy mode:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.

   You need to log in to the web interface of the PCN server.

2. Select the **Operation mode** section in the window of the application web interface.

The workspace displays the following information about servers:

- **Current mode** – Distributed solution.
- **Server role** – Primary Central Node.
- **Certificate fingerprint** – certificate fingerprint of the PCN server.
- **Tenants** – information about tenants to which the server belongs, as well as all SCN servers connected to the PCN.
  - **IP** – Primary Central Node for the PCN server and IP addresses of SCN servers connected to the PCN.
  - **Server** – name of the server and names of SCN servers that connect to the PCN.

    This name is not related to name of the host where the application is installed. You can change it.
  - **Certificate fingerprint** – blank value for the PCN server and certificate fingerprints of SCN servers waiting to connect to the PCN.
  - **Status** – connection status of SCN servers and the number of servers connected to the tenant.
- The **Servers pending authorization** table contains the following information:
  - **IP** – IP address or domain name of the SCN server.
  - **Server** is the name of the SCN server that is displayed in the application web interface.

    This name is not related to name of the host where the application is installed. You can change it.
  - **Certificate fingerprint** – certificate fingerprint of the SCN server that is sent to the PCN with the connection request.
  - **Status** – status of the SCN to PCN connection.

Adding a tenant to the PCN server

To add a tenant in the PCN server web interface:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
   You must log in to the web interface of the PCN server for which you want to add a tenant.
2. Select the **Operation mode** section in the window of the application web interface.
3. In the right part of the **Tenants** workspace, click **Add**.
4. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the tenant that you want to add.
5. Click **Add**.

The tenant is added and is displayed in the list.

Deleting a tenant from the PCN server

To delete a tenant in the PCN server web interface:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
   You must log in to the web interface of the PCN server for which you want to delete a tenant.
2. Select the **Operation mode** section in the window of the application web interface.
3. In the **Tenants** workspace, select the tenant that you want to delete.
4. Click **Delete**.
   This opens the action confirmation window.

   The action is irreversible. All global objects as well as reports and report templates of this tenant are lost.

5. Click **Yes**.

The tenant is deleted.

Renaming a tenant on the PCN server

To rename a tenant in the web interface of the PCN server:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
   You must log in to the web interface of the PCN server for which you want to rename a tenant.

2. Select the **Operation mode** section in the window of the application web interface.

3. In the **Tenants** list, click next to the tenant that you want to rename.

   This opens a window in which you can rename the tenant.

4. In the **Name** field, enter the new name of the tenant.

5. Click **Save**.

The tenant is renamed.

Disconnecting an SCN from PCN

The SCN can be disconnected from the PCN unilaterally.

If you disconnect an SCN using the SCN web interface, changed settings are only applied to the SCN. The PCN continues to display information about that server.

If you disconnect the SCN using the PCN web interface, information about that server is deleted at the PCN. However, the server with the SCN role will keep trying to connect to the PCN to synchronize settings.

To complete a bilateral disconnect, you must follow both instructions presented below. In this case, the SCN keeps working as a standalone Central Node server, and information about the disconnected SCN is displayed on the PCN.

The administrator of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is responsible for the confidentiality of data on PCN, SCN, and Central Node servers. If you plan to move an SCN server from one tenant to another, you must delete all data remaining on the server after using Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and reinstall Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform before handing over the server to the different tenant.

To disconnect the SCN from the PCN through the PCN web interface:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.

   Log in to the web interface of the PCN server that you want to disconnect the SCN from.

2. Select the **Operation mode** section in the window of the application web interface.

3. In the server list, select the SCN that you want to disconnect.

4. Click **Disconnect**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

5. Click **Yes**.

The SCN will attempt to connect to the PCN to synchronize settings.

To disconnecting the SCN from the PCN through the SCN web interface:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.

   Log in to the web interface of the SCN server that you want to disconnect from the PCN.

2. Select the **Operation mode** section in the window of the application web interface.

3. Click **Disconnect**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

4. Click **Yes**.

The SCN is disconnected from the PCN and continues working as a standalone Central Node server.

Modifications of application settings for disconnecting an SCN from PCN

Modifications of application settings after an SCN is disconnected from the PCN are listed in the following table.

Modifications of application settings after disconnecting an SCN from PCN

Functional area	PCN	SCN
Users	The disconnected SCN is not removed from the list of servers to which user rights apply. Information about changes of the user account that has rights on the disconnected SCN is not sent to the SCN.	User accounts received from the PCN are not deleted. You can create new user accounts again, as well as disable and change passwords for existing user accounts.
Alerts	Alert information on the disconnected SCN is deleted.	Operation history and all alert information is preserved.
Tasks	Tasks created on the disconnected SCN are deleted.	Tasks created on the PCN are deleted. Information about users who created tasks on the SCN is preserved.
Reports	All reports created earlier concerning the disconnected SCN are preserved, as well as the ability to filter the report list by this server.	Templates and reports are not modified.
Prevention	Policies created on the disconnected SCN are deleted.	Policies created on the PCN are deleted. Information about users who created policies on the SCN is preserved.
Storage	All objects related to the disconnected SCN are deleted from Storage.	All objects in the Storage are preserved. The link to the task stops working in information about objects received as part of tasks created on the PCN.
TAA exclusions	No changes.	No changes.
VIP status	No changes.	No changes.
Notification rules	No changes.	No changes.
Integration with mail sensors	No changes.	No changes.
Threat Hunting	After the search query is processed, events related to the disconnected SCN are not displayed.	No changes.
Custom rules - TAA and IOC	IOC and TAA (IOA) rules of a disconnected SCN are deleted.	IOC and TAA (IOA) rules created on the PCN are deleted.
Backup of the application	Backup of the application remains unavailable.	Backup of the application becomes available.

Decommissioning an SCN server

If you are not planning to subsequently use an SCN server, you can decommission the SCN server by removing it on the PCN.

The administrator of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is responsible for the confidentiality of data on PCN, SCN, and Central Node servers. If you plan to move an SCN server from one tenant to another, you must delete all data remaining on the server after using Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and reinstall Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform before handing over the server to the different tenant.

Decommissioning an SCN server involves the following steps:

1. **Deleting all data on the SCN**
2. Disconnecting the SCN from the PCN through the PCN web interface
3. Disconnecting the SCN from the PCN through the SCN web interface
4. **Deleting the SCN through the PCN web interface**

To delete the SCN through the PCN web interface:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.

   Log in to the web interface of the PCN server from which you want to delete the SCN.
2. Select the **Operation mode** section in the window of the application web interface.
3. In the server list, select the SCN that you want to delete.
4. Click **Delete**.
5. In the confirmation window, click **Yes**.

   The SCN will be deleted. Information about the deleted SCN will no longer be displayed on the PCN.

Sizing Guide

To obtain and maintain optimum performance under varying operational conditions of the application, you must take into account the number of networked devices, network topology, and the set of application features that you need.

Selection of the optimal application configuration consists of the following steps:

1. Selecting a common deployment scenario
2. Calculating hardware requirements using the sizing calculator

Common scenarios for deployment and installation of application components

The scenario for deployment and installation of application components is determined by the planned load on the application servers.

The Endpoint Agent component can be installed on any computers that belong to the organization's IT infrastructure and run the Windows operating system. Outbound connections from computers with the Endpoint Agent component to the server hosting the Central Node component must be allowed directly, without a proxy server.

You can install one or multiple Central Node components. If you install multiple Central Node components, you can use them independently of each other or combine them for centralized management in distributed solution mode.

The deployment scenario selection depends on the utilized application functionality. All scenarios listed in this manual also apply to the deployment of the application on a virtual platform.

Full functionality (KATA and KEDR)

When using KATA and KEDR functionality, you can scan network traffic, mail traffic, and data on corporate LAN computers.

If more than 5,000 hosts with the Endpoint Agent component are used within the organization, it is not recommended to use the Central Node component to process traffic.

> You can use the Sensor component as a proxy server for connecting hosts to the Endpoint Agent component and the Central Node. One Sensor component supports the connection of up to 1000 hosts with the Endpoint Agent component.

The criteria for selecting a deployment scenario when using KATA and KEDR functionality are presented in the table below. The selection algorithm is as follows:

1. In each row of the table, select the cell containing the value of the criterion corresponding to your IT infrastructure.

   If a row contains two cells with identical values, you must select the cell on the left.

2. Select the right-most column in which there are marked cells.

Selecting a deployment scenario when using KATA and KEDR functionality

Criterion	Two-server scenario	Three-server scenario	Four-or-more-server scenario	Distributed solution
Network traffic and mail traffic cannot be received on the same device.	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Number of Endpoint Agent hosts	No	From 5,000 to 10,000	From 5,000 to 10,000	Over 10,000
Communication channel bandwidth	1 Gbps	From 1 to 2 Gbps	Over 2 Gbps	Over 2 Gbps
The number of remote infrastructures in which traffic needs to be analyzed.	No	One	Two or more	Two or more
The capacities of one Sandbox component are insufficient to analyze all objects within acceptable time frames.	No	No	Yes	Yes

In distributed solution mode, each application component must meet the hardware requirements specified in the sizing calculator.

Processing of network traffic, mail traffic, and web traffic (KATA)

It is recommended to use KATA functionality if the organization does not need to process data on corporate LAN computers. If this is the case, only network traffic and mail traffic are processed.

The criteria for selecting a deployment scenario when using KATA functionality are presented in the table below. The selection algorithm is as follows:

1. In each row of the table, select the cell containing the value of the criterion corresponding to your IT infrastructure.

   If a row contains two cells with identical values, you must select the cell on the left.

2. Select the right-most column in which there are marked cells.

Selecting a deployment scenario when using KATA functionality

Criterion	Two-server scenario	Three-server scenario	Four- or more server scenario
Network traffic and mail traffic cannot be received on the same device.	No	Yes	Yes
Communication channel bandwidth	1 Gbps	From 1 to 2 Gbps	Over 2 Gbps
The number of remote infrastructures in which traffic needs to be analyzed.	No	One	Two or more
The capacities of one Sandbox component are insufficient to analyze all objects within acceptable time frames.	No	No	Yes

Processing of data from corporate LAN computers (KEDR)

It is recommended to use KEDR functionality if the organization does not need to process traffic. If this is the case, only data on corporate LAN computers is processed.

Depending on the presence of a third-party Sandbox solution within the organization, you can use one of the following deployment scenarios:

- Without a Sandbox component
- With a Sandbox component

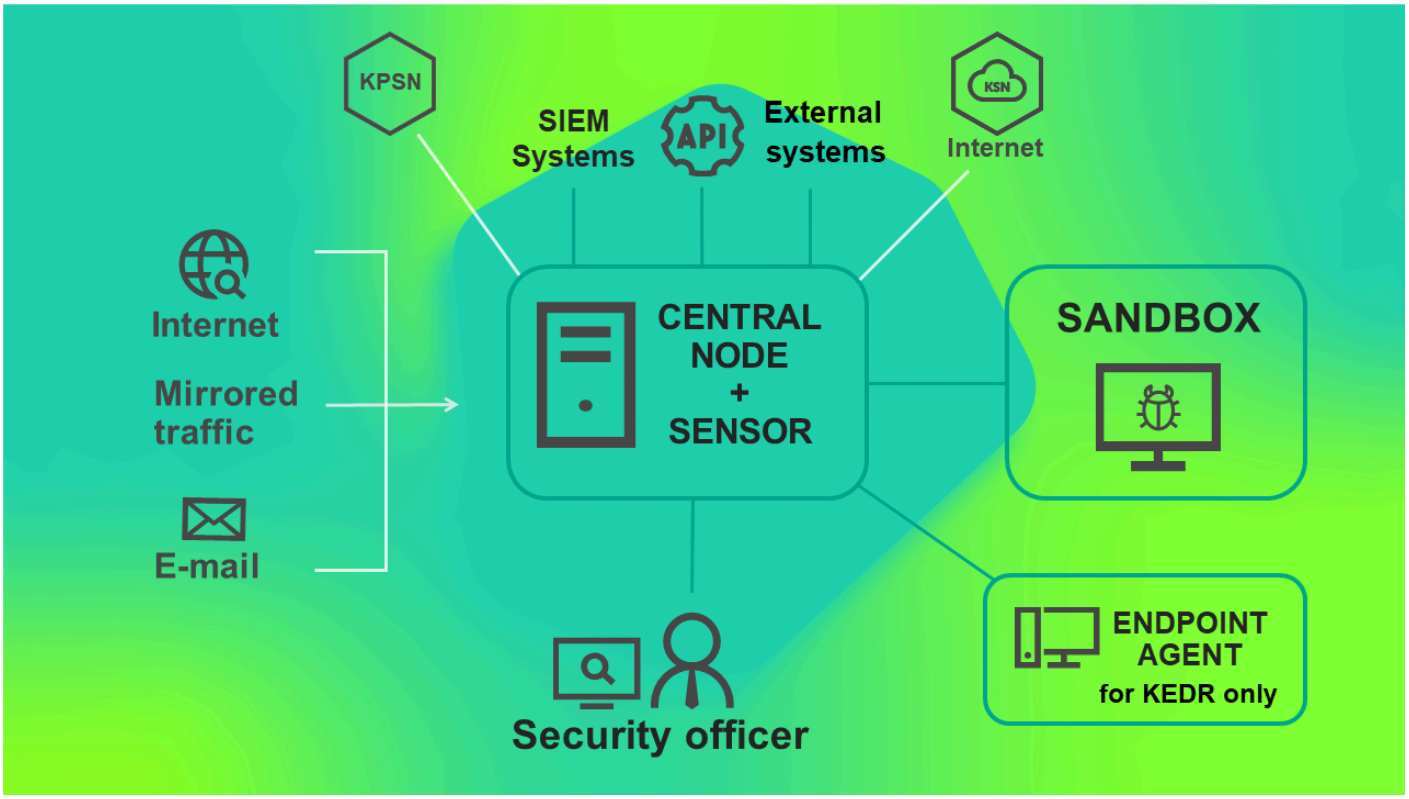
Two-server deployment scenario

When using KATA and KEDR functionality, you can install the Endpoint Agent component on corporate LAN computers. When using KATA functionality, the Endpoint Agent component is not installed.

When using this deployment scenario, the Central Node and Sensor components are installed on the same server or cluster. This server or cluster receives traffic, performs an initial analysis of traffic and a deeper analysis of extracted files. Based on the scan results, components detect signs of targeted attacks on the organization's IT infrastructure.

The Sandbox component is installed on the other server.

The scenario for application operation when deployed on two servers is presented in the figure below.



Application operating scenario when deployed on two servers

Three-server deployment scenario

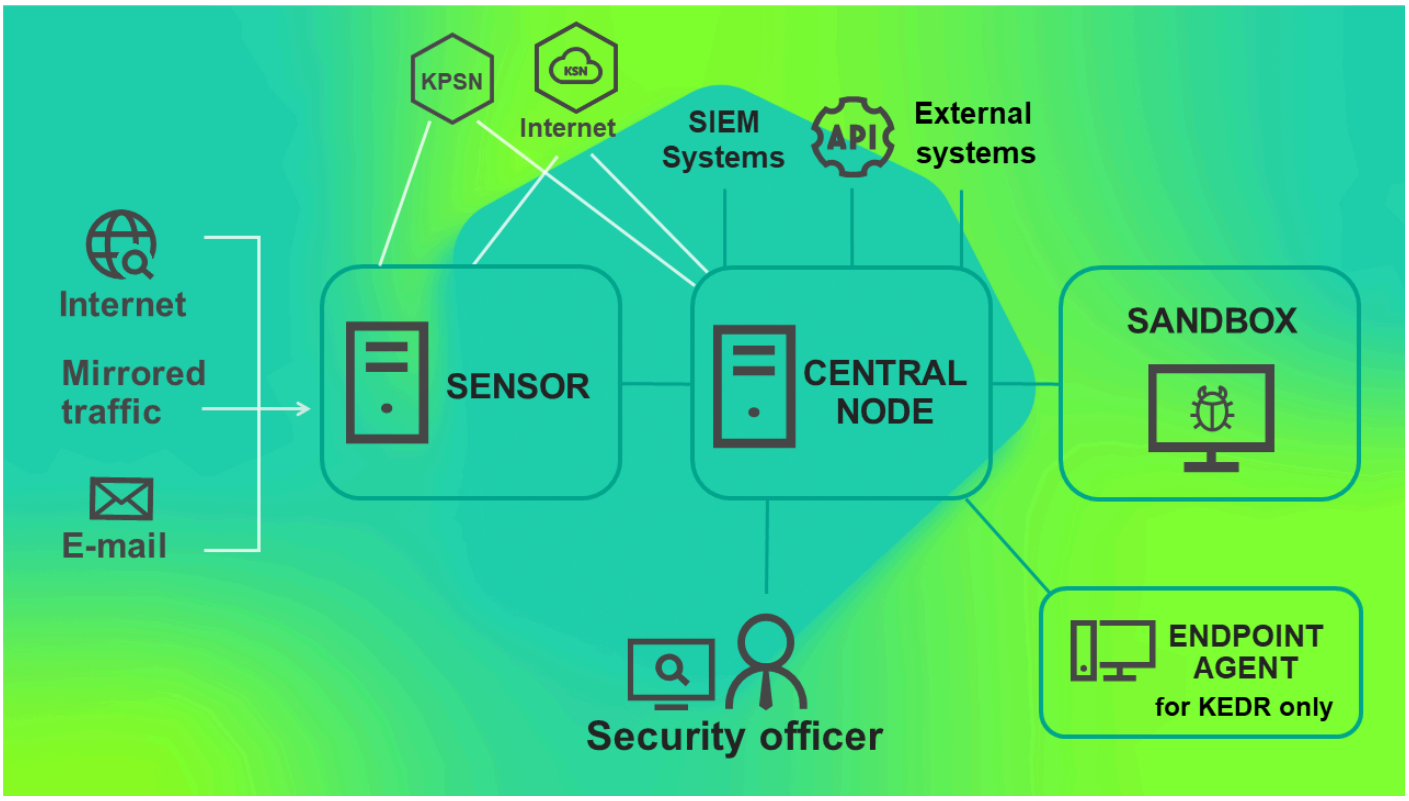
When using KATA and KEDR functionality, you can install the Endpoint Agent component on corporate LAN computers. When using KATA functionality, the Endpoint Agent component is not installed.

When using this deployment scenario, the Sensor, Central Node and Sandbox components are installed on separate servers. The Central Node component can also be deployed as a cluster. The server with the Sensor component receives traffic, performs an initial analysis, extracts files and forwards them to the Central Node component for a deeper analysis.

Using this deployment scenario, the Central Node component can receive traffic and perform an initial analysis of data in the main infrastructure. In this case, you can install the Sensor component on a server of a remote infrastructure whose traffic needs to be analyzed. If the channel bandwidth in the main infrastructure is more than 2 Gbps, you are advised to install the server with the Sensor component in the main infrastructure.

The traffic exchanged between the Central Node and Sensor components comprises up to 20% of traffic received by the Sensor component.

The application operating scenario when deployed on three servers is presented in the figure below.



Application operating scenario when deployed on three servers

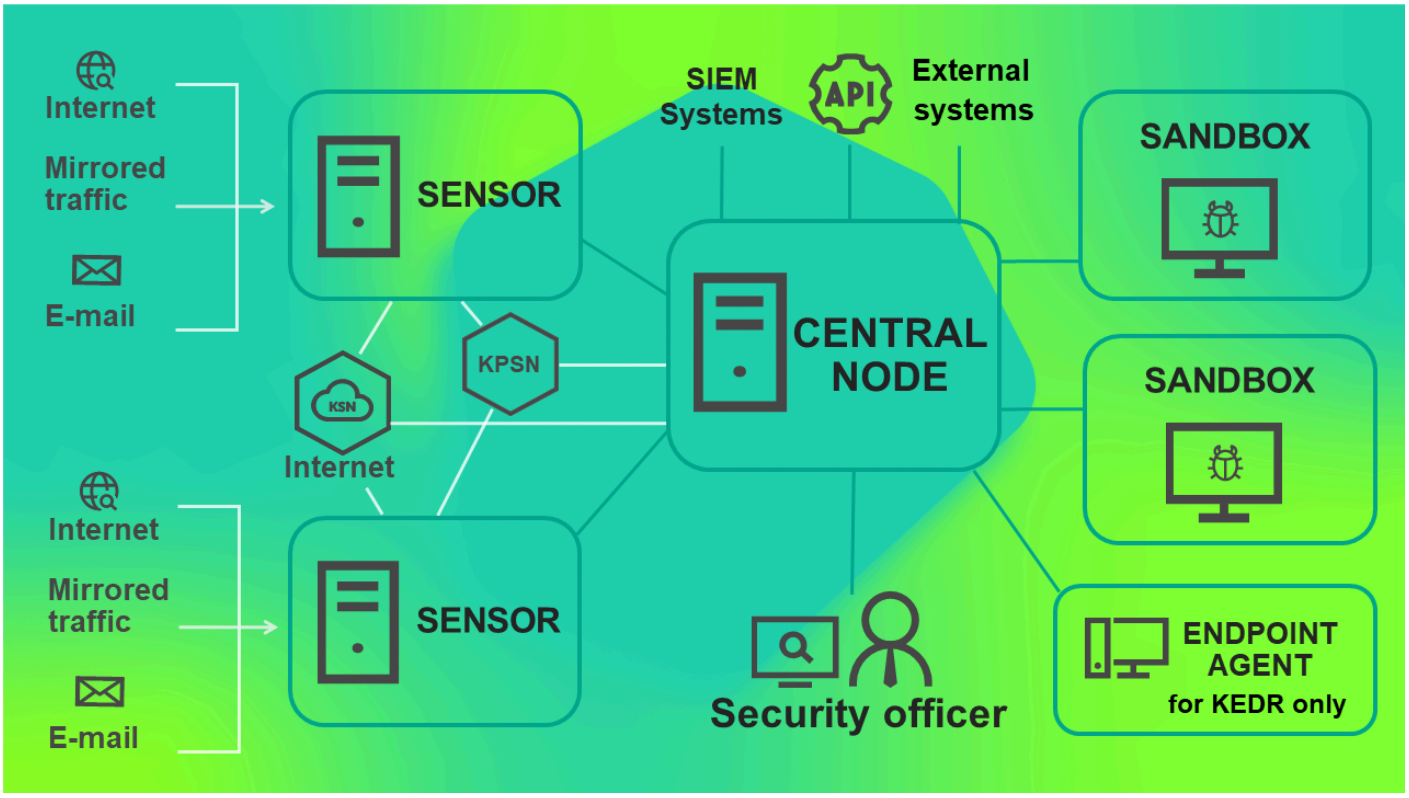
Scenario of deployment on four or more servers

When using KATA and KEDR functionality, you can install the Endpoint Agent component on corporate LAN computers. When using KATA functionality, the Endpoint Agent component is not installed.

If there is a large volume of traffic, you can install multiple Sensor components or multiple Sandbox components on different servers. This scenario is recommended for deployment in large organizations.

You can also use one Sandbox component to connect to multiple Central Node components.

The operating schematic of the application when deployed on four or more servers is presented in the figure below.

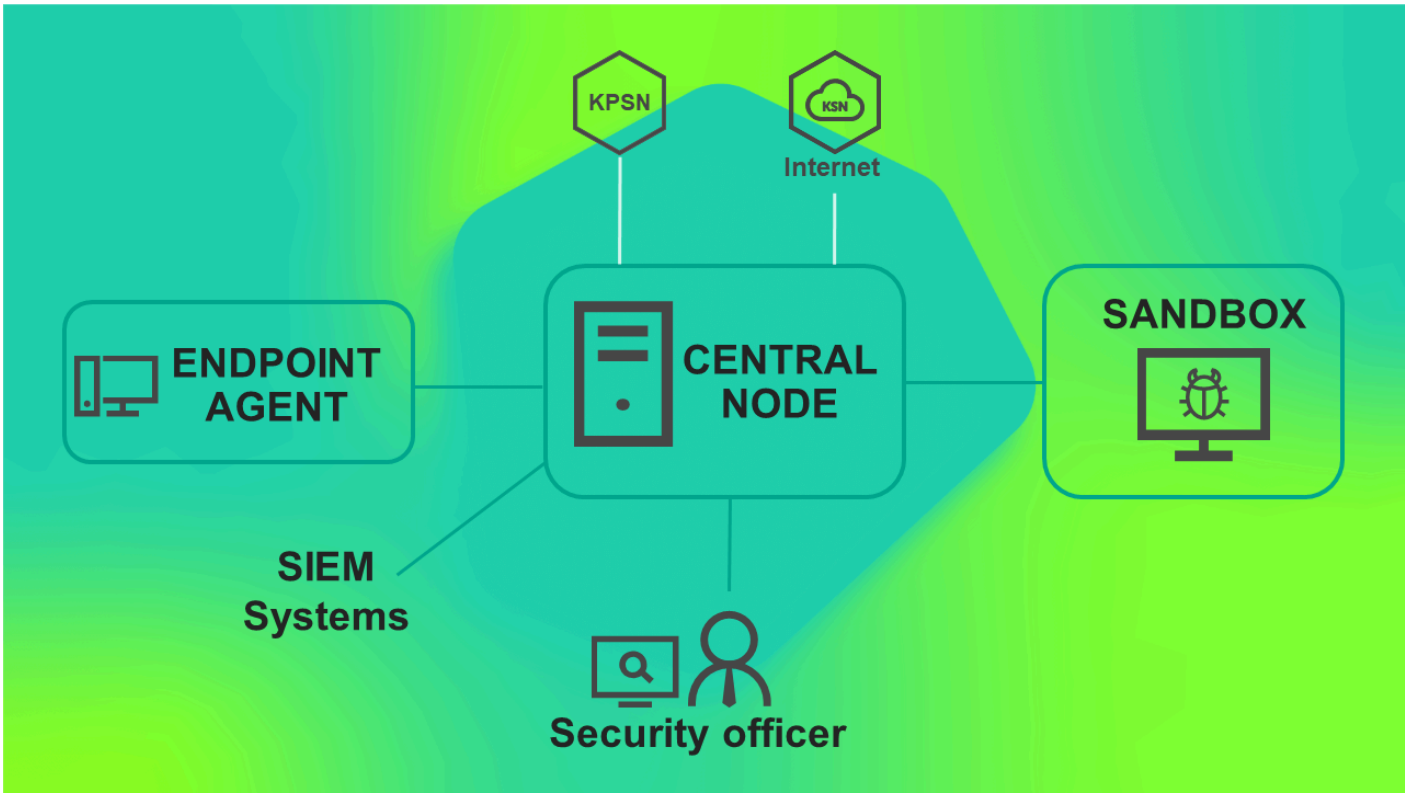


Application operating scenario when deployed on four or more servers

Scenario for deploying KEDR functionality with a Sandbox component

Using this deployment scenario, you need to install the Central Node component separately from the Sensor component.

The application operating scenario when deploying KEDR functionality with the Sandbox component is presented in the figure below.



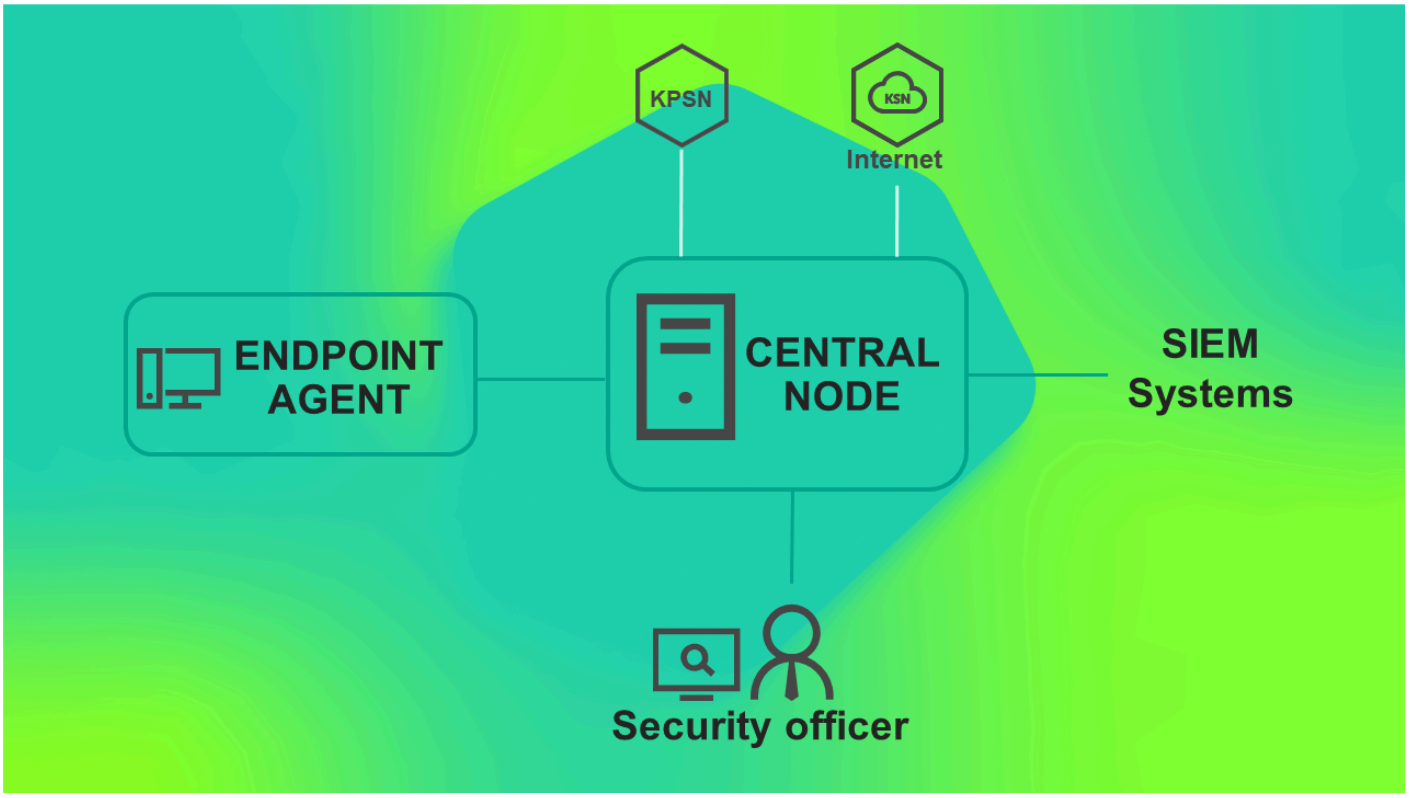
Application operating scenario when deploying KEDR functionality with the Sandbox component

Scenario for deploying KEDR functionality without a Sandbox component

You do not need to install the Sandbox component and can use the Central Node component only for managing the Endpoint Agent component and data analysis.

Using this deployment scenario, you need to install the Central Node component separately from the Sensor component.

The application operating scenario when deploying KEDR functionality without the Sandbox component is presented in the figure below.



Application operating scenario when deploying KEDR functionality without the Sandbox component

Sizing calculator

After you have selected the deployment scenario that is most appropriate for your IT infrastructure, you must calculate the hardware requirements for servers used for installing application components.

Calculations for the Sensor component

These calculations also apply when the application is deployed on a virtual platform.

When calculating the hardware requirements for the Sensor component, you must take into account that the maximum volume of processed traffic for one Sensor component is 4 Gbps. The most resource-intensive technology is the Intrusion Detection System.

You can use a server hosting the Sensor component as a proxy server during data exchange between the Endpoint Agent components and the Central Node component to simplify configuration of network rules. For example, if Endpoint Agent components are located in a separate segment of the network, it will suffice to configure a connection between servers with the Central Node and Sensor components.

When configuring the redirection of traffic from Endpoint Agent components to the Central Node component, please take into account the following limitations:

- A maximum of 15,000 computers with the Endpoint Agent component can connect to a single Central Node component.
- The maximum allowed packet loss between servers hosting the Sensor and Central Node components should be 10% with a packet delay up to 100 ms.

The hardware requirements for a server with the Sensor component depend on the volume of processed traffic. The required bandwidth of the communication channel between servers with the Central Node and Sensor components is calculated as follows:

```
10% SPAN port traffic at typical load or 20% of the SPAN port traffic at peak load +
email traffic + ICAP traffic + requirement for the communication channel between the
Central Node and Endpoint Agent components
```

The requirements for the communication channel between the Central Node and Endpoint Agent components depend on the number of Endpoint Agent components whose traffic the Sensor component forwards to the Central Node component. For more details on the requirements for the communication channel between the components, see the Calculations for the Central Node component section → Communication channel requirements.

If the bandwidth of the communication channel is more than 2 Gbps, you must **configure the use of one processor core for processing network interrupts**.

1. On the server with the Sensor component, in the file named /var/opt/kaspersky/apt-preprocessor/preprocessor.conf, add the string `pcap_cores=$CORES-1`, where `$CORES` is the number of logical cores of the server.
2. Restart the service to apply the changed parameters. To do so, run the following command:

   ```
   systemctl restart apt-preprocessor.service
   ```
3. In the file named /etc/sysconfig/irqbalance, add one of the following strings:
   - If you specified `pcap_cores=31` at the first step, add `IRQBALANCE_BANNED_CPUS=80000000`
   - If you specified `pcap_cores=47` at the first step, add `IRQBALANCE_BANNED_CPUS=8000.00000000`
4. Restart the service to apply the changed parameters. To do so, run the following command:

   ```
   service irqbalance restart
   ```

Hardware requirements for the Sensor component depending on the processed traffic

The Sensor component can be integrated with the IT infrastructure of an organization as follows:

- Receive mirrored traffic from network devices from SPAN ports.
- Connect to a mail server over the POP3 protocol.

- Connect to a mail server over the SMTP protocol.
- Receive traffic from a proxy server over the ICAP protocol.

The hardware requirements for the Sensor component are listed in the table below. The calculations are provided for a case in which the Sensor component does not process email messages or traffic over the ICAP protocol. If the Sensor component redirects the traffic of Endpoint Agent components, communication channel requirements must also be taken into account.

Hardware requirements for the Sensor component depending on the volume of processed traffic from SPAN ports

Number of Endpoint Agent components	Volume of processed traffic (Mbps)	Minimum RAM (GB)	Minimum number of logical cores
10,000	100	16	4
15,000	500	16	8
15,000	1,000	24	16
15,000	2,000	32	32
15,000	4,000	32	48

The hardware requirements for a Sensor component that is integrated with a mail server are presented in the table below. The calculations are provided for a case in which the Sensor component does not process mirrored traffic or traffic over the ICAP protocol.

Hardware requirements for a Sensor component that is integrated with a mail server

Number of email messages per second	Minimum RAM (GB)	Minimum number of logical cores
1-4	16	4
5-20	16	8

Processing traffic over the ICAP protocol requires less resources than processing email messages.

If one Sensor component processes traffic over multiple protocols, it is recommended to use the sizing calculator to calculate the server configuration. You should take into account the following recommendations:

- Simultaneous processing of traffic over the ICAP protocol and from SPAN ports is recommended for analysis of objects transmitted through a proxy server over the HTTPS protocol.

  To process traffic over the HTTPS protocol, the proxy server must support server certificate replacement.

- When integration with mail sensors is configured, it is not practical to extract SMTP traffic from SPAN traffic.

Disk space requirements on a server with the Sensor component

It is recommended to use a RAID 1 disk array. The total disk space must be at least 500 GB. The minimum free disk space requirements for different data types are presented in the table below.

Minimum requirements for disk space on a server with the Sensor component

Data type	Disk space (GB)
Redis database dump	16
Operating system	25
Temporary files	32

Data type	Disk space (GB)
Trace files and update packages	151
Total	**224**

If the volume of processed traffic is greater than 1 Gbps, it is recommended to allocate at least 600 GB of disk space.

Calculations for the Central Node component

Deploying the application on a virtual platform requires 10 percent more CPU resources than deploying the application on a physical server. In virtual disk settings, a Thick Provision disk type must be selected.

To avoid possible performance degradation when deploying the application on a virtual platform, we recommend to:

- Set Latency Sensitivity to High.
- Reserve all memory.
- Reserve all CPU.

Hardware requirements for a server with the Central Node and Sensor components

The hardware requirements for a server on which the Central Node and Sensor components are installed depend on the following conditions:

- Volume of processed traffic
- Number of email messages processed per second
- Number of Endpoint Agent hosts

  The Endpoint Agent component can be installed on a terminal server, file server, or network attached storage (NAS).

  Information about the compatibility of versions of applications that represent the Endpoint Agent component with versions of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is provided in the following Help sections: Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows, Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux, Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows, Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux.

  If the Endpoint Agent component is installed on a terminal server, the load generated by the component is calculated as follows: one Endpoint Agent component on a terminal server serving X users generates the same load as X Endpoint Agent components on a host (X users = X Endpoint Agent components).

  If the Endpoint Agent is installed on a file server or NAS, the load generated by the component is calculated as follows: one Endpoint Agent component on a file server or NAS generates the same load as 20 Endpoint Agents on a host.

When calculating the number of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component, please keep in mind that one instance of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux generates the same load as three instances of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows.

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows can also be installed on a SCADA server.

If Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows is installed on a SCADA server, the load generated by the application is calculated as follows: one Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows application on a SCADA server generates the same load as 20 Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows applications on a host.

You can use Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux and Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows simultaneously.

If the volume of processed traffic is greater than 1 Gbps, you must install Central Node and Sensor components on standalone servers.

The hardware requirements for the server with the Central Node component depending on the utilized functionality are presented in the table below.

Hardware requirements for the server with the Central Node component when using KEDR functionality

Maximum number of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component	Minimum RAM (GB)	Minimum number of logical cores at 3 GHz	First disk subsystem				Second disk subsystem			
			ROPS (read operations per second)	WOPS (write operations per second)	RAID 1 or RAID 10 disk array size (TB)	Number of disks in RAID 1 or RAID 10 array	ROPS (read operations per second)	WOPS (write operations per second)	RAID 10 disk array size (TB)	Number of disks in RAID 10 array
1000	64	8	100	1000	1	4	300	200	Up to 6, 2.4 TB each	4
3000	80	12	100	1000	1	4	700	500		6
5000	96	12	100	1000	1	4	1000	600		6
10,000	160	20	100	1000	1	4	2000	800		10
15,000	192	32	100	1000	1	4	2000	800		12

Hardware requirements for the server with the Central Node component when using KATA and KEDR functionality

Maximum number of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component	Maximum number of email messages per second	Maximum volume of traffic from SPAN ports on the server with the Central Node component	Maximum volume of traffic from SPAN ports on servers with the Sensor component (Mbps)	Minimum RAM (GB)	Minimum number of logical cores at 3 GHz	First disk subsystem				Sec	
						ROPS (read operations per second)	WOPS (write operations per second)	RAID 1 or RAID 10 disk array size (TB)	Number of disks in RAID 1 or RAID 10 array	ROPS (read operations per second)	
1000	1	200	Not processed	96	12	100	1000	1.9	4	300	
2000	2	500	Not processed	128	20	100	1000	2	4	500	
5000	1	1000	Not processed	160	36	100	1000	2	4	1000	
10,000	2	1000	Not processed	192	40	100	1000	2	4	2000	
5000	5	Not processed	2000	144	20	100	1000	1.9	4	1000	
10,000	20	Not processed	4000	192	36	100	1000	1.9	4	2000	
15,000	20	Not processed	4000	256	48	100	1000	1.9	4	2000	

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not support operation with software RAID array.

Example calculations of required server configuration for Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform components

If you want to:

- process traffic from a network device with a throughput up to 4 Gbps
- process 20 email messages per second
- use 15,000 hosts with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows, **or** 5,000 hosts with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux,

you need two servers with the following hardware:

- Server with the Central Node component: at least 256 GB RAM and at least 48 logical CPU cores
- Server with the Sensor component: at least 32 GB RAM and at least 48 logical CPU cores

The above calculation is also valid for an infrastructure with 5,000 hosts with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or a combination of applications (for example, 9,000 hosts with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows and 2,000 hosts with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux).

Disk space requirements on the server with the Central Node component

When no Sensor component is used on the server with the Central Node component, it is obligatory to have at least 2,000 GB of free space on the first disk subsystem and at least 2,400 GB on the second disk subsystem. The amount of space required on the second disk subsystem depends on the preferred storage policy and can be calculated using the following formula:

```
150 GB + <number of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows hosts>/15,000 * (400 GB + 240 GB * <number of days to store data>)/0.65, but no more than 12 TB.
```

This formula can be used to roughly estimate the required disk space. The actual amount of stored data depends on the traffic profile of the organization and may differ from the calculated result.

If you did not install the Central Node and Sensor component as a cluster, you must calculate the disk space for the **Events database, GB** and **Storage, GB** settings using the following formula:

```
A = F - R, GB.
```

where

- 'A' is the space used by the events database and the Storage.
- 'F' is the size of the hard drive on which the Central Node component is installed.
- 'R' is the reserved amount of free space (GB) corresponding to the number of connected hosts with the Endpoint Agent component; this parameter is taken from the table below.

If the number of hosts connected to the Central Node component is in between the listed values, use the larger number in your calculations.

Reserved amount of free space depending on the number of Endpoint Agent hosts

Number of Endpoint Agent hosts	Reserved amount of free space (GB)
1000	1000
3000	1200
5000	1400
10,000	1900
15,000	2400

If you have configured integration with the external system using REST API, you must allocate additional resources required for processing objects of this system. Additional hardware requirements are presented in the table below.

Hardware requirements for the server with the Central Node component with integrated external systems

Maximum number of processed objects per second	Number of additional logical cores	The number of additional servers with the Sandbox component
8	2	1
16	4	2
24	7	3

Requirements for the PCN server in distributed solution mode

If the load on the SCN servers is light, hardware requirements for the PCN server are the same as for a server with Central Node component in standalone mode.

Hardware requirements for the PCN server with 10 SCN servers under heavy load are listed in the table below.

Hardware requirements for the PCN server

Maximum number of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component	Maximum number of email messages per second	Maximum volume of traffic from SPAN ports (Mbps)	Minimum RAM (GB)	Minimum number of logical cores	First disk subsystem				Second disk subsys		
					ROPS (read operations per second)	WOPS (write operations per second)	RAID 1 or RAID 10 disk array size (TB)	Number of disks in RAID 1 or RAID 10 array	ROPS (read operations per second)	WOPS (write operations per second)	RA 10 ar si (T
10,000	0	0	160	24	100	1000	1	4	800	800	
1000	1	200	112	40	100	1000	1.9	4	600	600	1
5000	5	2000	160	28	100	1000	1.9	4	300	300	2
10,000	20	4000	208	40	100	1000	1.9	4	1000	800	

Communication channel requirements

The minimum requirements for the communication channel between computers with the Endpoint Agent component and the server with the Central Node component are presented in the table below.

Minimum requirements for the communication channel between computers with the Endpoint Agent component and the server with the Central Node component

Maximum number of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component	Required bandwidth of the communication channel reserved for Endpoint Agent components (Mbps)
10	1
50	2
100	3
1000	20
10,000	200

Minimum requirements for the communication channel between the PCN and SCN servers in distributed solution mode are listed in the table below.

Minimum requirements for the communication channel between the PCN and SCN servers

Maximum number of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component	Maximum number of email messages per second	Maximum volume of traffic from SPAN ports (Mbps)	Required communication channel bandwidth (Mbps)
5000	5	2000	20
10,000	20	4000	30

Hardware requirements for Central Node cluster servers

A cluster must include at least 4 servers: 2 storage servers and 2 processing servers. If you have up to 15,000 connected hosts with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component, you need at least 2 storage servers and 2 processing servers. If you have from 15,000 to 30,000 connected hosts with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component, you need at least 2 storage servers and 3 processing servers.

Each cluster server must have two network adapters to configure cluster and external subnet. The cluster subnet must be capable of up to 10 Gbps.

For a clustered subnet, the following requirements must also be met:

- A cluster subnet must include only the cluster servers and network switches.
- The cluster servers must all be in the same L1 or L2 segment. To do this, you can connect all the servers in the cluster to a single network switch or use software tunneling. For example, L2TPv3 or Overlay Transport Virtualization (OTV).
- The "network latency" value must meet the "single digit latency" requirement, that is, the value must be less than 10 milliseconds.

The hardware requirements for cluster servers when using KEDR functionality are listed in the table below.

Hardware requirements for processing servers when using KEDR functionality

Minimum RAM (GB)	Minimum number of logical cores	RAID disk array type	The number of disks in a RAID disk array	Single HDD volume (GB)
256	48	RAID 1	2	1200

Hardware requirements for storage servers when using KEDR functionality

Minimum RAM (GB)	Minimum number of logical cores	First disk subsystem			Second disk subsystem	
		RAID disk array type	The number of disks in a RAID disk array	Single HDD volume (GB)	Number of disks	Single HDD volume (GB)
128	16	RAID 1	2	1200	at least 6	at least 1200

We recommend using disks of the same size for the two disk subsystems. For the second disk subsystem, you must use disks that are not combined into a RAID array.

The performance requirements for disk subsystems are equivalent to those specified in the table *Hardware requirements for a server with the Central Node component when using KEDR functionality* (see above).

Calculations for the Sandbox component

The hardware requirements for a server with the Sandbox component depend on the type and volume of processed traffic and on the permissible object scan time.

By default, the permissible object scan time is 1 hour. To reduce this time, you need a more powerful server or more servers with the Sandbox component.

It is recommended to calculate the configuration of the Sandbox component as follows:

1. Install the Central Node and Sensor components on one server and the Sandbox component on a different server for pilot operation of the application.

   To receive sufficient statistical data, the application must process traffic of the organization for a week.

2. Run the data recording script by executing the following commands:

   ```
   kata-collect --output-dir path-to-folder
   ```

`--output-dir <path to directory>`

When the script finishes running, the *collect.tar.gz* archive will be moved to the specified directory.

3. Forward this archive to Kaspersky Lab staff for analysis.

If multiple virtual machines are started simultaneously, the speed of processing objects from the queue is increased.

The Sandbox component is not supported on AMD processors.

Hardware requirements for the server hosting the Sandbox component

The calculation of the number of servers with the Sandbox component when using preset images of operating systems is shown in the table below.

Hardware requirements for the Sandbox component when using preset images of operating systems

Maximum number of email messages per second	Maximum volume of traffic from SPAN ports (Mbps)	Maximum number of computers with the Endpoint Agent component	Number of physical servers with the Sandbox component	
			When using all images	When using only two images of Linux
1	200	1000	1	1
2	500	3000	1	1
1	1000	5000	1	1
5	2000	5000	1	1
20	4000	10000	2	1

If you want to install the Sandbox component on a virtual server, you need 3 to 4 times more virtual servers to get the same performance you would get from a physical server.

Additional capacity may be required when using custom images for servers with the Sandbox component. To calculate the number of physical Sandbox servers required when using custom operating system images, you can use the following formula:

`<number of files that need to be processed per hour in accordance with to user-defined Sandbox rules> * <number of custom operating system images> / 1000`

To calculate the number of virtual Sandbox servers required when using custom operating system images, you can use the following formula:

`<number of files that need to be processed per hour in accordance with to user-defined Sandbox rules> * <number of custom operating system images> / 280`

The estimation of the number of Sandbox servers is listed for servers with the following configuration:

- When installing the Sandbox component on a physical server:
  - 2 Intel® Xeon® 8 Core™ (HT) CPUs
  - 80 GB of RAM
  - 2 HDDs, 300 GB each
- When installing the Sandbox component on a VMware ESXi virtual machine:
  - Intel Xeon 15 Core (HT) processor at 2.1 GHz or higher
  - 32 GB of RAM
  - 300 GB HDD

    On the virtual machine:

    1. Nested virtualization enabled.
    2. Latency Sensitivity option set to High.
    3. Entire RAM is reserved.
    4. Entire CPU frequency is reserved.

When installing the Sandbox component on a VMware ESXi virtual machine, you must set the limit for simultaneously running virtual machines to 12.

Installing and performing initial configuration of the application

This section contains instructions on installation and initial configuration of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Preparing for installing application components

This section provides information on how to prepare your corporate IT infrastructure for the installation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform components.

Preparing the IT infrastructure for installing application components

Before installing the application, prepare your corporate IT infrastructure for the installation of components of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform:

1. Ensure that the servers, the computer intended for working with the application web interface, and the computers to be installed with the Endpoint Agent component all satisfy the hardware and software requirements.

2. Perform the following preliminary preparations of the corporate IT infrastructure for installation of the Sandbox component:

   a. For both network interfaces, block access of the server hosting the Sandbox component to the corporate LAN in order to keep the network safe from the objects being analyzed.

   b. For the first network interface, allow Internet access for the server hosting the Sandbox component for the purpose of analysis of the behavior of objects.

   c. For the second network interface, allow inbound connections to the following ports for the server hosting the Sandbox component:

      - TCP 22 for connection to the server over the SSH protocol.
      - TCP 443 for receiving objects to scan from the Central Node component.
      - TCP 8443 for using the application web interface.

3. Perform the following preliminary preparations of the corporate IT infrastructure for installation of the Central Node component:

   a. Allow inbound connections to the server hosting the Central Node component on the following ports:

      - TCP 22 for connection to the server via SSH.
      - TCP 443 for receiving data from computers with the Endpoint Agent component.
      - TCP 8443 for viewing scan results in the application web interface.
      - UDP 53 for communication with the server with the Sensor component.

   b. Allow outbound connections to the following ports for the server hosting the Central Node component:

      - TCP 80, 443 and 1443 for communication with servers of the KSN service and Kaspersky update servers.
      - TCP 443 for sending objects to the Sandbox component so that they can be scanned.
      - TCP 601 for sending messages to a SIEM system.
      - UDP 53 for communication with the server with the Sensor component.

4. Perform the following preliminary preparations of the corporate IT infrastructure for installation of the Sensor component:

   a. For the network interface used for integration with a proxy server and mail server, allow inbound connections to the following ports for the server hosting the Sensor component:

      - TCP 22 for connection to the server via SSH.
      - TCP 1344 for receiving traffic from a proxy server.
      - TCP 25 for receiving SMTP traffic from a mail server.
      - TCP 443 when forwarding traffic from computers with the Endpoint Agent component to the server with the Central Node component.
      - UDP 53 for communication with the server with the Central Node component.

   b. Allow outbound connections to the following ports for the server hosting the Sensor component:

      - TCP 80 and 443 for communication with servers of the KSN service and Kaspersky update servers.
      - TCP 995 (or TCP 110 for unprotected connections) for integration with a mail server.
      - UDP 53 for communication with the server with the Central Node component.

   If you install an additional network interface that receives only mirrored traffic in a VMware ESXi™ virtual environment, use the E1000 network adapter or disable the LRO (large receive offload) option on a VMXNET3 network adapter.

5. On network equipment, allow an encrypted communication channel between servers that have the Central Node and Sensor components.

   The connection between servers that have the Central Node and Sensor components is established within the encrypted communication channel based on IPSec using the ESP, AH, IKEv1, and IKEv2 protocols.

6. If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, prepare the corporate IT infrastructure for installation of the Central Node components as follows:

   a. Allow inbound connection to port 8443 for the server with the PCN role.

   b. On your network equipment, allow establishing an encrypted communication channel between the PCN and SCN servers.

      The connection between servers that have the PCN and SCN role is established within the encrypted communication channel based on IPSec using the ESP protocol.

If needed, you can designate other ports for the application components to use in the administrator menu of the server with the Central Node component. If you change the ports in the administrator menu, you need to allow connections to these ports in your corporate IT infrastructure.

Preparing the IT infrastructure for integration with a mail server used for receiving messages via POP3

If you are using a Microsoft Exchange mail server as your mail server and an email sender configured a request for read receipt notification, you must disable read receipt notifications. Otherwise, read receipt notifications will be sent from the email address that you have configured as the email address used for receiving messages of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. You must also disable automatic processing of meeting requests to prevent filling of the mailbox used for receiving messages of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

To disable sending read receipt notifications from the email address used for receiving messages of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform:

1. On the Microsoft Exchange server, check whether or not notifications are enabled. To do so, execute the command:

   ```
   Get-MailboxMessageConfiguration -Identity <email address for receiving messages by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform> | fl
   ```

2. If notifications are enabled, run the following command:

   ```
   Set-MailboxMessageConfiguration -Identity <email address for receiving messages by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform> -ReadReceiptResponse NeverSend
   ```

   This will disable read receipt notifications from the email address used for receiving messages of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

To disable automatic processing of meeting requests:

1. On the Microsoft Exchange server, check whether or not notifications are enabled. To do so, execute the command:

   ```
   Get-CalendarProcessing -Identity <email address for receiving messages by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform> | fl
   ```

2. If automatic processing of meeting requests is enabled, run the following command:

   ```
   Set-CalendarProcessing -Identity <email address for receiving messages by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform> -AutomateProcessing:None
   ```

   Automatic processing of meeting requests will be disabled.

Preparing the IT infrastructure for integration with a mail server used for receiving messages via SMTP

To prepare your corporate IT infrastructure for Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform integration with a mail server over the SMTP protocol:

1. On the external mail server, configure rules for forwarding copies of the messages that you want to send for scanning by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to the addresses specified in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

2. Specify the route for forwarding email messages to the server with the Sensor component.

   It is recommended to specify a static route – IP address of the server with the Sensor component.

3. In the firewall of your organization, allow inbound connections to port 25 of the server with the Sensor component from mail servers that are forwarding copies of email messages.

You can also improve the security of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform integration with a mail server over the SMTP protocol.

To improve the security of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform integration with a mail server over the SMTP protocol.

1. Configure authentication of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server on the side of the mail servers forwarding email messages for Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

2. Configure mandatory encryption of traffic on mail servers that are forwarding email messages for Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

3. Configure authentication of mail servers forwarding email messages for Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform side.

Preparing the virtual machine for installing the Sandbox component

To prepare the virtual machine for installing the Sandbox component:

1. Run the VMware ESXi hypervisor.

2. Open the virtual machine management console.

3. In the context menu of the virtual machine on which you want to install the Sandbox component, choose **Edit Settings**.

   This opens the virtual machine properties window.

4. On the **Virtual Hardware** tab, expand the **CPU** settings group and select the **Expose hardware-assisted virtualization to guest OS** check box.
5. On the **VM Options** tab in the **Latency Sensitivity** drop-down list, select **High**.
6. Click **OK**.

The virtual machine is ready for installing the Sandbox component.

Procedure for installing and configuring application components

Installing and configuring the application involves the following steps:

1. Installing the disk image containing the Sandbox component
2. Configuring the Sandbox component through the Sandbox web interface
3. Installing the disk images of Microsoft Windows operating systems and applications for the Sandbox component
4. **Installing the Central Node and Sensor components**

   You can install the Central Node and Sensor components in one of the following configurations:

   - Cluster.
   - Server.

   If there are multiple Central Node components, you can use the application in distributed solution mode.
5. Installing the Sensor component

   If there are multiple Sensor components, you can install and configure the Sensor component on the necessary number of servers.
6. Configuring the Central Node and Sensor components
7. **Installing the Endpoint Agent component on computers of the corporate IT infrastructure.**

   You can use the following applications as the Endpoint Agent component: Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.8 to 3.14 for Windows, Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.9 and 3.12 for Linux, Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.1 for Windows, and Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4 for Linux.

The Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application can be used in the following configurations:

- Without integration with the EPP application.

  In this case, you only need to install Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows or Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux.
- With integration with the EPP application.

  In this case, Kaspersky Endpoint Agent also sends information about threats detected by the EPP application and results of threat processing by this application to the Central Node server.

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows can integrate with the following EPP applications:

- Kaspersky Endpoint Security 10 to 11.2 for Windows

  Integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows with Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows

  To integrate these applications, you must install Kaspersky Endpoint Agent as part of Kaspersky Endpoint Security. Integrating separately installed applications is not supported.

  To install Kaspersky Endpoint Agent as part of Kaspersky Endpoint Security:

  1. Start the installation of the Kaspersky Endpoint Security application, which includes Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in its distribution kit.

     For more details about installing Kaspersky Endpoint Security, see *Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows Help*.

  2. During installation, select the Endpoint Agent component.

     After the application with the Endpoint Agent component is installed, the list of installed applications includes Kaspersky Endpoint Security and Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.

  If necessary, you can upgrade the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application that is already installed as part of Kaspersky Endpoint Security. Integration between compatible versions of the applications is maintained both when the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application is upgraded and when the Kaspersky Endpoint Security application is upgraded. You can upgrade a previous version for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent version 3.7 or newer.

- Kaspersky Security 10 to 11.0.1 for Windows Server

  Integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows with Kaspersky Security for Windows Server

  To integrate these applications, you must install Kaspersky Endpoint Agent as part of Kaspersky Security for Windows Server. Integrating separately installed applications is not supported.

  To install Kaspersky Endpoint Agent as part of Kaspersky Security for Windows Server:

  1. Start the installation of the Kaspersky Security for Windows Server application, which includes Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in its distribution kit.

     For more details about installing Kaspersky Security for Windows Server, see *Kaspersky Security for Windows Server Help*.

  2. During installation, select the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component.

     After the application with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component is installed, the list of installed applications includes Kaspersky Security for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.

  If necessary, you can upgrade the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application that is already installed as part of Kaspersky Security for Windows Server. Integration between compatible versions of the applications is maintained both when Kaspersky Endpoint Agent is upgraded and when Kaspersky Security for Windows Server is upgraded.

- Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent 5.1 to 5.2 for Windows

Integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows with Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent and Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent are installed separately. Kaspersky Endpoint Agent cannot be installed as part of Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent.

To enable the integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent with Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent:

1. Install Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent if it has not been installed yet.
2. Enable the integration of Light Agent with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.

   You can enable the integration with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent during installation or upgrade of Light Agent. You can also enable the integration with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using the procedure for modifying the set of installed components of Light Agent.

   For more details about installing, enabling integration, and upgrading the application, as well as the procedure for modifying the set of installed application components, see *Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent Online Help*.
3. Install the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application on the virtual machine with Light Agent, if it has not been installed yet.

For integration with Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent 5.2, we recommend using Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.14. If necessary, you can upgrade the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application and Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent. When you upgrade the applications, integration between compatible versions is maintained.

- Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Nodes.

  Integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows with Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Nodes

  To enable integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent with Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Nodes:

  1. Install Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Nodes if the application has not been installed yet.

     For more details on installation, see *Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Nodes Help*.
  2. Install the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application on the same device if it has not been installed yet.

     The applications are integrated automatically.

  To integrate with Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Nodes, the corresponding license key must be installed in the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.

  For detailed information, you can contact your account manager.

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux can integrate with Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.1, 11.2 for Linux.

Integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux with Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux

To integrate Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux with Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux, you can use separately installed applications.

To enable the integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent with Kaspersky Endpoint Security:

1. Install Kaspersky Endpoint Security.

   For more details about installing the application, see *Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux Help*.

2. Do the following:

   a. If Kaspersky Endpoint Agent has not been installed yet, install Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.

      The integration between applications is enabled automatically.

   b. If Kaspersky Endpoint Agent has already been installed, enable the integration between applications.

      To do so, you must enable the recording of event information in syslog for Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux.

      For more details about configuring the application, see *Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux Help*.

If necessary, you can upgrade Kaspersky Endpoint Agent and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux. When you upgrade the applications, integration between compatible versions is maintained.

If Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.1 for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4 for Linux are used as the Endpoint Agent components, installation of the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application is not required.

Installing Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.1 for Windows:

Installing Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4 for Linux

Installation: Sandbox component

This section provides step-by-step instructions on installing the Sandbox component.

To begin the installation of the Sandbox component:

1. Run the disk image containing the Sandbox component.

   The Setup Wizard starts.

2. Click **Ok**.

Step 1. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy

To continue installation, please read the End User License Agreement (EULA) and accept its terms. Installation will not continue until you accept the terms of the End User License Agreement.

You also need to read the Privacy Policy and accept its terms.

To accept the terms of the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy:

1. Select the language for viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy in the list.

For example, if you want to view the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy in English, select **English** and press **ENTER**.

This opens a window showing the End User License Agreement text.

2. Please read the End User License Agreement.
3. If you accept the terms of the End User License Agreement, click **I accept**.

   This opens a window displaying the text of the Privacy Policy.
4. Please carefully read the Privacy Policy.
5. If you accept the terms of the Privacy Policy, click **I accept**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 2. Selecting a disk for installing the Sandbox component

Select a physical disk for installing the Sandbox component.

To select a disk for installing the Sandbox component:

1. In the **Select device** window, in the list of disks, select the disk on which you want to install the Sandbox component and press **ENTER**.

   If the disk is not empty, a window is displayed asking you to confirm that you want to format the disk and install the application.
2. Click **Install**.

   The archive with the installation files will be unpacked to the disk. The server is restarted.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 3. Assigning the host name

Assign a server host name to be used by DNS servers.

To assign the host name for a server:

1. Enter the full domain name of the server into the **Hostname** field.

   Specify the server name in FQDN format (for example: host.domain.com or host.domain.subdomain.com).
2. Click **Ok**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 4. Selecting the controlling network interface in the list

To ensure proper functioning of the Sandbox component, you must connect at least two network cards and configure the following network Interfaces:

- Management network interface. This interface is intended for providing access to the server with the Sandbox component via the SSH protocol, and the server with the Sandbox component will use this interface to receive objects from the server with the Central Node component.
- Network interface used for Internet access of processed objects. Objects that are processed by the Sandbox component can use this interface to attempt activities on the Internet, and the Sandbox component can analyze their behavior. If you block Internet access, the Sandbox component cannot analyze the behavior of objects on the Internet, and will therefore only analyze the behavior of objects without Internet access.

  > The network interface used for Internet access of processed objects must be isolated from the local network of your organization.

Select the network interface that you want to use as the controlling interface.

To select the management network interface:

1. In the list of network interfaces, select the network interface that you want to use as the controlling interface.
2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 5. Assigning the address and network mask of the controlling interface

To assign the IP address and network mask of the management network interface:

1. In the **Address** field, enter the IP address that you want to assign to this network interface.
2. In the **Netmask** field, enter the network mask in which you want to use this network interface.
3. Click **Ok**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 6. Adding DNS server addresses

To add DNS server addresses:

1. In the **DNS servers** window, select **New** and press **ENTER**.

   This opens the DNS server address entry window.

2. In the **DNS server** text box, enter the IP address of the primary DNS server in IPv4 format.

3. Click **Ok**.

   The DNS server address entry window is closed.

4. If you want to add the IP address of an additional DNS server, repeat the steps in the **DNS servers** window.

5. When you are done adding DNS servers, in the **DNS servers** window, select **Continue** and press **ENTER**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 7. Configuring a static network route

To configure a static network route:

1. In the **IPv4 Routes** window, select **New** and press **ENTER**.

   This opens the **IPv4 Static Route** window.

2. In the **Address/Mask** field, enter the IP address and mask of the subnet for which you want to configure the network route.

3. If you want to use the default network route, enter 0.0.0.0/0.

4. In the **Gateway** field, enter the IP address of the gateway.

5. Click **Ok**.

6. If you want to add other network routes, repeat the steps in the **IPv4 Static Route** window.

7. If you are done adding network routes, click **Continue**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 8. Configuring the minimum password length for the Sandbox administrator password

To set the minimum length of the administrator password for the Sandbox component:

1. In the **Minimal length**, enter the length in characters. Passwords 12 or more characters long are recommended.
2. Click **Ok**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 9. Creating the Sandbox administrator account

Create an administrator account for working in the Sandbox web interface in the administrator menu and in the management console of the server with the Sandbox component.

To create a Sandbox administrator account:

1. In the **Username** field, enter the name of the administrator account. The 'admin' account is used by default.
2. In the **password** field, enter the password for the administrator account.

   The password must satisfy the following requirements:

   - Must contain at least 8 characters.
   - Must contain at least three types of characters:
     - Uppercase character (A-Z).
     - Lowercase character (a-z).
     - Number.
     - Special character.
   - Must not be the same as the user name.
3. Enter the password again in the **Confirm password** field.
4. Click **Ok**.

   This opens a window with the IP address of the Sandbox server. You can enter this address in your web browser to open the Sandbox web interface. To log in, use the Sandbox administrator account that you have created.

   The Sandbox server will restart.

Proceed to configuration of the Sandbox component through the web interface.

Deploying the Central Node and Sensor components as a cluster

A cluster must include at least 4 servers: 2 storage servers and 2 processing servers. You can use the Sizing Guide determine the right number of servers for your organization.

Deployment of the Central Node and Sensor components in the form of a cluster includes the following steps:

1. **Deploying the first storage server**

   The first step is to deploy the storage server. After the storage server is deployed, you can add additional storage and processing servers to the cluster.

2. **Deploying processing servers and additional storage servers**

   You can deploy the servers in any order.

3. **Configuring the sizing settings of the application**

   At the final stage of cluster deployment, you need to configure the scaling settings of the application: specify the planned volume of SPAN traffic, email traffic, the number of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component, as well as the size of the Storage and event database.

The Central Node component is always installed together with the Sensor component. If you need to use the Central Node component separately, when deploying the processing server, turn off receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports at step 11.

If you have a cluster deployed on physical servers and want to add more hard drives to these servers or replace some of the existing drives and then reinstall the cluster, you must purge the drives previously allocated for the OSD (Object Storage Daemon) on the storage servers before installing components. Otherwise, the application is not guaranteed to work correctly. If you want to completely disconnect the drives and no longer plan to reconnect them to the server, purging the drives is not necessary.

When deploying a cluster on virtual servers, it is strongly not recommended to use the E1000 network adapter. If you select E1000 as the network adapter, the application displays the following error: "Error processing TAA rules. Try disabling some of the user rules." We recommend using the VMXNET 3 network adapter.

Deploying a storage server

To deploy a data storage server, you need to run a disk image with the Central Node and Sensor components.

If an error occurred while performing the steps of the Setup Wizard, contact Technical Support.

Step 1. Selecting a server role

At this step of the wizard, you must select the role of the server. The following role are available:

- **1 (storage node)**.

  This role is for installing a storage server for deploying the Central Node component as a cluster.

- **2 (computation node)**.

  This role is for installing a processing server for deploying the Central Node component as a cluster.

- **3 (single mode (central node))**.

  This role is for installing the Central Node and Sensor components on the same server.

- **4 (sensor node)**.

  This role is for installing the Sensor component on a standalone server.

To select a server role:

1. Enter one of the following numbers:

   - 1 if you want to install a storage server for deploying the Central Node component as a cluster.
   - 2 if you want to install a processing server for deploying the Central Node component as a cluster.

     > The role also includes the installation and configuration of the Sensor component.

   - 3 if you want to install the Central Node and Sensor components on the same server.
   - 4 if you want to install the Sensor component on a standalone server.

2. Press **ENTER**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 2. Selecting the deployment mode

At this step of the wizard, you must select the server deployment mode. The following deployment modes are available:

- **1 (first node installation)**.

  This mode is used when deploying the first server in the cluster.

- **2 (add extra node to the cluster)**.

  This mode is used when deploying a server that you want to add to an existing cluster.

To select a deployment mode:

1. Enter one of the following numbers:
   - 1 to deploy the first server in the cluster.
   - 2 to deploy a server that you want to add to an existing cluster.
2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 3. Selecting a disk for installing the component

To select a disk for installing the component:

1. Enter the number of the relevant disk.
2. Press **Enter**.
3. Do the following:
   - Enter **y** if you want to confirm the drive selection.
   - Enter **n** if you want to select a different drive.
4. If you selected **n**, repeat steps 1-2 of these instructions.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 4. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy

To continue installation, you need to read the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy and accept their terms. Installation will not continue until you accept the terms of the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy.

To accept the terms of the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy:

1. Press **Enter**.
2. Read the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy.
   To move up and down, you can use the keys: ↑ and ↓, PageUp and PageDown, or **Enter**.
3. If you accept the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 5. Selecting a network mask for cluster server addressing

We recommend using the default values.

The netmask must not match netmasks used in the organization's infrastructure.

To specify the network mask for cluster server addressing:

- If you want to use the predefined value for the network mask, press **Enter**.
  Default value: 198.18.0.0/16.
- If you want to specify a different network mask, enter the value and press **Enter**.
  The mask must match the template: x.x.0.0/16.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 6. Selecting a network mask for addressing of application components

At this step, you must specify the network mask for addressing the main application components (services) that will operate on servers with the Central Node component.

The network for application component addressing must not overlap with the network for cluster server addressing.

To specify the network mask for addressing the main components of the application:

- If you want to use the predefined value for the network mask, press **Enter**.
  Default value: 198.19.0.0/16.
- If you want to specify a different network mask, enter the value and press **Enter**.
  The mask must match the template: x.x.0.0/16.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 7. Selecting the cluster network interface

The cluster network interface is used for communication between cluster servers.

To select the cluster network interface:

1. Select the row containing the network interface that is used for the internal network.
   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys. The selected row is highlighted in red.
2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 8. Selecting the external network interface

The external network interface is used for SSH access to the server, managing the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, and other external connections.

To select the external network interface:

1. Select the row containing the network interface that is used for the external network.
   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys. The selected row is highlighted in red.
2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 9. Selecting the method of obtaining IP addresses for network interfaces

To select a method for obtaining an IP address for network interfaces:

1. Select the row containing the **Configuration type:** and press **Enter**.
   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys. The selected row is highlighted in red.
2. In the opened window, select one of the following options:
   - **dhcp**.
   - **static**.
3. If you selected **static**:
   a. Select the row containing the parameter and press the **Enter** key.
   b. In the opened window, enter the required data and press **Enter** twice.

   > You need to specify a value for each parameter.

4. Select the row containing **Save**.

5. Press **Enter**.

   The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 10. Creating an administrator account and authenticating the server in the cluster

During this step, you need to do one of the following:

- Create an administrator account if you are deploying the first server in the cluster.
- Authenticate a server in the cluster if you are deploying additional storage servers.

Creating the administrator account

> An administrator account is only required when deploying the first server in the cluster. If you are deploying an additional storage server, instead of opening a window that prompts you to create an administrator account, the application prompts you to authenticate the server in the cluster.

When deploying the first server in the cluster, you need to create an administrator account. This account is used to work in the web interface for sizing management, the application administrator menu, and to work in Technical Support Mode.

By default, the user name of the administrator account is *admin*. You must enter a password for that user account.

To enter a password for the administrator user account:

1. In the **password** field, enter the password for the administrator account.

   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys. The selected row is highlighted in red.

2. In the **confirm** field, enter the password again.

3. Select **Ok** and press **Enter**.

   The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Authenticating the server in the cluster

> Authenticating a server in the cluster is only required when deploying additional storage servers. If you are deploying the first server in the cluster, the application prompts you to create an administrator account instead of authenticating the server.

To authenticate a server in the cluster, you need to enter the admin account password that was set when the first server in the cluster was deployed.

To authenticate a server in the cluster:

1. In the **password** field, enter the password for the administrator account.
2. Select **Ok** and press **Enter**.

   To select a button, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys.

The server in the cluster will be authenticated. The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 11. Adding DNS server addresses

Configure the DNS settings for the operation of servers with application components.

To add DNS server addresses:

1. Enter the IP address of the primary DNS server in IPv4 format.

   > You must enter at least one DNS server address.

2. If you want to add the IP address of an additional DNS server, press **Enter** and enter the address of the server.
3. Having added all DNS servers, press **Enter** twice.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 12. Selecting disks for the Ceph storage

Select the disks for the Ceph storage. The number of drives is determined according to the scaling guide.

To select disks for the Ceph storage:

1. Select the row containing the required drive.

   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys. The selected row is highlighted in red.

2. Press **Enter**.
3. Repeat steps 1-2 to select the following drives.

The configuration will take some time. Then the installation is complete. You can proceed to the configuration of cluster servers in the web interface for sizing management.

Deploying the processing server

To deploy a processing server, you need to run a disk image with the Central Node and Sensor components.

> If an error occurred while performing the steps of the Setup Wizard, contact Technical Support.

Step 1. Selecting a server role

At this step of the wizard, you must select the role of the server. The following role are available:

- **1 (storage node)**.
  This role is for installing a storage server for deploying the Central Node component as a cluster.
- **2 (computation node)**.
  This role is for installing a processing server for deploying the Central Node component as a cluster.
- **3 (single mode (central node))**.
  This role is for installing the Central Node and Sensor components on the same server.
- **4 (sensor node)**.
  This role is for installing the Sensor component on a standalone server.

To select a server role:

1. Enter one of the following numbers:
   - 1 if you want to install a storage server for deploying the Central Node component as a cluster.
   - 2 if you want to install a processing server for deploying the Central Node component as a cluster.

     The role also includes the installation and configuration of the Sensor component.
   - 3 if you want to install the Central Node and Sensor components on the same server.
   - 4 if you want to install the Sensor component on a standalone server.
2. Press **ENTER**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 2. Selecting the deployment mode

At this step of the wizard, you must select the server deployment mode. The following deployment modes are available:

- **1 (first node installation)**.
  This mode is used when deploying the first server in the cluster.
- **2 (add extra node to the cluster)**.
  This mode is used when deploying a server that you want to add to an existing cluster.

To select a deployment mode:

1. Enter one of the following numbers:
   - 1 to deploy the first server in the cluster.
   - 2 to deploy a server that you want to add to an existing cluster.
2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 3. Selecting a disk for installing the component

To select a disk for installing the component:

1. Enter the number of the relevant disk.
2. Press **Enter**.
3. Do the following:
   - Enter **y** if you want to confirm the drive selection.
   - Enter **n** if you want to select a different drive.
4. If you selected **n**, repeat steps 1-2 of these instructions.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 4. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy

To continue installation, you need to read the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy and accept their terms. Installation will not continue until you accept the terms of the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy.

To accept the terms of the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy:

1. Press **Enter**.
2. Read the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy.
   To move up and down, you can use the keys: ↑ and ↓, PageUp and PageDown, or **Enter**.
3. If you accept the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 5. Selecting a network mask for cluster server addressing

We recommend using the default values.

The netmask must not match netmasks used in the organization's infrastructure.

To specify the network mask for cluster server addressing:

- If you want to use the predefined value for the network mask, press **Enter**.
  Default value: 198.18.0.0/16.
- If you want to specify a different network mask, enter the value and press **Enter**.
  The mask must match the template: x.x.0.0/16.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 6. Selecting a network mask for addressing of application components

At this step, you must specify the network mask for addressing the main application components (services) that will operate on servers with the Central Node component.

The network for application component addressing must not overlap with the network for cluster server addressing.

To specify the network mask for addressing the main components of the application:

- If you want to use the predefined value for the network mask, press **Enter**.
  Default value: 198.19.0.0/16.
- If you want to specify a different network mask, enter the value and press **Enter**.
  The mask must match the template: x.x.0.0/16.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 7. Selecting the cluster network interface

The cluster network interface is used for communication between cluster servers.

To select the cluster network interface:

1. Select the row containing the network interface that is used for the internal network.

   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys. The selected row is highlighted in red.

2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 8. Selecting the external network interface

The external network interface is used for SSH access to the server, managing the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, and other external connections.

To select the external network interface:

1. Select the row containing the network interface that is used for the external network.

   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys. The selected row is highlighted in red.

2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 9. Selecting the method of obtaining IP addresses for network interfaces

To select a method for obtaining an IP address for network interfaces:

1. Select the row containing the **Configuration type:** and press **Enter**.

   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys. The selected row is highlighted in red.

2. In the opened window, select one of the following options:

   - **dhcp**.
   - **static**.

3. If you selected **static**:

   a. Select the row containing the parameter and press the **Enter** key.

   b. In the opened window, enter the required data and press **Enter** twice.

   > You need to specify a value for each parameter.

4. Select the row containing **Save**.
5. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 10. Authenticating the server in the cluster

To authenticate a server in the cluster, you need to enter the admin account password that was set when the first server in the cluster was deployed.

To authenticate a server in the cluster:

1. In the **password** field, enter the password for the administrator account.
2. Select **Ok** and press **Enter**.

   To select a button, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys.

The server in the cluster will be authenticated. The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 11. Configuring receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports

To turn on receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports:

1. Enter **y**.
2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

To turn off receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports:

1. Enter **n**.
2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 12. Adding DNS server addresses

Configure the DNS settings for the operation of servers with application components.

To add DNS server addresses:

1. Enter the IP address of the primary DNS server in IPv4 format.

> You must enter at least one DNS server address.

2. If you want to add the IP address of an additional DNS server, press **Enter** and enter the address of the server.

3. Having added all DNS servers, press **Enter**.

Installation is complete. You can proceed to the configuration of cluster servers in the web interface for sizing management.

Purging hard drives on storage servers

If you have a cluster deployed on servers and want to add more hard drives to these servers or replace some of the existing drives and then reinstall the cluster, you must purge the drives previously allocated for the OSD (Object Storage Daemon) on the storage servers before installing components. Otherwise, the application is not guaranteed to work correctly.

To purge the disks allocated for OSD on a live storage server:

1. Sign in to the management console of the server where you want to purge the disks over SSH or through the terminal.

2. Stop the OSD starter service by running `sudo systemctl stop kata-osd-starter.service`.

3. Stop OSD containers by running `sudo docker ps --filter name=osd -q | xargs docker stop`.

4. Get a list of OSD disks by running `sudo ceph-volume --cluster ceph lvm list | grep devices`.

5. Purge these disks by running `sudo ceph-volume lvm zap --destroy /dev/<disk name>`.

   You must run this command for each drive that you got at step 4. For example: `sudo ceph-volume lvm zap --destroy /dev/sda`.

The OSD daemon is removed from the disks.

If the server is not live, you must delete the information about volume groups from each disk allocated for the OSD.

To delete the information about volume groups from each disk allocated for the OSD on a non-live server:

1. Start the server with the alternative operating system.

2. Get group IDs for each disk allocated for the OSD using the `sudo pvs` command.

   This command outputs a table where `PV` are physical volumes, `VG` indicates logical group membership, `Fmt` indicates the volume format, and `Size` indicates the physical volume size.

3. Remove the relevant volume groups by running `sudo vgremove <volume group ID>`.

Information about volume groups on disks allocated for OSD is deleted.

Installing the Central Node and Sensor components on the server

Deployment of the Central Node and Sensor components on a single server includes the following steps:

1. **Installing the Central Node and Sensor components**

   To install the components on the physical server, you need to run a disk image with the Central Node and Sensor components.

   To install components on a virtual server, you need to connect the disk image with the Central Node and Sensor components to the selected virtual machine and run it. The installation starts immediately after the virtual machine is turned on. You can manage the installation process using the console of the virtual machine.

   > When installing components on a virtual machine, you must select the BIOS boot mode for the virtual machine: Options → Boot Options → Firmware → BIOS.

2. **Configuring the sizing settings of the application**

   At the final stage of cluster deployment, you need to configure the scaling settings of the application: specify the planned volume of SPAN traffic, email traffic, the number of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component, as well as the size of the Storage and event database.

> The Central Node component is always installed together with the Sensor component. If you need to use the Central Node component separately, turn off receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports in step 10.

> If an error occurred while performing the steps of the Setup Wizard, contact Technical Support.

Step 1. Selecting a server role

At this step of the wizard, you must select the role of the server. The following role are available:

- **1 (storage node)**.

  This role is for installing a storage server for deploying the Central Node component as a cluster.

- **2 (computation node)**.

  This role is for installing a processing server for deploying the Central Node component as a cluster.

- **3 (single mode (central node))**.

  This role is for installing the Central Node and Sensor components on the same server.

- **4 (sensor node)**.

  This role is for installing the Sensor component on a standalone server.

To select a server role:

1. Enter one of the following numbers:
   - 1 if you want to install a storage server for deploying the Central Node component as a cluster.
   - 2 if you want to install a processing server for deploying the Central Node component as a cluster.

     The role also includes the installation and configuration of the Sensor component.

   - 3 if you want to install the Central Node and Sensor components on the same server.
   - 4 if you want to install the Sensor component on a standalone server.
2. Press **ENTER**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 2. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy

To continue installation, you need to read the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy and accept their terms. Installation will not continue until you accept the terms of the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy.

To accept the terms of the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy:

1. Press **Enter**.
2. Read the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy.

   To move up and down, you can use the keys: ↑ and ↓, PageUp and PageDown, or **Enter**.
3. If you accept the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 3. Selecting a disk for installing the component

To select a disk for installing the component:

1. Enter the number of the relevant disk.
2. Press **Enter**.

3. Do the following:

   - Enter **y** if you want to confirm the drive selection.
   - Enter **n** if you want to select a different drive.

4. If you selected **n**, repeat steps 1-2 of these instructions.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 4. Allocating the disk for the Targeted Attack Analyzer component's database

> For optimal performance of the Targeted Attack Analyzer component, it is advised that you allocate on the server a physical disk of at least 1 TB for the component's database.

In this step, you can allocate a physical disk for the Targeted Attack Analyzer component's database or decline allocating a physical disk.

To allocate the disk for the Targeted Attack Analyzer component's database:

1. Enter **y**.
2. Press **Enter**.
3. Enter the number of the relevant disk.
4. Press **Enter**.
5. Do the following:

   - Enter **y** if you want to confirm the drive selection.
   - Enter **n** if you want to select a different drive.

6. If you selected **n**, repeat steps 4-5 of these instructions.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

To decline allocating the disk for the Targeted Attack Analyzer component's database:

1. Enter **n**.
2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 5. Selecting a network mask for cluster server addressing

We recommend using the default values.

The netmask must not match netmasks used in the organization's infrastructure.

To specify the network mask for cluster server addressing:

- If you want to use the predefined value for the network mask, press **Enter**.
  Default value: 198.18.0.0/16.
- If you want to specify a different network mask, enter the value and press **Enter**.
  The mask must match the template: x.x.0.0/16.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 6. Selecting the external network interface

The external network interface is used for SSH access to the server, managing the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, and other external connections.

To select the external network interface:

1. Select the row containing the network interface that is used for the external network.
   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys. The selected row is highlighted in red.
2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 7. Selecting the method of obtaining IP addresses for network interfaces

To select a method for obtaining an IP address for network interfaces:

1. Select the row containing the **Configuration type:** and press **Enter**.
   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys. The selected row is highlighted in red.
2. In the opened window, select one of the following options:
   - **dhcp**.
   - **static**.

3. If you selected **static**:

   a. Select the row containing the parameter and press the **Enter** key.

   b. In the opened window, enter the required data and press **Enter** twice.

   > You need to specify a value for each parameter.

4. Select the row containing **Save**.

5. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 8. Creating the administrator account

The administrator account is used to work in the web interface for sizing management, the application administrator menu, and to work in Technical Support Mode.

By default, the user name of the administrator account is *admin*. You must enter a password for that user account.

To enter a password for the administrator user account:

1. In the **password** field, enter the password for the administrator account.
   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys. The selected row is highlighted in red.

2. In the **confirm** field, enter the password again.

3. Select **Ok** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 9. Adding DNS server addresses

Configure the DNS settings for the operation of servers with application components.

To add DNS server addresses:

1. Enter the IP address of the primary DNS server in IPv4 format.

   > You must enter at least one DNS server address.

2. If you want to add the IP address of an additional DNS server, press **Enter** and enter the address of the server.

3. Having added all DNS servers, press **Enter** twice.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 10. Configuring receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports

In this step, you can configure receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports.

To turn on receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports:

1. Enter **y**.
2. Press **Enter**.

   The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

To turn off receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports:

1. Enter **n**.
2. Press **Enter**.

   The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 11. Configuring time synchronization with an NTP server

Configure synchronization of the server time with the NTP server.

To configure time synchronization with an NTP server:

1. Enter the IP address or name of the NTP server.
2. If you want to add an additional NTP server, press **Enter** and enter the IP address or name of the NTP server.
3. Having added all NTP servers, press **Enter** twice.

   The configuration will take some time. Then the installation is complete. You can proceed to server configuration in the web interface for scaling management.

Installing the Sensor component on a standalone server

To install the Sensor component on a physical server, you need to run a disk image with the Central Node and Sensor components.

To install the Sensor component on a virtual server, you need to connect the disk image with the Central Node and Sensor components to the selected virtual machine and run it. The installation starts immediately after the virtual machine is turned on. You can manage the installation process using the console of the virtual machine.

Step 1. Selecting a server role

At this step of the wizard, you must select the role of the server. The following role are available:

- **1 (storage node)**.
  This role is for installing a storage server for deploying the Central Node component as a cluster.
- **2 (computation node)**.
  This role is for installing a processing server for deploying the Central Node component as a cluster.
- **3 (single mode (central node))**.
  This role is for installing the Central Node and Sensor components on the same server.
- **4 (sensor node)**.
  This role is for installing the Sensor component on a standalone server.

To select a server role:

1. Enter one of the following numbers:
   - 1 if you want to install a storage server for deploying the Central Node component as a cluster.
   - 2 if you want to install a processing server for deploying the Central Node component as a cluster.

     The role also includes the installation and configuration of the Sensor component.

   - 3 if you want to install the Central Node and Sensor components on the same server.
   - 4 if you want to install the Sensor component on a standalone server.
2. Press **ENTER**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 2. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy

To continue installation, you need to read the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy and accept their terms. Installation will not continue until you accept the terms of the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy.

To accept the terms of the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy:

1. Press **Enter**.
2. Read the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy.

   To move up and down, you can use the keys: ↑ and ↓, PageUp and PageDown, or **Enter**.
3. If you accept the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 3. Selecting a disk for installing the component

To select a disk for installing the component:

1. Enter the number of the relevant disk.
2. Press **Enter**.
3. Do the following:
   - Enter **y** if you want to confirm the drive selection.
   - Enter **n** if you want to select a different drive.
4. If you selected **n**, repeat steps 1-2 of these instructions.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 4. Selecting the external network interface

The external network interface is used for SSH access to the server, managing the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, and other external connections.

To select the external network interface:

1. Select the row containing the network interface that is used for the external network.

   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys. The selected row is highlighted in red.
2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 5. Connecting to the server with the Central Node component

To connect to the server on which you installed the Central Node component:

1. In the Central Node field, enter the IP address or URL of the server with the Central Node component.

   If the Central Node component is deployed as a cluster, you can enter the IP address of any server in the cluster.

2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 6. Creating the administrator account

The administrator account is used to manage the Sensor component in the application administrator menu and in Technical Support Mode.

By default, the user name of the administrator account is *admin*. You must enter a password for that user account.

To enter a password for the administrator user account:

1. In the **password** field, enter the password for the administrator account.

   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys. The selected row is highlighted in red.

2. In the **confirm** field, enter the password again.

3. Select **Ok** and press **Enter**.

The installation will be complete.

Configuring the sizing settings of the application

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

You can change the operational load on the Central Node component. For example, you can connect additional hosts with the Endpoint Agent component or servers with the Sensor component to the Central Node component. To do this, you need to specify the planned volume of SPAN traffic, mail traffic, the number of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component, as well as the size of the Storage and event database. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will determine the optimal configuration of the Central Node servers taking into account the specified settings.

If the Central Node component is deployed as a cluster, the application determines the optimal configuration of all servers in the cluster.

To configure the Central Node servers:

1. In a browser on any computer on which access to the Central Node server has been allowed, enter the IP address of the server with the Central Node component into the browser's address bar.

   If you are using the fault-tolerant version of the application, you can enter the IP address of any server of the Central Node cluster or **the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the cluster**.

   To ensure uninterrupted access to the program web interface, you can configure the Round Robin function on the DNS server. To do this, log in to the web interface of the first healthy server of the Central Node cluster.

   An input window for account credentials of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user opens.

2. Enter the administrator user name "admin" and the password that was set during installation of the application.

3. Select the **Local administrator** check box.

4. Click **Log in**.

5. If you are using the high availability version of the application, go to the **Server configuration** section.

   For the non-high-availability version of the application, only this section is displayed.

6. In the **Number of Endpoint Agents** field, specify the number of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component that you plan on using.

   If you are not using a KEDR license key, specify 0.

7. In the **Mail traffic, messages per second** field, specify the planned number of emails per second.

   If you are not using a KATA license key, specify 0.

8. In the **SPAN traffic, Mbps** field, specify the planned amount of traffic from SPAN ports on servers with the Sensor component.

   If you are not using a KATA license key, specify 0.

9. In the **Available disk space** section, specify the size of the event database and Storage in one of the following ways:

   - Move the slider separating the **Events database** and **Storage** to the left or right.
   - Specify the values in the **Events database, GB** and **Storage, GB** fields.

   If you are using the Central Node component that is not deployed as a fault-tolerant cluster, you must keep default settings for the events database and Storage.

   If the Central Node component is deployed as a high availability cluster, use the Sizing Guide to calculate the size of the events database.

   Please note that if the disk space allocated to the events database is full, the Central Node component will not receive data from the Endpoint Agent component. If you run out of disk space, make sure you have sized the events database correctly. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not check the entered values for correctness.

   Disk space is automatically reserved for the alert database when the Central Node component is installed.

10. If necessary, you can leave free space on disk by moving the last slider on the right.

11. Click **Configure**.

    Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will determine the optimal server configuration in accordance with the specified settings and configure the cluster servers. If the configuration is completed successfully, the web interface login window will appear.

Configuring the integration of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component

This section contains information on how to configure the integration of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux, if they are used in the role of the Endpoint Agent component.

You must follow the steps both on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform side using the web interface and application administrator menu and on the side of the application that is being used as the Endpoint Agent component using the Administration Console (MMC).

If you use Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux in the role of the Endpoint Agent component, for more information about integration with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, see *Managing Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows* and *Managing Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux* sections.

Configuring the trusted connection of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application

You must configure a trusted connection of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent both on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform side using the web interface and application administrator menu and on the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent side using the KSC Administration Console.

You can use one of the following options to configure a trusted connection:

1. Using a TLS certificate of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. Without validating the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent TLS certificate on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform side.

   a. Configuring the connection with the Central Node server without validating the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

      Kaspersky Endpoint Agent establishes a trusted connection with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform using the TLS certificate of the Central Node server. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not validate the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent when Kaspersky Endpoint Agent tries to connect.

   b. Configuring the connection with the Sensor server without validating the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

      Traffic redirection to the Sensor server is configured in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. Kaspersky Endpoint Agent establishes a trusted connection with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform using the TLS certificate of the Sensor server. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not validate the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent when Kaspersky Endpoint Agent tries to connect.

2. Using TLS certificates of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and Kaspersky Endpoint Agent. Validating the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent TLS certificate on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform side.

   a. Configuring the connection with the Central Node server with validation of the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

      Kaspersky Endpoint Agent establishes a trusted connection with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform using the TLS certificate of the Central Node server. Additional security of the connection is configured in Kaspersky Endpoint Agent and the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent is uploaded. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform validates the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent when Kaspersky Endpoint Agent tries to connect.

   b. Configuring the connection with the Sensor server with validation of the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

      Traffic redirection to the Sensor server is configured in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. Kaspersky Endpoint Agent establishes a trusted connection with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform using the TLS certificate of the Sensor server. Additional security of the connection is configured in Kaspersky Endpoint Agent and the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent is uploaded. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform validates the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent when Kaspersky Endpoint Agent tries to connect.

Configuring the connection with the Central Node server without validating the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent establishes a trusted connection with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform using the TLS certificate of the Central Node server. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not validate the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent when Kaspersky Endpoint Agent tries to connect.

If you are using this alternative configuration for the trusted connection, the procedure is as follows:

1. **Generate or upload an independently prepared TLS certificate of the Central Node server in the web interface of Central Node (if the TLS certificate of the Central Node has not been previously created).**
2. **Downloading the TLS certificate of the Central Node server.**
3. **Uploading the TLS certificate of the Central Node server to Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using the Administration Console (MMC).**

Configuring the connection with the Central Node server with validation of the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent establishes a trusted connection with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform using the TLS certificate of the Central Node server. Additional security of the connection is configured in Kaspersky Endpoint Agent and the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent is uploaded. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform validates the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent when Kaspersky Endpoint Agent tries to connect.

If you are using this alternative configuration for the trusted connection, the procedure is as follows:

1. Generate or upload an independently prepared TLS certificate of the Central Node server in the web interface of Central Node (if the TLS certificate of the Central Node has not been previously created).
2. Downloading the TLS certificate of the Central Node server.
3. Uploading the TLS certificate of the Central Node server to Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using the Administration Console (MMC)
4. Enabling the validation of the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent TLS certificate in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
5. Generating and downloading the cryptographic container with the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent or uploading an independently prepared TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

   If you want to prepare the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent on your own, you must create a PFX cryptographic container with your certificate. For details on managing TLS certificates, see the OpenSSL documentation.

6. Uploading the cryptographic container with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent certificate to Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using the Administration Console (MMC).

Configuring the connection with the Sensor server without validating the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Traffic redirection to the Sensor server is configured in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. Kaspersky Endpoint Agent establishes a trusted connection with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform using the TLS certificate of the Sensor server. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not validate the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent when Kaspersky Endpoint Agent tries to connect.

If you are using this alternative configuration for the trusted connection, the procedure is as follows:

1. Enabling traffic redirection from Kaspersky Endpoint Agent to the Sensor server
2. Authorizing the Sensor component on a Central Node server
3. Generating or uploading an independently prepared TLS certificate for the Sensor server in the administrator menu of the Sensor server
4. Downloading the TLS certificate of the Sensor server to your computer
5. Uploading the TLS certificate of the Sensor server to Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using the Administration Console (MMC)

Configuring the connection with the Sensor server with validation of the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Traffic redirection to the Sensor server is configured in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. Kaspersky Endpoint Agent establishes a trusted connection with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform using the TLS certificate of the Sensor server. Additional security of the connection is configured in Kaspersky Endpoint Agent and the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent is uploaded. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform validates the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent when Kaspersky Endpoint Agent tries to connect.

If you are using this alternative configuration for the trusted connection, the procedure is as follows:

1. Enabling traffic redirection from Kaspersky Endpoint Agent to the Sensor server
2. Authorizing the Sensor component on a Central Node server
3. Generating or uploading an independently prepared TLS certificate for the Sensor server in the administrator menu of the Sensor server
4. Downloading the TLS certificate of the Sensor server to your computer
5. Uploading the TLS certificate of the Sensor server to Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using the Administration Console (MMC).
6. Enabling the validation of the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent TLS certificate in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
7. Generating and downloading the cryptographic container with the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent or uploading an independently prepared TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

   If you want to prepare the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent on your own, you must create a PFX cryptographic container with your certificate. For details on managing TLS certificates, see the OpenSSL documentation.

8. Uploading the cryptographic container with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent certificate to Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using the KSC Administration Console.

Downloading the TLS certificate of the Central Node server

To download the TLS certificate of the server:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.
2. In the **Server certificate** section, click **Download**.

The server certificate file will be saved in the downloads folder of the browser.

Generating a TLS certificate for the Central Node server in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

If you are already using a Central Node server TLS certificate, generating a new certificate causes the currently used certificate to be removed and replaced with the newly generated certificate.

You must enter the data of the new certificate everywhere the old certificate was used.

If you replace the TLS certificate, you will need to:

- Reauthorize mail sensors (KSMG, KLMS) on Central Node.
- Reconfigure the connection of Central Node, PCN, and SCN to Sandbox.
- Reconfigure traffic forwarding from Endpoint Agent to Sensor and trusted connection with Endpoint Agent.
- Upload a new certificate to Active Directory (if you are using Active Directory).

Please delete all Endpoint Agent host isolation rules. Connection with the isolated hosts and control over them will be lost.

To generate a TLS certificate for a Central Node server:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.
3. In the **Server certificate** section, click **Generate**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.
4. Click **Yes**.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform generates a new TLS certificate. The page is automatically refreshed.

Uploading an independently prepared TLS certificate for the Central Node server using the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

You can choose to prepare the TLS certificate on your own and upload it using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface.

The TLS certificate file prepared for upload must satisfy the following requirements:

- The file must contain the certificate itself and a private encryption key for the connection.
- The file must be in PEM format.

  The application does not support other formats of certificates.

  If you have prepared a certificate in a different format, you must convert it to the PEM format.
- The private key length must be 2,048 bits or longer.

For more details on preparing TLS certificates for import, please refer to the documentation on Open SSL.

If you are already using a Central Node server TLS certificate, uploading a new certificate causes the currently used certificate to be removed and replaced with the uploaded certificate.

You must enter the data of the new certificate everywhere the old certificate was used.

If you replace the TLS certificate, you will need to:

- Reauthorize mail sensors (KSMG, KLMS) on Central Node.
- Reconfigure the connection of Central Node, PCN, and SCN to Sandbox.
- Reconfigure traffic forwarding from Endpoint Agent to Sensor and trusted connection with Endpoint Agent.

Delete all Endpoint Agent host isolation rules. The connection with isolated hosts is severed and you cannot manage them.

To upload an independently prepared TLS certificate using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.

3. In the **Server certificate** section, click **Upload**.

   This opens the file selection window.

4. Select a TLS certificate file to download and click the **Open** button.

   This closes the file selection window.

   The TLS certificate is added to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

   Reconfigure traffic forwarding from Endpoint Agent to Sensor and trusted connection with Endpoint Agent.

Please delete all Endpoint Agent host isolation rules. Connection with the isolated hosts and control over them will be lost.

Uploading a TLS certificate of the Central Node server or Sensor to Kaspersky Endpoint Agent

To upload a TLS certificate of the Central Node server or Sensor to Kaspersky Endpoint Agent

1. Open the KSC Console.
2. In the console tree, open the **Policies** folder.
3. In the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent policy section, select the required policy and double-click it to open its properties.

   The properties of the selected policy are displayed.

4. In the **KATA integration** section, select the **KATA integration settings** subsection.
5. Select the **Enable KATA integration** check box.
6. In the **Address** field, enter the address of the Central Node server of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform program that you want to configure integration with, and select a port to use for the connection. Port 443 is used by default.
7. Select the **Use pinned certificate to secure connection** check box.
8. Click **Add a TLS certificate...**.

   This opens the **Adding TLS certificate** window.

9. To add a TLS certificate previously created on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform side and downloaded, do one of the following:

   - Add a certificate file. To do so, click **Browse...**; in the window that is displayed, select a certificate file and click **Open**.
   - Paste the content of the certificate file to the **Paste TLS certificate data:** field.

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent can store only one TLS certificate for the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server. If you have added a TLS certificate before and are adding a TLS certificate again, only the last added certificate is used.

If you have configured traffic redirection to the server with the Sensor component, you must download the TLS certificate of the Sensor server and then upload it here.

10. Click **Add**.

    Information about the added TLS certificate is displayed in the section for integration with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

11. Make sure the toggle switch in the upper right corner of the group of settings is in the **Under policy** position.

12. Click **OK**.

The TLS certificate of the Central Node server is downloaded to Endpoint Agent.

Enabling the validation of the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent TLS certificate in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

To enable trusted connection with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.

2. In the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface window, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.

3. In the **Endpoint Agent certificates** section, turn on the **Validate Endpoint Agent TLS certificates** switch.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will check TLS certificate data when Kaspersky Endpoint Agent attempts to connect to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Generating a TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and downloading a cryptographic container

To generate a TLS certificate for the connection of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.
2. In the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface window, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.
3. In the **Endpoint Agent certificates** section, click **Generate**.

   The new TLS certificate is displayed in the TLS certificate table. The cryptographic container fine with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent certificate in the PFX format is downloaded to the browser downloads folder on your local computer.

You can use the cryptographic container to configure the validation of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent TLS certificate by the Central Node server when attempting to connect to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

By default, the cryptographic container is not password-protected. You can protect the cryptographic container with a password. For details on managing TLS certificates, see the OpenSSL documentation.

The cryptographic container contains only the certificate file, but not the private key file. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not store private keys for the TLS encryption of the connection.

Uploading an independently prepared TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

You can choose to prepare the TLS certificate on your own and upload it using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface.

The TLS certificate file prepared for upload must satisfy the following requirements:

- The file must contain the certificate itself and a private encryption key for the connection.
- The file must be in PEM format.
- The private key length must be 2,048 bits or longer.

For more details on preparing TLS certificates for import, please refer to the documentation on Open SSL.

If you want to prepare the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent on your own, you must create a PFX cryptographic container with your certificate and upload the cryptographic container to Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.

You can use the cryptographic container to configure the validation of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent TLS certificate by the Central Node server when attempting to connect to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

For details on managing TLS certificates, see the OpenSSL documentation.

The cryptographic container must contain only the certificate file, but not the private key file. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not store private keys for the TLS encryption of the connection.

To upload a manually prepared TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.
2. In the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface window, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.
3. In the **Endpoint Agent certificates** section, click **Upload**.

   This opens the file selection window.
4. Select a TLS certificate file to download and click the **Open** button.

   This closes the file selection window.

The TLS certificate is added to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Viewing the table of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent TLS certificates in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

To view the list of TLS certificates for connection with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.
2. In the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface window, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.

3. The **Endpoint Agent certificates** section displays a list of TLS certificate with the following details for each certificate:

   - **TLS certificate** – Fingerprint of the certificate.
   - **Serial number** —Serial number of the certificate.
   - **Expires** —Expiration date of the certificate.

Filtering and searching Kaspersky Endpoint Agent TLS certificates in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

You can filter TLS certificate displayed in the table by one or both columns (**TLS certificate** and **Serial number**) or enter search criteria to search TLS certificates by these columns.

To filter and search TLS certificates in the table:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.
2. In the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface window, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.
3. The **Endpoint Agent certificates** section displays a list of TLS certificate with the following details for each certificate:

   - **TLS certificate** – Fingerprint of the certificate.
   - **Serial number** —Serial number of the certificate.
   - **Expires** —Expiration date of the certificate.

4. If you want to filter or search TLS certificates by certificate fingerprint:

   a. Click the **TLS certificate** link to open the filter configuration window.

   b. In the **TLS certificate** text box, enter a few characters of the certificate fingerprint.

   c. Click **Apply**.

5. If you want to filter or search TLS certificates by serial number:

   a. Click the **Serial number** link to open the filter configuration window.

   b. In the **Serial number** text box, enter a few characters of the serial number.

   c. Click **Apply**.

The table displays only those TLS certificates that match the filter criteria you have set.

To clear the filter for one or more filtering criteria:

Click to the right of the header of the table column for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

Deleting Kaspersky Endpoint Agent TLS certificates in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

To delete one or more TLS certificates for connection with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.
2. In the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface window, select the **Settings** section, **Endpoint Agent certificates** subsection.

   The **Endpoint Agent certificates** section displays a list of TLS certificates.
3. Select check boxes next to one or more TLS certificates that you want to delete.
4. Click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.
5. Click **Yes**.

The selected TLS certificates are deleted.

Configuring the validation of the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent TLS certificate by the Central Node server and uploading a cryptographic container to Kaspersky Endpoint Agent

To configure the validation of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent TLS certificate by the Central Node server and upload the cryptographic container with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent certificate to Kaspersky Endpoint Agent:

1. Open the KSC Console.
2. In the console tree, open the **Policies** folder.

3. In the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent policy section, select the required policy and double-click it to open its properties.

   The properties of the selected policy are displayed.

4. In the **KATA integration** section, select the **KATA Central Node** subsection.

5. Click **Configure additional security**.

6. In the window that opens, select the **Secure the connection with client certificate** check box.

7. Click **Upload**.

   This opens the file selection window on your local computer.

8. Select the cryptographic container file of the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent certificate that was generated on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server and downloaded to the hard drive of your computer.

9. Click **OK**.

   The window closes.

10. Make sure the toggle switch in the upper right corner of the group of settings is in the **Under policy** position.

11. Click **OK**.

The cryptographic container with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent certificate is uploaded to Kaspersky Endpoint Agent. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform now validates the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent when it tries to connect.

Configuring traffic redirection from Kaspersky Endpoint Agent to the Sensor server

You can use the server with the Sensor component as a proxy server for communication between the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application and the Central Node component to reduce the load on the Central Node component.

When configuring the traffic redirection, keep in mind the following limitations:

- The maximum incoming traffic volume for the Sensor component should not exceed 1 Gbit/s.
- The recommended channel capacity between servers hosting the Central Node and Sensor components should be 15% of the SPAN port traffic.
- The maximum allowed packet loss between servers hosting the Sensor and Central Node components should be 10% with a packet delay up to 100 ms.

You can only use the Sensor component as a proxy server if the Sensor and Central Node components are located on different servers.

If you are using the Sensor component as a proxy server, make sure to enter the IP address of the Sensor component instead of the IP address of Central Node when configuring the integration of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent on the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent side.

Enabling traffic redirection from Kaspersky Endpoint Agent to the Sensor server

To enable the use of the Sensor component as a proxy server for communication between Kaspersky Endpoint Agent and the Central Node component, do the following in the administrator menu of the server with the Sensor component:

1. In the main window of the administrator menu, select **Program settings**.
2. Press **ENTER**.

   This opens the next window of the administrator menu.
3. Select **Configure Central Node**.
4. Press **ENTER**.

   This opens a window with information about the current state of connection of the Sensor component to the Central Node component.
5. Click **Change**.
6. In the **Input Central Node IP address** window, enter the IP address of the server hosting the Central Node component.
7. Click **Ok**.

   This opens a window containing information on the Central Node component certificate.
8. Make sure that the displayed certificate matches the Central Node component certificate.
9. Click **Ok**.

   This opens a window with information about the current state of connection of the Sensor component to the Central Node component.
10. Click **Cancel**.

Using the Sensor component as a proxy server will be enabled after authorization confirmation on the server hosting the Central Node component.

Authorizing the Sensor component on a Central Node server

To authorize the Sensor component on the Central Node server, do the following in the web interface under the local administrator account:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.

   The **Server list** table displays the already connected Sensor components, and connection requests.
2. Select the IP address of the server hosting the Sensor component, the request for authorization of which you want to confirm or reject.

3. Do one of the following:

   - If you want to authorize the selected server hosting the Sensor component, click **Accept**.
   - If you want to reject the authorization of the selected server hosting the Sensor component, click **Reject**.

The authorization request will be accepted or rejected.

Generating a TLS certificate for the Sensor server in the administrator menu of the Sensor server

To create a TLS certificate for the server with the Sensor component, do the following in the administrator menu of the Sensor server:

1. In the main window of the administrator menu, select **Program settings**.
2. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the next window of the administrator menu.
3. Select **Manage server certificate**.
4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the **Certificate management** window.
5. In the lower part of the window, select **New**.
6. Press **Enter**.

   This opens a window containing information about the new certificate.
7. Click **Continue**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.
8. Click **Generate**.

   Creation of the certificate starts.
9. After creation of the certificate is completed, press **ENTER**.

   This opens a window containing information about the installed certificate.
10. Click **Continue**.

    This opens the action confirmation window.
11. Click **Ok**.

The certificate will be created. The data of previously installed certificates will be overwritten.

Uploading an independently prepared TLS certificate for the Sensor server in the administrator menu of the Sensor server

You can independently prepare a TLS certificate and upload it to the server with the Sensor component via the SCP protocol. For more details on the methods for uploading files via the SCP protocol, see the documentation for the operating system installed on the computer from which you want to upload the TLS certificate.

The TLS certificate file prepared for upload to the server must satisfy the following requirements:

- The file must contain the certificate itself and a private encryption key for the connection.
- The file must be in PEM format.
- The file name must be kata.pem.
- The private key length must be 2048 bits or longer.

For more details on preparing TLS certificates for import, please refer to the documentation on Open SSL.

To upload an independently prepared TLS certificate to the server with the Sensor component via the SCP protocol, perform the following actions in your computer's interface used for working over the SCP protocol (using the Linux operating system as an example):

1. Run the following command: `scp kata.pem admin@<IP address of the server with the Sensor component>:`
2. At the password prompt, enter the administrator password for working in the administrator menu of the server with the Sensor component that was set during installation.

The TLS certificate is uploaded to the server with the Sensor component.

To apply the uploaded TLS certificate on the server with the Sensor component, do the following in the administrator menu of the Sensor server:

1. In the main window of the administrator menu, select **Program settings**.
2. Press **ENTER**.

   This opens the next window of the administrator menu.
3. Select **Manage server certificate**.
4. Press **ENTER**.

   This opens the **Certificate management** window.
5. In the lower part of the window, select **kata.pem**.
6. Press **ENTER**.

   This opens the **Uploaded certificate** window.

7. Select **Install certificate**.

8. Press **ENTER**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

9. Click **Yes**.

   This opens a window containing information about the certificate.

10. Click **Continue**.

    This opens the action confirmation window.

11. Click **Install**.

    Installation of the certificate starts.

12. After installation of the certificate is completed, press **ENTER**.

    This opens a window containing information about the applied certificate.

13. Click **Continue**.

    This opens the action confirmation window.

14. Click **Ok**.

The certificate will be applied. The data of previously installed certificates will be overwritten.

Downloading the TLS certificate of the Sensor server to your computer

You can download a TLS certificate from the Sensor server to any computer that can connect to the Sensor server over the SCP protocol. For more details on the methods for uploading files via the SCP protocol, see the documentation for the operating system installed on the computer to which you want to download the TLS certificate.

To download the TSL certificate from the server with the Sensor component over the SCP protocol, do the following in your computer's interface used for working over the SCP protocol (using the Linux operating system as an example):

1. Run the following command: `scp admin@<IP address of the server with the Sensor component>:ssl/kata.crt`.

2. At the password prompt, enter the administrator password for working in the administrator menu of the server with the Sensor component that was set during installation.

The TLS certificate is downloaded from the server with the Sensor component to the current directory.

Configuring the integration and trusted connection with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform on the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent side

To configure integration with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform on the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent side:

1. Open the KSC Console.
2. In the console tree, open the **Policies** folder.
3. In the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent policy section, select the required policy and double-click it to open its properties.

   The properties of the selected policy are displayed.
4. In the **KATA integration** section, select the **KATA integration settings** subsection.
5. Select the **Enable KATA integration** check box.
6. In the **Address** field, enter the address of the Central Node server of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform program that you want to configure integration with, and select a port to use for the connection. Port 443 is used by default.
7. Select the **Use pinned certificate to secure connection** check box.
8. Click **Add a TLS certificate...**.

   This opens the **Adding TLS certificate** window.
9. To add a TLS certificate previously created on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform side and downloaded, do one of the following:

   - Add a certificate file. To do so, click **Browse...**; in the window that is displayed, select a certificate file and click **Open**.
   - Paste the content of the certificate file to the **Paste TLS certificate data:** field.

   Kaspersky Endpoint Agent can store only one TLS certificate for the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server. If you have added a TLS certificate before and are adding a TLS certificate again, only the last added certificate is used.

   If you have configured traffic redirection to the server with the Sensor component, you must download the TLS certificate of the Sensor server and then upload it here.
10. Click **Add**.

    Information about the added TLS certificate is displayed in the section for integration with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
11. Click **Add client certificate...**.

12. In the window that is displayed, select the **Secure with client certificate** check box.

13. Click **Download**.

    This opens the file selection window on your local computer.

14. Select the cryptographic container file of the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent certificate that was generated on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server and downloaded to the hard drive of your computer.

15. Click **OK**.

    The window closes.

16. In the **Timeout period (sec.):** field, enter the maximum response timeout of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Central Node server in seconds.

17. In the **Send sync request to KATA server every (min.)** field, enter the period in minutes.

18. If you do not want Kaspersky Endpoint Agent to send information about repeated running of processes to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server, select the **Apply TTL period for events transmission** check box. If the process is started after the next TTL period expires, Kaspersky Endpoint Agent does not consider this a repeated start of the process.

19. If you have set the "Apply TTL period for events transmission" check box, specify the time in the **TTL period (min.)** field.

20. Make sure the toggle switch in the upper right corner of the group of settings is in the **Under policy** position.

21. Click **OK**.

The integration with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform on the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent side is configured.

Getting started with the application

This section contains information about how to begin managing the application in the web interface, in the administrator menu, and in Technical Support Mode.

Getting started with the web interface for sizing management

In the web interface for sizing management, you can do the following:

- Manage the servers of the Central Node cluster.
- Configure servers hosting the Central Node component.

The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface for sizing management is protected against **CSRF attacks** and operates only if the browser used for managing the application web interface provides the Referrer header of an HTTP POST request. Make sure that the browser that you are using to work with the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface does not modify the Referrer header of an HTTP POST request. If the connection with the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is established through a proxy server of your organization, make sure that the proxy server does not modify the Referrer header of an HTTP POST request.

Cross-Site Request Forgery (also referred to as an "XSRF attack"). Attack on website users by exploiting vulnerabilities of the HTTP protocol. The attack enables actions to be performed under the guise of an authorized user of a vulnerable website. For example, under the guise of an authorized user of a vulnerable website, a hacker can covertly send a request to the server of an external payment system to transfer money to the hacker's account.

The web interface for sizing management is located on the server hosting the Central Node.

To get started in the web interface for sizing management:

1. In a browser on any computer on which access to the Central Node server has been allowed, enter the IP address of the server with the Central Node component into the browser's address bar.

   If you are using the fault-tolerant version of the application, you can enter the IP address of any server of the Central Node cluster or **the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the cluster**.

   To ensure uninterrupted access to the program web interface, you can configure the Round Robin function on the DNS server. To do this, log in to the web interface of the first healthy server of the Central Node cluster.

   An input window for account credentials of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user opens.

2. Enter the administrator user name "admin" and the password that was set during installation of the application.
3. Select the **Local administrator** check box.
4. Click **Log in**.

You can now start working in the web interface for sizing management.

For the fault-tolerant version of the application, the web interface displays the **Cluster** and **Server configuration** sections.

If you are using the non-fault-tolerant version of the application only the **Server configuration** section is displayed in the web interface.

For each user account, the number of simultaneous application management sessions is limited to one IP address. If the same user name is used to sign in to the application from a different IP address, the earlier session is terminated.

Getting started with the application web interface with a local administrator account

The web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is protected against *CSRF attacks* and operates only if the browser used for managing the application web interface provides the Referrer header of an HTTP POST request. Make sure that the browser that you are using to work with the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface does not modify the Referrer header of an HTTP POST request. If the connection with the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is established through a proxy server of your organization, make sure that the proxy server does not modify the Referrer header of an HTTP POST request.

After installing Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, you must configure the sizing settings of the application in the web interface for sizing management.

If the sizing settings of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform are not configured, it is not possible to log in to the web interface with a local administrator account.

To get started with the application web interface with a local administrator account:

1. In a browser on any computer on which access to the Central Node server has been allowed, enter the IP address of the server with the Central Node component into the browser's address bar.

   If you are using the fault-tolerant version of the application, you can enter the IP address of any server of the Central Node cluster or **the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the cluster**.

   To ensure uninterrupted access to the program web interface, you can configure the Round Robin function on the DNS server. To do this, log in to the web interface of the first healthy server of the Central Node cluster.

   An input window for account credentials of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user opens.

2. Enter 'Administrator' as the account name and 'Administrator' as the password.

   The 'Administrator' password is used by default. We strongly recommend changing the password for this account after logging in to the application web interface.

3. Select the **Local administrator** check box.

4. Click **Log in**.

   The **Dashboard** page of the application web interface is displayed.

You can start using the application with a local administrator account.

For each user account, the number of simultaneous application management sessions is limited to one IP address. If the same user name is used to sign in to the application from a different IP address, the earlier session is terminated.

Getting started with the application administrator menu

You can manage the settings of each of the application's Sensor, Central Node, and Sandbox components in the administrator menu in the management console of each server on which the application component is installed.

Make sure that access to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator menu and server management console is possible only from computers to which you have granted such access.

Make sure the computers to which you grant access are inside the secure perimeter of your network.

You can configure access to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator menu and server management console from certain computers using the iptables command-line utility. For detailed information about managing iptables, see the iptables documentation.

To start working in the Sandbox, Sensor or Central Node component administrator menu in the server management hosting the needed component:

1. Sign in to the management console of the server whose settings you want to change via the SSH protocol or through a terminal.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.

2. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was set during the installation of the application.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.

You can begin working in the Sensor or Sandbox component administrator menu.

Getting started with the application in Technical Support Mode

You are advised not to perform any actions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in Technical Support Mode without consultations with or instructions from Technical Support staff.

You can manage the Sensor, Central Node and Sandbox components of the application in Technical Support Mode.

Technical Support Mode provides the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator with unrestricted access rights (root) to the application and all of its stored data (including personal information).

Working with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform from the management console in Technical Support Mode with superuser account rights enables you to:

- Manage application operation settings using configuration files.

  You can also modify the settings for data encryption when data is transferred between application nodes, and the settings for storing and processing objects being scanned.

  In this case, data is transmitted in unencrypted form. The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator must use this data independently to ensure protection of servers. The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator is responsible for modifying the configuration files of the application.

- Manage trace log settings.

  Trace files may contain confidential data of the user. Such files are retained indefinitely and can be manually deleted by the administrator of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. The path for trace files is specified by the administrator of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

To start working with the Sandbox, Sensor or Central Node component in Technical Support Mode:

1. Sign in to the management console of the server whose settings you want to change via the SSH protocol or through a terminal.
2. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was specified during installation of the component.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.
3. In the application administrator menu, select **Technical Support Mode**.

4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.

5. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select **Yes** and press **ENTER**.

You can now start working with the Sensor or Sandbox component in Technical Support Mode.

Managing accounts of application administrators and users

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform provides accounts for servers with the following components:

- Sensor. Administrator account for working in the application administrator menu and in the server management console (in Technical Support Mode).

  The 'admin' account is used by default.

- Sandbox. Administrator account for working in the application administrator menu, in the server management console (in Technical Support Mode) and in the Sandbox web interface.

  The 'admin' account is used by default.

- Central Node. The following accounts:

  - Administrator account for working in the application administrator menu and in the server management console (in Technical Support Mode).

    The "admin" account that was created during application installation is used by default.

  - Local administrator account of the application web interface.

    The "Administrator" account that was created during application installation is used by default. You can create other administrator accounts for the application web interface after installation.

  - Administrator account of the application web interface.

  - Application web interface user accounts with the **Security auditor**, **Security officer**, and **Senior security officer** roles.

Data from each of these accounts is stored on the server hosting the application component to which the account belongs.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, data from each of these accounts is stored on the PCN and on the server hosting the application component to which the account belongs.

The administrator account used for working in the server management console has unlimited rights to manage the server hosting the application component to which the account belongs (superuser rights). Under this account, you can turn off or restart a server, or modify the settings of the application in Technical Support Mode in the server management console.

An administrator account for working in the management console of a server (admin) has unlimited access to data on that server. The password of the administrator account for working in the server management console must be strong. The administrator must take steps to ensure the security of the servers. The administrator bears responsibility for access to data stored on servers.

An account with the **Administrator** role can add, enable and disable application user accounts, and change the passwords of application administrator accounts and web interface user accounts. In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, user accounts are managed on the PCN.

The local administrator account of the application web interface is intended for employees of your organization who need to manage Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. When signing in to the application under this account, you will see all sections of the web interface that are available to a user with the **Administrator** role.

The administrator account of the application web interface lets you manage the application, however, unlike the local administrator account of the application web interface, such accounts are not allowed to manage PCN and SCN servers or tenants in the **Operation mode** section.

An account with the **Security auditor** role can view all sections of the web interface available to the local administrator and security personnel. A user with the **Security auditor** role can view data but cannot edit this data.

The **Senior security officer** and **Security officer** roles are intended for employees of your organization whose job description involves managing events and tasks of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. When signing in to the application under accounts with these roles, you will see all sections of the web interface that are available to security officers. Users with the **Senior security officer** role have access to all operations. The restrictions for users with the **Security officer** role are listed in the table below.

Access restrictions for application users with the **Security officer** role

Functional scope / Section of the web interface	Restrictions
Dashboard	Widgets of VIP group events are not available. It is not possible to use a link in the widget to go to the **Alerts** section.
Alerts	The following actions are not available: • Viewing alert details. • Marking the completion of VIP group alert processing. • Performing operations on multiple alerts. • Exporting the list of all alerts.
Threat Hunting	Events that are associated with hosts from VIP group alerts are not available.
Tasks	No access.
Prevention	No access.
Custom rules	Read access.
Storage	There is no access to objects that are placed in Storage as a result of tasks. Full access to objects that were manually downloaded by the user.
Endpoint Agents	Access to viewing tables of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent computers; restrictions on viewing details of tasks, policies, and network isolation.
Network isolation of hosts	No access.
Reports	No access.
Settings: IOC scanning schedule	Read access.
Settings: Endpoint Agents	Read access.
Settings: KPSN reputation database	No access.
Settings: Notification rules	No access to rules for sending notifications about alerts. Full access to rules for sending notifications about problems in application operation.
Settings: VIP status	Read access.
Custom rules: YARA	Access only to export rules.
Settings: TAA exclusions	Access to read and export.
Settings: Passwords for archives	No access.
Settings: License	Read access.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, access to tenants and the web interface of the SCN server can be allowed or denied for each account.

Creating an administrator account for the application web interface

The administrator account of the application web interface lets you manage the application, however, unlike the local administrator account of the application web interface, such accounts are not allowed to manage PCN and SCN servers or tenants in the **Operation mode** section.

To create an application web interface administrator account:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.
3. Click **Add**.

   This opens the **New user** window.
4. To enable an account, turn on the **Status** toggle switch.

   By default, the account is enabled.

   > If the user account is enabled, the user is allowed to gain access to the application web interface. If the user account is disabled, the user is prohibited from gaining access to the application web interface.
5. In the **Role** drop-down list, select **Administrator**.
6. Under **Authentication type**, select one of the following options:

   - **KATA user account**.

     In this case, to connect to the application web interface, the user must enter the user name and password that were configured when the account was created.
   - **Domain user account**.

     In this case, to connect to the application web interface, the user does not have to enter the user name and password; the user is authenticated with the domain account.

   > The **KATA user account** and **Domain user account** fields are available if Active Directory integration is configured.
7. If you selected **KATA user account**:

   a. In the **User name** field, enter a user name for the account you want to create.

      The user name must meet the following requirements:

      - Must be unique in the list of user names (case-sensitive).
      - Must contain no more than 32 characters.

- Can contain letters A–Z, a–z, digits 0–9, hyphens (-), and underscores (_).
- Must begin with a letter (A–Z or a–z).

b. In the **New password** field, enter a user password that will be used to access the web interface.

The password must satisfy the following requirements:

- Must not be the same as the user name.
- Must not contain dictionary words, popular combinations of letters, or examples of a keyboard layout (for example, Qwerty or passw0rd).
- Must contain at least 8 characters.
- Must contain at least three types of characters:
  - Uppercase character (A–Z).
  - Lowercase character (a–z).
  - Number.
  - Special character.

c. In the **Confirm password** field, re-enter the user password that will be used to access the web interface.

8. If you selected **Domain user account**, in the **User name** field, enter the user's domain name.
9. Click **Add**.

This will create an administrator account for the application web interface.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the administrator account of the PCN server web interface has access to the data of all organizations associated with that server.

Creating a user account for the application web interface

You can create user accounts with the **Senior security officer**, **Security officer**, and **Security auditor** roles.

To create a user account for the application web interface:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.
3. Click **Add**.

   This opens the **New user** window.
4. If necessary, disable the user account using the **Status** toggle switch.

   By default, the account is enabled.

If the user account is enabled, the user is allowed to gain access to the application web interface. If the user account is disabled, the user is prohibited from gaining access to the application web interface.

5. Under **Authentication type**, select one of the following options:

- **KATA user account**.

  In this case, to connect to the application web interface, the user must enter the user name and password that were configured when the account was created.

- **Domain user account**.

  In this case, to connect to the application web interface, the user does not have to enter the user name and password; the user is authenticated with the domain account.

  If you have selected the **Domain user account** authentication type, note that the user will not be able to log in to the application web interface with a different user account.

The **KATA user account** and **Domain user account** fields are available if Active Directory integration is configured.

6. In the **Role** drop-down list, select one of the following roles:

- **Senior security officer**
- **Security officer**
- **Security auditor**

7. If you select **KATA user account**:

   a. In the **User name** field, enter a user name for the account you want to create.

   The user name must meet the following requirements:

   - Must be unique in the list of user names (case-sensitive).
   - Must contain no more than 32 characters.
   - Can contain letters A–Z, a–z, digits 0–9, hyphens (-), and underscores (_).
   - Must begin with a letter (A–Z or a–z).

   b. In the **New password** field, enter a user password that will be used to access the web interface.

   The password must satisfy the following requirements:

   - Must not be the same as the user name.
   - Must not contain dictionary words, popular combinations of letters, or examples of a keyboard layout (for example, Qwerty or passw0rd).
   - Must contain at least 8 characters.

- Must contain at least three types of characters:
  - Uppercase character (A–Z).
  - Lowercase character (a–z).
  - Number.
  - Special character.

c. In the **Confirm password** field, re-enter the user password that will be used to access the web interface.

8. If you selected **Domain user account**, in the **User name** field, enter the user's domain name.
9. In the **Access** section, configure access rights:

   a. Turn on the **SCN web interface** toggle switch to allow the user to access not only the web interface of this PCN server, but also to web interfaces of all available SCN servers.

   b. To the right of the **Tenants** setting title, select check boxes for one or more tenants to whose web interfaces you want to grant access.

   You can use the **Select all** and **Deselect all** links to select or unselect all tenants.
10. Click **Add**.

Configuring user account table display

You can show or hide columns and change the order of columns in the table of user accounts.

To configure user account table display:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.
3. In the heading part of the table, click .

   This opens the **Customize table** window.
4. If you want to show a column in the table, select the check box next to the name of the parameter that you want displayed in the table.

   If you want to hide a parameter in the table, clear the check box.

   > At least one check box must be selected.
5. If you want to change the order of columns in the table, move the mouse cursor to the row with the relevant parameter, click and move the row to its new place.

6. If you want to restore default table display settings, click **Default**.

7. Click **Apply**.

User account table display is configured.

Viewing the user account table

The event table is displayed in the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection of the application web interface window. You can sort events in the table by the **User name**, **Role**, **Tenants**, and **Status** columns.

The table contains the following information:

1. **User name** is the user name configured when creating the account.

2. **Authentication type** is the authentication type of the user. Possible values:

   - **KATA user account**.

     In this authentication type is selected, to connect to the application web interface, the user must enter the user name and password that were configured when the account was created.

   - **Domain user account**.

     If this authentication type is selected, to connect to the application web interface, the user does not have to enter the user name and password; the user is authenticated with the domain account.

3. **Role** is the role assigned to the user.

4. **Tenants** is a list of tenants to which the user has access.

   This column is displayed only in distributed solution and multitenancy mode.

5. **Status** is the status of the account. Can have the following values:

   - **Enabled**

     If the user account is enabled, the user is allowed to gain access to the application web interface.

   - **Disabled**

     If the user account is disabled, the user is prohibited from gaining access to the application web interface.

Filtering user accounts

To filter or search for user accounts by required criteria:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.

2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.

3. Depending on the filtering criterion, do the following:

- **By user name**

  a. Click the **User name** link to open the filtering menu.

  b. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:

  - **Contain**
  - **Not contain**

  c. In the text box, type the user name or a sequence of characters from the user name.

  d. Click **Apply**.

- **By authentication type**

  a. Click the **Authentication type** link to open the filtering menu.

  b. Select the check box next to the account that you want to include in filtering criteria:

  - **KATA user account**.
  - **Domain user account**.

  c. Click **Apply**.

- **By role**

  a. Click the **Role** link to open the filtering menu.

  b. Select check boxes corresponding to roles that you want to add to filter criteria.

  - **Administrator**
  - **Senior security officer**
  - **Security officer**
  - **Security auditor**

  You can select multiple check boxes.

  c. Click **Apply**.

- **By names of tenants that the user has access to**

  a. Click the **Tenants** link to open the filtering menu.

  b. Select check boxes corresponding to tenants that you want to add to filter criteria.
  You can select multiple check boxes.

  c. Click **Apply**.

- **By status**

  a. Click **Status** to expand the filter settings list.

  b. Select one of the following options:

  - **All**
  - **Enabled**
  - **Disabled**

The table displays accounts that correspond to configured filter criteria.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Clearing the account filter

To clear the YARA rule filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.
   This opens the YARA rule table.
2. Click to the right of that column heading of the rule table for which you want to clear filtering criteria.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The table displays only rules that match the specified criteria.

Changing access rights of an application web interface user account

You can change access rights of users with **Senior security officer** and **Security officer** roles to data of PCN and SCN servers as well as tenants to which those servers belong.

To change access rights of an application web interface user account, do the following in the web interface of the PCN:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the application web interface window, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection. Select the account whose access rights you want to change.

   This opens the **Edit account** window.
3. If you want to enable or disable an account, move the **Status** toggle switch.
4. In the **Access** section, move the **SCN web interface** toggle switch as necessary:

   - Set the toggle switch to **Enabled** if you want to grant the user access to web interfaces of all available SCN servers in addition to the web interface of this PCN server.
   - Set the toggle switch to **Disabled** if you want to grant the user access only to the web interface of this PCN server.
5. To the right of the **Tenants** setting name, select or clear check boxes of one or more tenants for which you want to change the access rights of server web interfaces.

   You can use the **Select all** and **Deselect all** links to select or unselect all tenants.
6. Click **Save**.

The access rights of the account are changed.

Enabling and disabling an administrator account or user account of the application web interface

To enable or disable an administrator account or user account for the application web interface, do the following in the web interface of the PCN:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.
3. In the list of accounts, select the user account that you want to enable or disable.
4. In the **Status** column, do one of the following:

   - Turn on the toggle switch next to the name of an account if you want to enable the account.
   - Turn off the toggle switch next to the name of an account if you want to disable the account.

   The action confirmation window is displayed.
5. Click **Yes**.

The state of the account is modified.

Changing the password of an application administrator or user account

Only users with the **KATA user account** authentication type can change the password of their user account.

To change the password of an application administrator account or user account, do the following in the web interface of the PCN:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the application web interface window, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection. In the list of accounts, select the user account whose password you want to change.

   This opens the **Edit account** window.
3. In the **New password** field, enter a new password for the application web interface.

   The password must satisfy the following requirements:

   - Must not be the same as the user name.
   - Must not contain dictionary words, popular combinations of letters, or examples of a keyboard layout (for example, Qwerty or passw0rd).
   - Must contain at least 8 characters.
   - Must contain at least three types of characters:
     - Uppercase character (A–Z).
     - Lowercase character (a–z).
     - Number.
     - Special character.
4. In the **Confirm password** field, enter the new password again.
5. Click **Save**.

The password of the application administrator account or user account is changed.

Changing the password of your account

Only users with the **KATA user account** authentication type can change the password of their user account.

To change the password of your user account:

1. Sign in to the web interface with your account.
2. In the lower part of the program web interface window, click the link with the name of your account to expand the action list.
3. Select the **Change password** action.

   This opens the **Change password** window.
4. In the **Old password** field, enter the current password for the application web interface.
5. In the **New password** field, enter a new password for the application web interface.

   The password must satisfy the following requirements:

   - Must not be the same as the user name.
   - Must not contain dictionary words, popular combinations of letters, or examples of a keyboard layout (for example, Qwerty or passw0rd).
   - Must contain at least 8 characters.
   - Must contain at least three types of characters:
     - Uppercase character (A–Z).
     - Lowercase character (a–z).
     - Number.
     - Special character.
6. In the **Confirm password** field, enter the new password again.
7. Click **Change password**.

The user account password for accessing the application web interface is changed.

Authentication using domain accounts

If authentication using domain accounts is configured, users do not have to enter Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform account credentials to connect to the application web interface.

To enable authentication using domain accounts:

1. Configure integration with Active Directory.

   To set up the Active Directory integration, you must create a keytab file containing the service principal name (hereinafter also "SPN") for the Central Node server on which you want to set up the integration.

2. Select the **Domain user account** authentication type for the user when creating the account.

Creating a keytab file

You can create one user account to authenticate at multiple Central Node servers. Service principal name (SPN)To do so, you must create a keytab file that contains *service principal names (hereinafter also SPN)* for each of these servers. When you create the keytab file, you must use an attribute to generate a *salt* (hash function input modifier).

> The generated salt must be saved in any convenient way for adding more SPNs to the keytab file in the future.

You can also create a separate Active Directory user account for each Central Node server for which you want to set up Kerberos authentication.

To create a keytab file using one user account:

1. On the domain controller, in the **Active Directory Users and Computers** snap-in, create a user account (for example, with `control-user` as its name).

2. If you want to use the AES256-SHA1 encryption algorithm, in the **Active Directory Users and Computers** snap-in:

   a. Open the properties of the user account that you have created.

   b. On the **Account** tab, select the **This account supports Kerberos AES 256 bit encryption** check box.

3. Use the ktpass utility to create a keytab file for the `control-user` user. To do so, run the following command on the command line:

   ```
   C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/<fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the Central Node server>@<realm name of the Active Directory domain in uppercase> -mapuser control-user@<realm name of the Active Directory domain in uppercase> -crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * +dumpsalt -out <path to the file>\<file name>.keytab
   ```

   The utility requests the `control-user` password when executing the command.

   The SPN of the selected server is added to the created keytab file. The generated salt is displayed on screen: `Hashing password with salt "<hash value>".`

4. Add an SPN record for each subsequent Central Node server to the keytab file. To do so, run the following command:

   ```
   C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/<fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the Central Node server>@<realm name of the Active Directory domain in uppercase> -mapuser control-user@<realm name of the Active Directory domain in uppercase> -crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * -in <path and name of the previously created file>.keytab -out <path and new name>.keytab -setupn -setpass -rawsalt "<hash value of the salt obtained when creating the keytab file at step 3>"
   ```

   The utility requests the `control-user` password when executing the command.

The keytab file is created. This file contains all added SPNs of selected servers.

Example:

For example, you need to create a keytab file containing SPN names of 3 servers: `control-01.test.local`, `secondary-01.test.local`, and `secondary-02.test.local`.

To create a `filename1.keytab` file containing the SPN of the server in C:\keytabs\, run the command:

```
C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/control-01.test.local@TEST.LOCAL -mapuser control-user@TEST.LOCAL -crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * +dumpsalt -out C:\keytabs\filename1.keytab
```

Let's say you got `"TEST.LOCALHTTPcontrol-01.test.local"` as the salt.

To add another SPN, run the following command:

```
C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/secondary-01.test.local@TEST.LOCAL -mapuser control-user@TEST.LOCAL -crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * -in C:\keytabs\filename1.keytab -out C:\keytabs\filename2.keytab -setupn -setpass -rawsalt "TEST.LOCALHTTPcontrol-01.test.local"
```

To add a third SPN:

```
C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/secondary-02.test.local@TEST.LOCAL -mapuser control-user@TEST.LOCAL -crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * -in C:\keytabs\filename2.keytab -out C:\keytabs\filename3.keytab -setupn -setpass -rawsalt "TEST.LOCALHTTPcontrol-01.test.local"
```

This creates a `filename3.keytab` file containing all three added SPNs.

To create a keytab file using a separate account for each Central Node server:

1. On the domain controller server, in the **Active Directory Users and Computers** snap-in, create a separate user account for each server (for example, `control-user`, `secondary1-user`, `secondary2-user`, etc).

2. If you want to use the AES256-SHA1 encryption algorithm, in the **Active Directory Users and Computers** snap-in:

   a. Open the properties of the user account that you have created.

   b. On the **Account** tab, select the **This account supports Kerberos AES 256 bit encryption** check box.

3. Use the ktpass utility to create a keytab file for the `control-user` user. To do so, run the following command on the command line:

   ```
   C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/<fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the Central Node server>@<realm name of the Active Directory domain in uppercase> -mapuser control-user@<realm name of the Active Directory domain in uppercase> -crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * -out <path to the file>\<file name>.keytab
   ```

   The utility requests the `control-user` password when executing the command.

   The SPN of the selected server is added to the created keytab file.

4. Add an SPN record for each subsequent Central Node server to the keytab file. To do so, run the following command:

```
C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/<fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the Central Node server>@<realm name of the Active Directory domain in uppercase> -mapuser secondary1-user@<realm name of the Active Directory domain in uppercase> -crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * -in <path and name of the previously created file>.keytab -out <path and new name>.keytab
```

The utility requests the `secondary1-user` password when executing the command.

The keytab file is created. This file contains all added SPNs of selected servers.

Example:

For example, you need to create a keytab file containing SPN names of 3 servers: `control-01.test.local`, `secondary-01.test.local`, and `secondary-02.test.local`.

To create a `filename1.keytab` file containing the SPN of the server in C:\keytabs\, run the command:

```
C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/control-01.test.local@TEST.LOCAL -mapuser control-user@TEST.LOCAL -crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * -out C:\keytabs\filename1.keytab
```

To add another SPN, run the following command:

```
C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/secondary-01.test.local@TEST.LOCAL -mapuser secondary1-user@TEST.LOCAL -crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * -in C:\keytabs\filename1.keytab -out C:\keytabs\filename2.keytab
```

To add a third SPN:

```
C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/secondary-02.test.local@TEST.LOCAL -mapuser secondary2-user@TEST.LOCAL -crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * -in C:\keytabs\filename2.keytab -out C:\keytabs\filename3.keytab
```

This creates a `filename3.keytab` file containing all three added SPNs.

Configuring integration with Active Directory

To configure integration with Active Directory:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.
3. Go to the **Active Directory integration** tab.
4. Select the **Integration** check box if you want to enable integration with Active Directory.
5. Click **Browse** to upload the keytab file.
6. Select the keytab file and click **Open**.

After you upload the file, the following fields are displayed:

- **Keytab file status**. Possible values:
  - **File contains SPN for this server** means the uploaded keytab file contains the SPN for that Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server.
  - **No SPN for this server** means the uploaded keytab file does not contain the SPN for that Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server.
- **The file contains** is the list of SPNs that the file contains.

7. Click **Apply**.

Integration with Active Directory is configured.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, Active Directory integration settings configured on the PCN server are **not** applied to SCN servers connected to that PCN server. If you want to set up Active Directory integration on individual SCN servers, you must complete the steps above on each of the selected SCN servers.

Disabling integration with Active Directory

When integration with Active Directory is disabled, user authentication with domain accounts is not available.

To disable integration with Active Directory:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.
3. Go to the **Active Directory integration** tab.
4. Clear the **Integration** check box.
5. Click **Apply**.

Integration with Active Directory is disabled. The uploaded keytab file is permanently deleted.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, Active Directory integration settings configured on the PCN server are **not** applied to SCN servers connected to that PCN server. If you want to disable Active Directory integration on individual SCN servers, you must complete the steps above on each of the selected SCN servers.

Participation in Kaspersky Security Network and use of Kaspersky Private Security Network

To protect the user's computer more effectively, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform uses data that is obtained from users around the globe. *Kaspersky Security Network* is designed to obtain such data.

Kaspersky Security Network (hereinafter also "KSN") is an infrastructure of online services that provides users with access to the Kaspersky online knowledge base containing information on the reputation of files, web resources, and software. Use of data from Kaspersky Security Network ensures that Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform responds faster to new objects that have not yet been added to the anti-virus databases, improves the performance of some protection components, and reduces the likelihood of false alarms.

Thanks to users who participate in Kaspersky Security Network, Kaspersky is able to promptly receive information about the types and sources of objects that have not yet been added to the anti-virus databases, develop solutions for neutralizing them, and minimize the number of false alarms. User participation also helps other users of Kaspersky Security Network promptly receive information about threats to the IT infrastructure of their organizations.

When you participate in Kaspersky Security Network, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform sends Kaspersky Security Network requests about the reputation of files, web resources and software, and receives a response containing data about the reputation of those objects.

Personal information of the user is not collected, processed, or stored. For information about data that Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform sends to Kaspersky Security Network, refer to the KSN Statement.

Participation in Kaspersky Security Network is voluntary. The decision to participate in Kaspersky Security Network is made during installation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, and that decision can be changed at any time.

If you do not want to participate in KSN, you can use Kaspersky Private Security Network (hereinafter also referred to as "KPSN"). KPSN is a solution that allows users to access the reputation databases of Kaspersky Security Network and other statistical data without actually sending data from their own computers to Kaspersky Security Network.

If you want to purchase the Kaspersky Private Security Network application, please contact Kaspersky partners in your region.

Participation in KSN is configured on the Central Node server and is applied to all connected Sensor servers.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, participation in KSN is configured on the PCN server. Configured participation in KSN is applied to all SCN servers connected to the PCN.

Viewing the KSN Statement and configuring participation in KSN

To configure the participation in Kaspersky Security Network:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **KSN/KPSN and MDR** subsection.
3. On the right of the **Connection type** parameter name, click the **KSN** button.
4. Carefully read the Kaspersky Security Network Statement and select one of the following options:
   - **I agree to participate in KSN**, if you accept the terms of the KSN Statement and want to participate in KSN.
   - **I do not agree to participate in KSN**, if you do not accept the terms of the KSN Statement and do not want to participate in KSN.

     If you do not agree with the terms of the Statement, use of Kaspersky Security Network will not be enabled.
5. Click **Apply**.

Participation in Kaspersky Security Network will be configured.

Enabling the use of KPSN

To enable the use of KPSN:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **KSN/KPSN and MDR** subsection.
3. On the right of the **Connection type** parameter name, click the **KPSN** button.
4. In the **KPSN configuration files** section, upload the kc_private.xms, kh_private.xms and ksncli_private.dat files by clicking **Browse**.
5. Click **Apply**.

Use of Kaspersky Private Security Network will be enabled.

Configuring a connection to a local reputation database of KPSN

The application can save information about Sandbox component alerts to the local reputation database of KPSN. In this case, the *Untrusted* status is assigned to objects. Data of local reputation databases is available only to corporate LAN computers.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure the connection of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to a local KPSN reputation database:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **KPSN reputation database** subsection.
3. In the **Host** field, specify the IP address of the KPSN server on which the local reputation database of KPSN is stored.
4. Click **Browse** to the right of the **TLS certificate** field.

   This opens the file selection window.
5. Select the certificate file for user authentication in KPSN and click the **Open** button.
6. Click **Browse** to the right of the **TLS encryption key** field.

   This opens the file selection window.
7. Select the file containing the private encryption key, and click the **Open** button.

The connection to the local reputation database of KPSN will be configured.

Configuring information to be saved to a local reputation database of KPSN

The application can save MD5 and SHA256 hashes of objects detected by the Sandbox component in the local reputation database of KPSN. In this case, the *Untrusted* status is assigned to objects. Data of local reputation databases is available only to corporate LAN computers.

To configure the saving of alert details to the local reputation database of KPSN:

1. Log in to the application web interface under the senior security officer account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **KPSN reputation database** subsection.

3. Do one of the following:

   - Turn on the **Assign the "Untrusted" status to objects** switch if you want the application to set the status of alerts to *Untrusted* and save information about Sandbox component alerts in the local reputation database of KPSN.
   - Turn off the **Assign the "Untrusted" status to objects** switch if you do not want to save information about Sandbox component alerts in the local reputation database of KPSN.

4. Click **Save**.

The saving of information to the local reputation database of KPSN is configured.

Declining participation in KSN and use of KPSN

To decline participation in Kaspersky Security Network and the use of KPSN:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **KSN/KPSN and MDR** subsection.
3. On the right of the **Connection type** parameter name, click the **Not connected** button.
4. Click **Apply**.

You will not participate in KSN and will not use KPSN.

Managing the Sandbox component through the web interface

The Sandbox web interface is located on the server hosting the Sandbox component.

The Sandbox web interface is protected against *CSRF attacks* and operates only if the web interface user's browser provides the Referrer header of an HTTP POST request. Make sure that the browser that you are using to work with the Sandbox web interface does not modify the Referrer header of an HTTP POST request. If the connection with the web interface is established through a proxy server of your organization, check the settings and make sure that the proxy server does not modify the Referrer header for an HTTP POST request.

To get started with the web interface of the Sandbox application:

1. In a browser on any computer on which access to the server with the Sandbox component is allowed, enter the IP address of the server with the Sandbox component.

   This opens the Sandbox component administrator credentials input window.

2. Enter the Sandbox component administrator user name and password that you specified when installing the Sandbox component.

You can now start working in the Sandbox web interface.

If you use more than one servers with the Sandbox component, configure settings of each Sandbox component from the Sandbox web interface of such server.

Updating the Sandbox component databases

The Sandbox component databases are files with records that make it possible to detect a malicious code and signs of suspicious behavior in scanned objects.

Virus analysts at Kaspersky detect hundreds of new threats daily, create records to identify them, and include them in *database updates packages* (or update packages). Update packages consist of one or more files containing records to identify threats that were detected since the previous update package was released. We recommend that you regularly receive update packages.

During the license validity period, you can obtain update packages automatically once every hour or update the databases manually.

Updating databases manually

To start a database update manually:

1. Select the **Database update** section in the Sandbox web interface window.

   The **Last update** settings group will show time and status of the last Sandbox database update.

2. Click **Start**.

Selecting a database update source

To select a database update source:

1. Select the **Database update** section in the Sandbox web interface window.

2. In the **Update source** settings group, select a source from which you want to receive update packages:

   - **Kaspersky update server**.

     The program connects to Kaspersky update server over HTTP and downloads up-to-date databases.

   - **Kaspersky update server (secure connection)**.

     The program connects to Kaspersky update server over HTTPS and downloads up-to-date databases. It is recommended to use HTTPS for database updates.

   - **Custom server**.

     The program connects to your FTP or HTTP server or to the folder with program databases on your computer to download up-to-date databases.

3. If you select **Custom server**, in the field under the name of the setting, enter the full path to the folder that contains the application database update package.

4. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

Enabling and disabling a proxy server for database update

To enable or disable a proxy server for updating the Sandbox component databases:

1. Select the **Database update** section in the Sandbox web interface window.

2. In the workspace, do one of the following:

   - Enable the switch next to the **Proxy server** settings group name if you want to use the proxy server for the Sandbox component database update.

   - Disable the switch next to the **Proxy server** settings group name if you do not want to use the proxy server for the Sandbox component database update.

Configuring proxy server connection settings for database update

To configure the proxy server connection for updating Sandbox component databases:

1. Select the **Database update** section in the Sandbox web interface window.
2. Enable the switch next to the **Proxy server** settings group name.
3. In the **Address** field, enter the proxy server address.
4. In the **Port** field, enter the proxy server port number.
5. In the **User name** field, enter the proxy server user name.
6. In the **Password** field, enter the password to obtain connection to the proxy server.
7. Do one of the following:
   - Select the check box **Bypass proxy server for local addresses**, if you do not want to use the proxy server for internal emails of your organization.
   - Clear the **Bypass proxy server for local addresses** check box if you want to use the proxy server irrespective of email affiliations to your organization.
8. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

Configuring connection between the Sandbox and Central Node components

The following procedure is used to configure the Sandbox component connection with the Central Node component:

1. A request for connection to the Sandbox component is created in the application web interface.
2. The Sandbox web interface shows connection requests.

   You can accept or reject the request.

After configuring the connection, the Sandbox server needs 5 to 10 minutes to get ready for operation. During this time, the **System health** window of the application web interface display a warning: *Default configuration error. Reinstall the Central Node component*. When the server is ready for operation, the warning disappears.

Processing connection requests from the Central Node servers in the Sandbox web interface

You can accept, reject, or revoke a previously accepted connection request from the Central Node servers in the Sandbox web interface.

To accept, reject, or revoke a connection request from Central Node servers:

1. Select the **Authorization** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.

   The **Central Node connection requests** section will show a list of connection requests from the Central Node components.

   Each connection request contains the following information:

   - **IP**—IP address of the Central Node server.
   - **Certificate fingerprint**—Thumbprint of the Central Node TLS certificate used to establish an encrypted connection between servers.
   - **State**—Status of the connection request.

     May have the values **Pending** or **Accepted**.

2. Make sure that the Central Node certificate thumbprint matches the certificate thumbprint configured for the Central Node.

   You can check the Central Node certificate thumbprint from the Central Node server administrator menu in the **Manage Server Certificate** section.

3. Click one of the following buttons in the line containing the connection request from the Central Node component:

   - **Accept** if you want to accept the connection request.
   - **Reject** if you want to reject the connection request.
   - **Revoke** if you want to revoke a previously accepted connection request.

4. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

Configuring the Sandbox component network interfaces

This section describes configuration of the Sandbox component network interfaces.

Configuring DNS settings

To configure DNS:

1. Select the **Network interfaces** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. In the **Host name** field, enter the name of the server on which you are installing the Sandbox component in FQDN format (for example, sandbox).
3. To the right of the **DNS servers** parameter name, click the **Add** button.

   This will add an empty field for the DNS server IP address input.
4. Enter the IP address of the primary DNS server in IPv4 format.
5. Click the ✓ button to the right of the entry field.

   The DNS server will be added.
6. If you want to add an additional DNS server, repeat steps 2-5.
7. If you want to remove a previously added DNS server, click the 🗑 button to the right of the line containing the DNS server IP address.

   You can only remove additional DNS servers. You cannot remove the primary DNS server. If you added 2 and more DNS servers, you can remove any of them, and the remaining DNS server will be used as the primary server.

Configuring settings of the management network interface

A management network interface is intended for providing access to the server with the Sandbox component via the SSH protocol, and the Sandbox component will also receive objects from the Central Node component via this interface.

You can configure a management network interface during installation of the Sandbox component.

You can also configure a management network interface from the Sandbox web interface.

To configure a management network interface from the Sandbox web interface:

1. Select the **Network interfaces** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. In the **Management interface** settings group from the **Interface** drop-down list, select a network interface, which you want to use as a management interface.
3. In the **IP** field, enter the IP address that you want to assign to this network interface if no IP address is assigned.
4. In the **Mask** field, enter the network mask in which you want to use this network interface.
5. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

Configuring settings of a network interface used for Internet access of processed objects

Objects processed by the Sandbox component may attempt activities on the Internet via the network interface used for Internet access of processed objects. The Sandbox component can analyze the behavior of these objects.

If you block Internet access, the Sandbox component cannot analyze the behavior of objects on the Internet, and will therefore only analyze the behavior of objects without Internet access.

The network interface used for Internet access of processed objects must be isolated from the local network of your organization.

If the security policy of your organization denies access to the Internet from computers of local network users, and you have configured the Sandbox network interface for Internet access of processed objects, there is a risk of the following scenario:

A hacker can attach a malicious application to a random file and initiate a Sandbox scan of this file from the computer of a local network user. This file will be taken over outside the local network through the network interface used for Internet access of processed objects in the course of scanning the file by the Sandbox component.

Unavailability of the Sandbox network interface for Internet access of processed objects eliminates any risk of such data transfer but compromises the quality of alerts.

To configure the network interface used for Internet access of processed objects:

1. Select the **Network interfaces** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. In the **Internet interface** settings group from the **Interface** list, select a network interface that you want to use for Internet access of processed objects.

   The management network interface that you configured previously cannot be selected from this list of network interfaces.
3. In the **IP** field, enter the IP address that you want to assign to this network interface.
4. In the **Mask** field, enter the network mask in which you want to use this network interface.
5. In the **Default gateway** field, enter the gateway address of the network in which you want to use this network interface.
6. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

Adding, changing and removing static network routes

You can configure static network routes during installation of the Sandbox component.

You can also add, remove or change static network routes from the Sandbox web interface.

To add a static network route:

1. Select the **Network interfaces** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. In the **Static routes** settings group, click the **Add** button.

   A line with empty fields will be added in the list of static network routes.
3. In the **IP** field, enter the IP address of the server for which you want to configure a static network route.
4. In the **Mask** field, enter the subnet mask.
5. In the **Gateway** field, enter the IP address of the gateway.
6. From the **Interface** list, select a network interface for which you want to add a static network route.
7. Click ✓.
8. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

To remove a static network route, proceed as follows:

1. Select the **Network interfaces** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. In the **Static routes** settings group in the line containing the static network route that you want to remove, click the 🗑 button.
3. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

To modify a static network route:

1. Select the **Network interfaces** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. In the **Static routes** settings group in the line containing the static network route that you want to change, click the ✎ button.

   The static network route line will become editable. You can change one or more parameters of a static network route.
3. In the **IP** field, change the IP address of the server for which you want to configure a static network route.
4. In the **Mask** field, change the subnet mask.
5. In the **Gateway** field, change the IP address of the gateway.
6. From the **Interface** list, select the network interface for which you are editing the network route.

7. Click ✓.

8. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

Updating the Sandbox system

Kaspersky can issue update packages for Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and individual application components. For example, urgent update packages can be issued to fix vulnerabilities and errors, scheduled updates can be issued to extend or improve the functionality of the application and its components.

After Sandbox updates have been issued, you can install them through the Sandbox web interface.

Prior to installing updates through the Sandbox web interface, you need to download an update package in TGZ format and the instructions for installing this update from the Kaspersky website to your computer.

To update the Sandbox system using the web interface:

1. Select the **System upgrade** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.

   The current version of the Sandbox component is displayed to the right of the **Current version** setting label.

2. Click the **Browse** button to the right of the **Upgrade package** field.

   This opens the file selection window.

3. Select an update file to download and click the **Open** button.

   This closes the file selection window.

You can keep track of the Sandbox system update progress in the **Upgrade log** window of the **System upgrade** section of the Sandbox web interface.

The update package will be installed automatically. The update process can take a while. The Sandbox server will restart. The Sandbox component will be unavailable during the system update.

Setting the Sandbox system date and time

To set the date and time on the server hosting the Sandbox component:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select **Date and time**.

2. In the **Country** drop-down list, select the relevant country.

3. In the **Time zone** drop-down list, select the relevant time zone.

4. If you prefer to synchronize the time with the NTP server, select **Synchronization with NTP servers**.

5. If you prefer to set the date and time manually, do not enable the switch to the right of the **Synchronization with NTP servers** parameter name and proceed as follows:

   a. In the **Date** field, enter the current date or click the button and select a date in the calendar.

   b. In the **Time** field, enter the current time.

6. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

Installing and configuring images of operating systems and applications required for the operation of the Sandbox component

To scan objects, you can use your own (hereinafter also referred to as "custom") images of operating systems as well as preset images from the distribution kit. If you are using custom images, you can install any applications on these operating systems. The selection of applications for the preset images from the distribution kit cannot be modified.

The distribution kit includes preset ISO images of operating systems and applications required for the Sandbox component to work. Some operating systems and applications require activation.

The Sandbox component runs objects in selected operating systems and analyzes the behavior of these objects to detect malicious activity and indicators of targeted attacks and intrusions into the corporate IT infrastructure.

You can use custom and preset operating system images at the same time.

To use an operating system image for scanning objects by the Sandbox component, you must create a virtual machine for that image.

> We strongly recommend that you use all of the necessary and available preset operating system images from the distribution kit on each Sandbox server.
>
> If only some of the images from the distribution kit or only custom images are used, objects may be scanned with a reduced quality.

Creating virtual machines with preset images of operating systems from the distribution kit

Creating virtual machines with preset images of operating systems involves the following steps:

1. Importing a template
2. Creating a virtual machine
3. Installing the virtual machine

Creating virtual machines with custom images of operating systems

Creating virtual machines with custom images of operating systems involves the following steps:

1. Uploading the image of the operating system and applications that you want to install on the operating system to the Sandbox Storage.

   You can skip this step and upload the images while creating and editing a template.

2. Create or import a custom template.

3. Creating a virtual machine

4. Installing the virtual machine

In case of problems with activation of operating systems or applications, the web interface of the Sandbox component displays an error message. If this happens, please contact Kaspersky Technical Support.

Managing operating system and application images in the Sandbox Storage

Custom images of operating systems and applications that you want to install on these operating systems are placed in Sandbox Storage.

You can upload the following custom operating system images to Storage:

- Windows XP SP3 or later
- Windows 7
- Windows 8.1 64-bit
- Windows 10 64-bit (up to version 1909)

Uploaded files must have the .ISO extension.

Uploading custom images of Linux operating systems is not supported.

If you want to use custom operating system images in a template, you must configure those operating systems.

Viewing the table of operating system and application images in Sandbox Storage

To view the table of operating system and application images in Sandbox Storage:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Storage** section.

   The table of operating system and application images in Sandbox Storage is displayed.

The table contains the following information:

- **Uploaded** is the image upload time.
- **Name** is the name of the image.
- **Size** is the size of the image.
- **Actions** are operations available for the image. Possible values: **Create VM**, **Export**, **Delete**.

Uploading operating system and application images to Storage

To upload to Storage the custom images of operating systems and applications that you want to install on these operating systems:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Storage** section.
3. Click **Upload**.
4. This opens the file upload window.
5. Select the .ISO file that you want to upload to Storage.
6. Click **Open**.

   If you want to upload multiple images, repeat steps 1 to 6 for each image.

The image is uploaded to Storage and displayed in the table of objects.

Activating operating system and application images in Sandbox Storage

You can create a virtual machine with non-activated images of Windows 7 (64-bit), Windows 10 (64-bit) and applications required by the Sandbox component and activate them using your own license code after installing the virtual machine.

Windows images and the Microsoft Office suite can be activated using the kata_images.py file. This file is part of the distribution kit of the update package.

Correct activation of Windows images and the Microsoft Office suite requires Internet access. Make sure Internet access is configured correctly.

During the activation procedure in the **Dashboard** section, the Central Node component alerts you to a self-diagnostics error of the Sandbox component. After successful activation, the self-diagnostics error of the Sandbox component is no longer displayed. During activation, objects are not sent to the Sandbox component for scanning.

To activate Windows images and the Microsoft Office suite:

1. Make sure that on the Sandbox server, virtual machines containing images of Windows operating systems and software for the Sandbox component that do not require activation have been deleted.
2. Make sure that on the Sandbox server, preset images of Windows operating systems and software for the Sandbox component that do not require activation have been deleted , and non-activated images of Windows operating systems and software for the Sandbox component have been uploaded.
3. Make sure that virtual machines with non-activated images of Windows 7 (64-bit), Windows 10 (64-bit) and the Microsoft Office suite are created and installed.
4. Use SSH to place the kata_images.py file on the server with the Central Node component:

   ```
   scp ./kata_images.py admin@<IP address of the Sandbox server>:
   ```

5. Log in to the management console of the server with the Sandbox component via the SSH protocol or through a terminal.
6. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was specified during installation of the program.

   The Sandbox component administrator menu is displayed.
7. In the program administrator menu, select **Technical Support Mode**.
8. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.
9. Select **Yes** and press **ENTER**.

10. Activate the Windows images and the Microsoft Office suite by running the following sequence of commands:

    a. `cd /var/opt/kaspersky/apt/files`

    b. `sudo -s`

    c. `./kata_images.py activate --vm_id Win7_x64 --component Win7 --key <Windows 7 64 bit activation code>`

    d. `./kata_images.py activate --vm_id Win7_x64 --component Office2010 --key <Microsoft Office 2010 activation code>`

    e. `./kata_images.py activate --vm_id Win10_x64 --component Win10 --key <Windows 10 64 bit activation code>`

    f. `./kata_images.py activate --vm_id Win10_x64 --component Office2016 --key <Microsoft Office 2016 activation code>`

    The activation code has the following format: XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX.

11. Create recovery points for virtual machines with installed license keys:

    `./kata_images.py snapshot --vm_ids Win7_x64,Win10_x64`

    The process may take some time.

12. Make sure the **Dashboard** section of the application web interface does not display any warnings about the Sandbox component not working.

Windows images and the Microsoft Office suite are activated. Images of Windows operating systems and Microsoft Office application suite must be activated on all servers with the Sandbox component.

Deleting operating system and application images from Sandbox Storage

To remove an operating system or application image from Sandbox Storage:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Storage** section.
3. In the **Action** column next to the relevant image, click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.
4. Click **Yes**.

The image is deleted.

Managing virtual machine templates

Virtual machines are created from templates. To create a virtual machine, you must first import or create a template for it. Multiple virtual machines can be created based on the same template.

You can perform the following operations with templates: view the table of templates, enable or disable templates, edit, export, or delete templates.

> Operations with the template are not available if a virtual machine with a custom operating system image is being created or installed from this template. After the virtual machine creation and installation process is complete, you can again perform operations with the template.

Creating a virtual machine template

To create a virtual machine with the selected operating system, you must first create a template for it.

To create a template for a virtual machine:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. From the **Add** drop-down list, select **Create template**.
   This opens the template creation window.
4. At the **Preparing the image** step:
   a. In the **Name** field, type the name of the template.
   b. In the **Description** field, enter the template description. This field is optional.
   c. In the **OS image** drop-down list, do one of the following:
      - Select the operating system image that you want to use for the template from the list of available images.
        For an image to be displayed in the list, you must first upload it to Storage.
      - To upload the operating system image, click the **Upload** link, select the relevant file, and click **Open**.
        The uploaded file must have the ISO extension.
5. Click **Proceed**.
6. At the **Customizing the template** step, do one of the following:
   a. In the **Mount ISO** drop-down list, select the image of the application that you want to install in the operating system.

For the image to be displayed in the list, do one of the following:

- Upload the image to Storage.
- In the **Mount ISO** drop-down list, click the **Upload** link, select the relevant file, and click **Open**.

  The uploaded file must have the ISO extension.

b. If you want to unmount the installed image, in the **Mount ISO** drop-down list, click the ⏏ icon next this image.

c. Configure the operating system and installed software.

d. In the **Shut down** drop-down list, you can do one of the following:

- **Shut down** if you want to shut down the system while saving the results of running applications.
- **Power off** if you want to shut down the system without saving the results.

> If a template is enabled, you cannot create a virtual machine from it, and you cannot export the template. If you want to continue configuring the template, enable it.

The virtual machine template is created. You can create a virtual machine based on it.

Viewing the table of templates

To view the table of templates:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.

The table of templates is displayed.

The table contains the following information:

- **Created** is the template creation time.
- **Type** is the type of operating system: custom or preset.
- **Name** is the name of the template.
- **Status** is the status of the template, for example, **Power on** or **Powered off**.
- **Size** is the size of the template.
- **OS** is the version of the operating system used for the template.
- **VMs** is the virtual machine created based on this template.

- **Actions** are operations available for the template. The following operations are available: **Create VM**, **Export**, **Delete**.
- **Description** is the description specified when creating a template.

Turning a template on or off

If the template is turned off, you can perform the following operations with it: create a virtual machine based on the template, export, or delete it. If a template is turned on, you can edit it.

To turn a template on or off:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. Select the relevant template.
4. In the **Customizing the template** section, do one of the following:
   - If you want to turn on the template, click **Power on** in the template management console.
   - If you want to turn off the template, select one of the options in the **Shut down** drop-down list in the template management console:
     - **Shut down** if you want to shut down the system while saving the results of running applications.
     - **Power off** if you want to shut down the system without saving the results.

The template is turned on or off.

Editing a template

To edit a template:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. Select the relevant template.
4. If the template is turned off, turn it on by clicking **Power on**.
5. If you want to install an application on the operating system that is used for the template, select the relevant application image from the **Mount ISO** drop-down list.

   For an image to be displayed in the list, you must first upload the image to Storage.

6. If you want to unmount the installed image, in the **Mount ISO** drop-down list, click the **Unmount** ⏏ icon next to that image.

7. Configure the operating system and installed software.

The template is edited.

Configuring the operating system and software

Preparing operating systems for use

When installing Windows XP, 7, 8.1, or 10 operating systems, you must satisfy the following requirements:

- Disable the screen saver.
- Select the *Always On* power plan.
- Disable automatic updates.
- Disable Windows Firewall.

If you are using Windows 7, support of the SHA-2 hash algorithm is required. To make sure this hash algorithm is supported, install the Security Update for Windows 7 for x64-based Systems (KB3033929). For 32-bit Windows 7 operating systems, update KB3033929 must also be installed.

> Do not install update KB4474419. This update may cause a crash during virtual machine deployment.

When using Windows 8.1 and 10 operating systems, you must disable fast startup and enable autologon.

Configuring operating systems

When the operating system is installed:

- Make sure the default command shell is configured.
- Activate the operating system and other licensed software.

You can do the following with the installed operating system:

- Assign a static name to the computer.
- Create user accounts.

  > In this case, you need to configure automatic logon.

- Select a localization.

  Russian and English localizations are fully supported. If you select a different localization, the quality of object scanning is diminished.

- Install software.

  Limitations on software installation:

  - Only one image at a time can be connected to one template. After the template has been saved, you can disconnect one image and mount another.
  - Versions of Microsoft Office later than 2016 are not supported.
  - Installing the following types of software is strongly discouraged:
    - Software that injects its code into another running process
    - Drivers for protection
    - Anti-virus applications including Windows Defender
  - Detection of malicious activity of files that rely on highly specialized software to run is not guaranteed.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not notify about problems with software installed on the operating system.

Exporting a template

You can export a template in one of the following ways:

- In the table of templates.
- When viewing a template.

The template must be turned off.

To export a template in the table of templates:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. In the **Action** column next to the relevant template, click **Export**.

   The template is exported. The file download starts automatically.

To export a template when viewing a template:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. Select the relevant template.
4. In the **Actions** drop-down list, select **Export**.

   The file download starts automatically. The file download starts automatically.

Importing a template

You can import a previously created template.

To import a template:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. In the **Add** drop-down list, select **Import template**.
4. This opens the file upload window.
5. Select the file that you want to import.
6. Click **Open**.

   The template appears in the list of templates.

You can edit a template, create a virtual machine from it, export, or delete it.

Deleting a template

When you delete a template, all virtual machines created based on that template are deleted.

You can delete a template in one of the following ways:

- In the table of templates.
- When viewing a template.

The template must be turned off.

To delete a template in the table of templates:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. In the **Action** column next to the relevant template, click **Delete**.
   This opens the action confirmation window.
4. Click **Yes**.

The template is deleted.

To delete a template when viewing a template:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. Select the relevant template.
4. In the **Actions** drop-down list, select **Delete**.
   This opens the action confirmation window.
5. Click **Yes**.

The template is deleted.

Managing virtual machines

You can create, install, or delete installed virtual machines and virtual machines pending installation. You can also view lists of virtual machines with preset and custom operating systems.

Creating a virtual machine

You can create a virtual machine in one of the following ways:

- In the **Virtual machines** section.
- In the table of templates.
- In the template view.

The virtual machine template must be turned off. After the virtual machines is created, it must be installed.

Internet access is required to create a virtual machine with a custom operating system image.

Creating a virtual machine in the Virtual machines section

*To create a virtual machine with a preset operating system image in the **Virtual machines** section:*

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Virtual machines** section.
3. Click **Create VM**.

   This opens the virtual machine creation window.
4. In the **Template** drop-down list, select a template for the virtual machine.

   If the list does not contain a suitable template, you can import or create a template in the **Templates** section of the Sandbox web interface window.
5. In the **Name** field, type the name of the virtual machine.
6. In the **Description** field, enter the description of the virtual machine. This field is optional.
7. Click **Add**.
8. Some operating systems from the distribution kit require accepting the terms of the relevant end user license agreement. Read the text of the end user license agreement and click **Accept**.

The virtual machine with a preset operating system image is created.

*To create a virtual machine with a custom operating system image in the **Virtual machines** section:*

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Virtual machines** section.
3. Click **Create VM**.

   This opens the virtual machine creation window.
4. In the **Template** drop-down list, select a template for the virtual machine.

   If the list does not contain a suitable template, you can import or create a template in the **Templates** section of the Sandbox web interface window.
5. In the **Name** field, type the name of the virtual machine.
6. In the **Description** field, enter the description of the virtual machine. This field is optional.
7. Click **Add**.
8. If internet access is not configured for the server on which you are creating the virtual machine, the *No internet access* error message is displayed in the **Templates** window. To complete the virtual machine creation process, you must download debug symbols.

The virtual machine with a custom operating system image is created.

Creating a virtual machine in the table of templates

To create a virtual machine with a preset operating system image in the template table:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.

   Go to the **Templates** section.

2. In the **Actions** column next to the template, click **Create VM**.

   This opens the virtual machine creation window.

3. In the **Template** drop-down list, select a template for the virtual machine.

   If the list does not contain a suitable template, you can import or create a template in the **Templates** section of the Sandbox web interface window.

4. In the **Name** field, type the name of the virtual machine.

5. In the **Description** field, enter the description of the virtual machine. This field is optional.

6. Click **Add**.

7. Some operating systems from the distribution kit require accepting the terms of the relevant end user license agreement. Read the text of the end user license agreement and click **Accept**.

The virtual machine with a preset operating system image is created.

To create a virtual machine with a custom operating system image in the template table:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.

   Go to the **Templates** section.

2. In the **Actions** column next to the template, click **Create VM**.

   This opens the virtual machine creation window.

3. In the **Template** drop-down list, select a template for the virtual machine.

   If the list does not contain a suitable template, you can import or create a template in the **Templates** section of the Sandbox web interface window.

4. In the **Name** field, type the name of the virtual machine.

5. In the **Description** field, enter the description of the virtual machine. This field is optional.

6. Click **Add**.

7. If internet access is not configured for the server on which you are creating the virtual machine, the *No internet access* error message is displayed in the **Templates** window. To complete the virtual machine creation process, you must download debug symbols.

The virtual machine with a custom operating system image is created.

Creating a virtual machine in the template view

1. To create a virtual machine with a preset operating system image in the template view:
2. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
3. Go to the **Templates** section.
4. Select the relevant template.
5. Click **Create VM**.

   This opens the virtual machine creation window.
6. In the **Template** drop-down list, select a template for the virtual machine.

   If the list does not contain a suitable template, you can import or create a template in the **Templates** section of the Sandbox web interface window.
7. In the **Name** field, type the name of the virtual machine.
8. In the **Description** field, enter the description of the virtual machine. This field is optional.
9. Click **Add**.
10. Some operating systems from the distribution kit require accepting the terms of the relevant end user license agreement. Read the text of the end user license agreement and click **Accept**.

The virtual machine with a preset operating system image is created.

To create a virtual machine with a custom operating system image in the template view:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. Select the relevant template.
4. Click **Create VM**.

   This opens the virtual machine creation window.
5. In the **Template** drop-down list, select a template for the virtual machine.

   If the list does not contain a suitable template, you can import or create a template in the **Templates** section of the Sandbox web interface window.
6. In the **Name** field, type the name of the virtual machine.
7. In the **Description** field, enter the description of the virtual machine. This field is optional.

8. Click **Add**.

9. If internet access is not configured for the server on which you are creating the virtual machine, the *No internet access* error message is displayed in the **Templates** window. To complete the virtual machine creation process, you must download debug symbols.

The virtual machine with a custom operating system image is created.

Viewing the table of virtual machines with preset operating systems

To view the list of virtual machines with preset operating systems:

1. Select the **Virtual machines** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.

2. Select the **Preconfigured** tab.

The table of virtual machines with preset operating systems is displayed.

The table contains the following information:

- **Name** is the name of the virtual machine.
- **Status** is the status of the virtual machine, for example, **Enabled** or **Disabled**.
- **Actions** are operations available for the virtual machine. The following operations may be available: **Delete**.

The **Not installed virtual machines** section displays virtual machines that are ready for installation but have not yet been installed.

Viewing the table of virtual machines with custom operating systems

To view the list of virtual machines with custom operating systems:

1. Select the **Virtual machines** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.

2. Select the **Custom** tab.

The table of virtual machines with custom operating systems is displayed.

The table contains the following information:

- **Created** is the time when the virtual machine was created.
- **Name** is the name of the virtual machine.
- **Status** is the status of the virtual machine, for example, **Enabled** or **Disabled**.

- **Actions** are operations available for the virtual machine. The following operations may be available: **Delete**.
- **Description** is the description specified when creating the virtual machine.

Installing a virtual machine

After creating a virtual machine, it must be installed.

To install a virtual machine with a preset operating system image:

1. Select the **Virtual machines** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. Select the **Preconfigured** tab.
3. In the **Not installed virtual machines** section, click **Install ready VMs**.

   All virtual machines pending installation are installed.

To install a virtual machine with a custom operating system image:

1. Select the **Virtual machines** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. Select the **Custom** tab.
3. Next to the relevant virtual machine in the **Actions** column, click the **Install** link.
4. When the virtual machine is installed, in the **Actions** column, click the **Enable** link.

   The virtual machine is installed and ready to use.

Deleting a virtual machine

To delete an installed virtual machine:

1. Select the **Virtual machines** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. Select the **Preconfigured** or **Custom** tab.
3. In the **Actions** column next to the relevant virtual machine, click **Delete**.

   The virtual machine is deleted.

To delete a non-installed virtual machine with a preset operating system image:

1. Select the **Virtual machines** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. In the **Not installed virtual machines** section, click **Delete all pending VMs**.

   All virtual machines with preset operating system images that are pending installation are deleted.

To delete a non-installed virtual machine with a custom operating system image:

1. Select the **Virtual machines** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. Select the **Custom** tab.
3. Next to the relevant virtual machine in the **Actions** column, click the **Delete** link.

   The virtual machine with a custom operating system image that is pending installation is deleted.

Downloading debug symbols

If internet access is not configured for the server on which the virtual machine with the custom image is installed, you must download the Microsoft debug symbols to correctly complete the virtual machine installation.

You can download debug symbols during virtual machine installation in the **Templates** window or after the virtual machine receives the **Failed** status in the list of virtual machines.

For correct loading of debug symbols, Windows Debug Tools must be installed in the operating system used for the virtual machine template.

*To download debug symbols during virtual machine installation in the **Templates** window:*

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. Select the relevant template.
4. In the window with the *No internet access* error, click **Download manifesto**.

   An archive is downloaded to your computer.
5. Unpack the downloaded archive.
6. Run the sbsymtool.ps1 using Windows PowerShell.

   The archive with debug symbols is downloaded to the folder where this file is located.
7. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
8. Go to the **Templates** section.
9. Select the template for which you have downloaded debug symbols.
10. In the **Actions** drop-down list, select **Upload symbols**.
11. This opens a window; in that window, select the archive with the debug symbols and click **Open**.

    Debug symbols are downloaded. The virtual machine is installed and displayed in the list of virtual machines running custom operating systems.

*To download debug symbols after a virtual machine has received the **Failed** status in the list of virtual machines:*

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. Select the relevant template.
4. In the **Actions** drop-down list, select **Download manifesto**.

   An archive is downloaded to your computer.
5. Unpack the downloaded archive.
6. Run the sbsymtool.ps1 using Windows PowerShell.

   The archive with debug symbols is downloaded to the folder where this file is located.
7. In the **Templates** window, expand the **Actions** list and select **Upload symbols**.
8. This opens a window; in that window, select the archive with the debug symbols and click **Open**.

Debug symbols are downloaded. The virtual machine is installed and displayed in the list of virtual machines running custom operating systems.

Setting the maximum number of simultaneously running virtual machines

Set a limit on the number of simultaneously running virtual machines with operating systems in which the Sandbox component will process objects.

The number of simultaneously running virtual machines cannot exceed 200.

Calculate the number of simultaneously running virtual machines with images of operating systems as follows: multiply the number of logical cores by 1.5.

To set the maximum number of simultaneously running virtual machines:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Administration** section.
2. In the **Guest virtual machines** group of settings, in the **Maximum simultaneous VMs** field, enter the number of simultaneously running virtual machines.

   You can enter a number ranging from 1 to 200.
3. Click **Save**.

Changing the number of license keys for a virtual machine with a custom operating system image

When creating a virtual machine with a custom operating system image, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform specifies the number of license keys for software that is used inside that virtual machine. By default, the number of license keys is equal to the number of virtual machines running at the same time. Your license must cover this number. If necessary, you can change the number of license keys for the virtual machine.

If the number of license keys configured for a virtual machine is less than the number of simultaneously running virtual machines, the overall performance of the Sandbox server may be degraded.

It is not recommended to change the specified number of simultaneously running virtual machines.

To change the number of license keys for a virtual machine with a custom operating system image:

1. Enter the management console of the Sandbox server via the SSH protocol or through a terminal.
2. Get a list of servers by running the `sb-custom-images list-vm` command.

   The table of virtual machines is displayed, where `id` is the ID of the virtual machine, `name` is the name of the virtual machine, and `licenses` is the number of license keys.
3. Set the number of license keys for the selected virtual machine by running the `sb-custom-images licenses -id <virtual machine ID> -ln <number of licenses>` command.

The number of license keys is changed.

To get help for the script, run the `sb-custom-images --help` command.

Downloading the Sandbox system log to the hard drive

Log data in the Sandbox system is stored in open, non-encrypted form. The data is stored for the last 7 days.

To download the Sandbox system log to the hard drive:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Administration** section.
2. In the **System log** settings group, click the **Download** button.
3. The Sandbox system log is downloaded to your computer's hard drive into the folder set as the file download folder in the settings of the browser that you use for working with the application.

Exporting Sandbox settings

To export the settings of a Sandbox system:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Administration** section.
2. In the **Settings** settings group, click the **Export** button.

   This opens the **Warning** window containing a warning on specifics of exporting the system parameters.

   The Sandbox system parameters are dependent on hardware and software parameters of the server, on which the Sandbox component is installed. The Sandbox system exported parameters are intended to be imported to the same or another server strictly identical in configuration. Any attempt to restore the configuration of the Sandbox system with parameter values saved to another Sandbox system may disrupt the Sandbox system.
3. Click **Save**.

A tar.gz file is downloaded to your computer's hard drive into the folder set as the file download folder in the settings of the browser that you use for working with the application. The file contains all the Sandbox system current parameters.

Archives with backup copies of the system parameters can contain confidential information, such as passwords and privacy keys. The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator must independently ensure the security of this data.

Importing Sandbox settings

To import Sandbox settings:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Administration** section.
2. In the **Settings** settings group, click the **Import** button.

   This open the **Warning** window containing a warning on specifics of importing the system parameters.

   The Sandbox component parameters are dependent on hardware and software parameters of the server, on which the Sandbox is installed. The Sandbox exported parameters are intended to be imported to the same or another server strictly identical in configuration. Any attempt to restore the configuration of one Sandbox system with parameter settings saved to another Sandbox system may disrupt the system.
3. Click **Restore**.

   This opens the file selection window.
4. Select a tar.gz file with the Sandbox parameters that you want to download and click the **Open** button.

   This closes the file selection window.

If the Sandbox parameters have been successfully imported, the Sandbox server will restart. A few minutes later, you need to refresh the browser window and log in again.

Archives with backup copies of the system configuration can contain confidential information, such as passwords and privacy keys. The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator must independently ensure the storage security of this data.

Restarting the Sandbox server

To restart the Sandbox server:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Administration** section.
2. In the **Power** settings group, click the **Restart** button.
   This opens the Sandbox server restart confirmation window.
3. Click **Yes**.

The Sandbox server will restart. In a few minutes, you will be able to log in to the system.

Powering off the Sandbox server

To power off the Sandbox server:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Administration** section.
2. In the **Power** settings group, click the **Power off** button.
   This opens the Sandbox server shutdown confirmation window.
3. Click **Yes**.

The Sandbox server powers off.

Changing the Sandbox administrator account password

To change the Sandbox administrator account password:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Administration** section.
2. The **Change password** settings group will show the Sandbox administrator account name that you set during installation of the Sandbox and the fields for changing the password.
3. In the **Current password** field, enter the current password for the Sandbox administrator account.

4. In the **New password** field, enter a new password for the Sandbox administrator account.
5. In the **Confirm password** field, enter the new password for the Sandbox administrator account again.
6. Click **Change password**.

   The Sandbox administrator account password will be changed.

For administrators: Getting started with the application web interface

The intended audience of this section are personnel who install and administer Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and manage PCN and SCN servers and tenants in distributed solution and multitenancy mode.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Interface

The application is managed through the web interface. Sections of the application web interface differ depending on the role of the user: **Administrator** or **Senior security officer / Security officer/Security auditor**.

The window of the application web interface contains the following:

- Sections in the left part and in the lower part of the application web interface window.
- Tabs in the upper part of the application web interface window for certain sections of the application.
- The workspace in the lower part of the application web interface window.

Sections of the application web interface window

The application web interface for the **Administrator** role contains the following sections:

- **Dashboard**. Contains Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Monitoring data.
- **Operation mode**. Contains information about PCN and SCN servers and about tenants in distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
- **Endpoint Agents**. Contains information about connected computers with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component and their settings.
- **Reports**: **Activity log**. Contains information about the logging settings for user activity in the application web interface.
- **Settings** Contains the settings of the server with the Central Node component.
- **Sensor servers**. Contains information about connected Sensor components and their settings.
- **Sandbox servers**. Contains information about the connection of the Central Node component to Sandbox components.
- **External systems**. Contains information about application integration with mail sensors.

Workspace of the application web interface window

The workspace displays the information you choose to view in the sections and on the tabs of the application web interface window. It also contains control elements that you can use to configure how the information is displayed.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can also view these sections of the application web interface.

Monitoring the performance of the application

You can monitor application operation using the widgets in the **Dashboard** section of the application web interface window. You can add, delete, and move widgets, configure the display scale of widgets, and select the data display period.

About widgets and layouts

You can use widgets to monitor application operation.

A *layout* is the appearance of the workspace of the application web interface window in the **Dashboard** section. You can add, delete, and move widgets in the layout.

The following widgets are available in the application:

- **Processed**. Displays the processing status for traffic coming from the Sensor component and the Endpoint Agent component to the server with the Central Node component.
- **Queues**. Displays information on the number and volume of objects waiting to be scanned by application modules and components.
- **Sandbox processing time**. Displays the average time taken to receive the scan results after objects were scanned by the Sandbox component.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the section displays information about the tenant and server that you chose.

Selecting a tenant and a server to manage in the Dashboard section

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, before using the **Dashboard** section, you must select the tenant and server whose data you want to view.

*To select a tenant and server for which you want to display data in the **Dashboard** section:*

1. In the upper right part of the application web interface window, click the arrow next to the server name.
2. In the drop-down list, select the tenant and server from the list.

Data for the selected server is displayed. If you want to select a different tenant and server, repeat the steps to select a tenant and server.

Adding a widget to the current layout

To add a widget to the current layout:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the ☰ button.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Customize**.
4. Click **Widgets**.
5. In the **Manage widgets** window that opens:
   - If you want to add the **Queues** widget, turn on the toggle switch next to the name of this widget.
   - If you want to add the **Sandbox processing time** widget, turn on the toggle switch next to the name of this widget.
   - If you want to add the **Processed** widget, click + next to the name of this widget.

The selected widget is added to the current layout.

Moving a widget in the current layout

To move a widget in the current layout:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the ☰ button.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Customize**.
4. Select the widget that you want to move within the layout.
5. Left-click and hold the upper part of the widget to drag and drop the widget to a different place in the layout.
6. Click **Save**.

The current layout is saved.

Removing a widget from the current layout

To remove a widget from the current layout:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the button.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Customize**.
4. Click the icon in the upper right corner of the widget that you want to remove from the layout.
   The widget is removed from the workspace of the application web interface window.
5. Click **Save**.

The widget is removed from the current layout.

Saving a layout to PDF

To save a layout to PDF:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the button.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Save as PDF**.
   This opens the **Saving as PDF** window.
4. In the lower part of the window, in the **Layout** drop-down list, select the page orientation.
5. Click **Download**.
   The layout in PDF format is saved to the hard drive of your computer in the downloads folder of the browser.
6. Click **Close**.

Configuring the data display period in widgets

You can configure the display of data in widgets for the following periods:

- **Day**
- **Week**
- **Month**

To configure the display of data in widgets for a day (from 00:00 a.m. to 11:59 p.m.):

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, in the drop-down list of data display periods, select **Day**.
3. In the calendar to the right of the **Day** period name, select the date for which you want to display data in the widget.

All widgets on the **Dashboard** page display data for the period you selected.

To configure the display of data on widgets for a week (Monday through Sunday):

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, in the drop-down list of data display periods, select **Week**.
3. In the calendar to the right of the **Week** period name, select the week for which you want to display data in the widget.

All widgets on the **Dashboard** page display data for the period you selected.

To display data display in widgets for a month (calendar month):

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, in the drop-down list of data display periods, select **Month**.
3. In the calendar to the right of the **Month** period name, select the month for which you want to display data in the widget.

All widgets on the **Dashboard** page display data for the period you selected.

Monitoring the receipt and processing of incoming data

In the **Processed** widget, you can assess the processing status of data coming from the Sensor component and the Endpoint Agent component to the server with the Central Node component, and track data processing errors.

To select the component (Sensor or Endpoint Agent) for which you want to assess incoming data, use the drop-down list to the right of the **Processed** widget name.

You can select the type of data display in the drop-down list to the right of the component name (Sensor or Endpoint Agent):

- **Current load**—The last 5 minutes.
- **Selected period**. In this case, you can also configure the period for which data is displayed in widgets.

The left part of each widget displays the legend for colors used in the widget itself.

If the **Current load** data display type is selected, the average data processing rate over the past 5 minutes is displayed to the right of the key.

Example:
The **Processed** widget has **(SPAN)** or **(ICAP)** Sensor type and **Current load** data display type selected and displays the data processing rate for SPAN and ICAP traffic coming from the Sensor component to the server with the Central Node component over a specific time period.
The following data is displayed:

- **Traffic**—Rate of incoming traffic to the server with the Central Node component, indicated in green (Mbps).
- **Files**—Rate of file processing indicated in gray (objects per second).
- **URLs**—Rate of URL processing indicated in blue (objects per second).
- **Unprocessed**—Number of unprocessed objects indicated by vertical red lines.
  When you move the mouse cursor over a widget, you see a pop-up window that displays the data processing rate for a specific time period.
  The **Processed** widget has **(SMTP)** Sensor type and **Current load** data display type selected and displays the data processing rate for mail traffic coming from the mail sensor to the server with the Central Node component over a specific time period.
  The following data is displayed:
- **Traffic**—Rate of incoming traffic to the server with the Sensor component, indicated in green (messages per second).
- **Files**—Rate of file processing indicated in gray (objects per second).
- **URLs**—Rate of URL processing indicated in blue (objects per second).
- **Unprocessed**—Number of unprocessed objects indicated by vertical red lines.
  When you move the mouse cursor over a widget, you see a pop-up window that displays the data processing rate for a specific time period.
  The **Processed** widget has **(LOAD) Endpoint Agents** Sensor type and **Current load** data display type selected and displays the processing rate for events coming from Endpoint Agent components to the server with the Central Node component over a specific time period (events per second).
  When you move the mouse cursor over a widget, you see a pop-up window that displays the data processing rate for a specific time period.

If the **Selected period** data display type is selected, to the right of the key you will see the average rate of incoming traffic to the server with the Central Node component and the number of objects processed during the selected period.

Example:
The **Processed** widget with an **(SPAN)** or **(ICAP)** Sensor, **Selected period** data display type, and **Month** data display period selected, displaying the rate of SPAN and ICAP traffic coming to the server with the Central Node component, as well as the number of files and URLs extracted from mail traffic during the selected month.
The following data is displayed:

- **Average traffic**—Rate of incoming traffic to the server with the Central Node component, indicated in green (objects per second).
- **Files**—Number of extracted files indicated in gray.
- **URLs**—Number of extracted URLs indicated in blue.
- **Unprocessed**—Number of unprocessed objects indicated by vertical red lines.
  When you move the mouse cursor over a widget, you see a pop-up window that displays the rate of incoming traffic to the server with the Central Node component and the number of objects processed during a specific time period.
  The **Processed** widget with an **(SMTP)** Sensor, **Selected period** data display type, and **Month** data display period selected, displaying the data processing rate of mail traffic coming to the server with the Central Node component, as well as the number of files and URLs extracted from mail traffic during the selected month.
  The following data is displayed:
- **Average traffic**—Rate of incoming traffic to the server with the Central Node component, indicated in green (objects per second).
- **Files**—Number of extracted files indicated in gray.
- **URLs**—Number of extracted URLs indicated in blue.
- **Unprocessed**—Number of unprocessed objects indicated by vertical red lines.
  When you move the mouse cursor over a widget, you see a pop-up window that displays the rate of incoming traffic to the server with the Central Node component and the number of objects processed during a specific time period.
  The **Processed** widget with **(LOAD) Endpoint Agents** Sensor type, **Selected period** data display type, and **Month** data display period selected, displaying the number of events coming from hosts with the Endpoint Agent component to the server with the Central Node component during the selected month.
  When you move the mouse cursor over a widget, you see a pop-up window that displays the number of events for a specific time period.

Monitoring the queues for data processing by application modules and components

You can use the **Queues** widget to assess the status of data processing by the YARA and AM Engine application modules and the Sandbox component and monitor the amount of unprocessed data.

Data transfer in the queue is measured in messages.

You can select the type of data display in the drop-down list to the right of the **Queues** widget name:

- **Current load**—The last 5 minutes.
- **Selected period**. In this case, you can also configure the period of data display on widgets.

The left part of the widget displays the legend for colors used in the widget.

The **Queues** widget displays the following data:

- **Number of messages** and **Data volume** processed by application modules and components:
  - **YARA**—blue.
  - **Sandbox**—violet.
  - **AM Engine**—green.
- **Unprocessed** – amount of unprocessed data indicated by vertical red lines.

When you hover the mouse cursor over a widget, you see a pop-up window that displays the status of data processing by the **YARA** and **AM Engine** application modules and the **Sandbox component**, as well as the amount of unprocessed data during a specific time period.

Monitoring the processing of data by the Sandbox component

The **Sandbox processing time** widget displays the average time elapsed from the moment data is sent to one or multiple Sandbox component servers (including the time spent in the queue before getting sent) to the moment when the Sandbox processing results are displayed in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform for the selected period.

Example:
If **Month** is configured as the period of data display in widgets, the **Sandbox processing time** widget displays orange-colored bars for each day of the month.
When you move the mouse cursor over each column, you will see a pop-up window that displays the average time that elapses from the moment data is sent to one or several servers with the Sandbox component until the results from data processing by the Sandbox component are displayed in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform during the selected day.

You can increase the rate at which data is processed by the Sandbox component and the throughput of the Sandbox component by increasing the number of servers with the Sandbox component and by distributing the data to be processed among those servers.

Viewing the working condition of modules and components of the application

If modules or components of the application encounter errors that the administrator is advised to look at, a yellow warning box is displayed in the upper part of the **Dashboard** section of the application web interface.

Users with the **Local administrator**, **Administrator**, or **Security auditor** roles can gain access to information about the working condition of the Central Node, PCN, or SCN server that the user is currently managing.

Users with the **Senior security officer**, **Security officer**, or **Security auditor** roles can gain access to the following information about the working condition:

- If you are using a standalone Central Node server, the user can access information about the working condition of the Central Node server which the user is currently managing.
- If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, and the user is managing an SCN server, the user can gain access to information about the working condition of that SCN server for tenants to whose data the user has access.
- If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, and the user is managing the PCN server, the user can gain access to information about the working condition of the PCN server and all SCN servers connected to that server, for tenants to whose data the user has access.

For details about the working condition of application modules and components,

click **View details** to open the **System health** window.

In the **System health** window, one of the following icons is displayed depending on the working condition of the application modules and components:

- OK if the modules and components of the application are working normally.
- An icon with the number of problems (for example, 1) if problems are found that the administrator is recommended to pay attention to. In this case, detailed problem information is displayed in the right part of the **System health** window.

The **System health** window contains the following sections:

- **Component health** contains information on the operational status of application modules and components, quarantine, and database update on all servers where the application is running.

  Example:
  If the databases of one or more application components have not been updated in 24 hours, the ! icon is displayed next to the name of the server on which the application modules and components are installed.
  To resolve the problem, make sure that update servers are accessible. If you are using a proxy server to connect to update servers, make sure the proxy server has no errors pertaining to the connection to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform servers.

- **Processed**—Status of receiving and processing incoming data. The status is generated based on the following criteria:
  - State of receiving data from servers with the Sensor component, from the server or virtual machine with the mail sensor, from hosts with the Endpoint Agent component.
  - Information about exceeding the maximum allowed time that objects wait in the queue to be scanned by application modules and components.
- **Connection with servers**—Status of the connection between the PCN server and connected SCN servers (displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode).

If problems are detected with the performance of application modules or components and you cannot resolve those problems on your own, please contact Kaspersky Technical Support.

Managing Central Node, PCN, or SCN servers using the application web interface

You can use the application web interface to perform the following actions with the server on which the Central Node component is installed:

- Configure the date and time on the server.
- Power off and restart the server.
- Generate or upload a server certificate that you can prepare on your own.
- Configure the network settings of the server.
- Monitor the disk space usage on the server.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

Configuring the date and time on the server

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure the date and time on the server:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Date and time** subsection.
2. In the **Time zone** drop-down list, select the time zone of the physical location of the server with the Central Node component.

   You can specify the country and time zone by selecting the relevant region on the map under the drop-down lists.
3. In the **NTP servers** section:
   - If you want to add a new NTP server:
     a. Click **Add**.
     b. In the field that opens, enter the IP address or domain name of the NTP server.
     c. Click the ✓ button to the right of the field.
   - If you want to edit the IP address or domain name of the NTP server, click the ✎ button in the line containing the server.
   - If you want to delete an NTP server, click the 🗑 button in the line containing the server.
4. Click **Apply**.

The date and time of the server will be configured.

Generating or uploading a TLS certificate of the server

If you are already using a server TLS certificate, generating or uploading a new certificate causes the currently used certificate to be removed and replaced with the new certificate.

You must enter the data of the new certificate everywhere the old certificate was used.

If you replace the TLS certificate, you will need to

- Reauthorize mail sensors (KSMG, KLMS) on Central Node.
- Reconfigure the connection of Central Node, PCN, and SCN to Sandbox.
- Reconfigure traffic forwarding from Endpoint Agent to Sensor and trusted connection with Endpoint Agent.
- Upload a new certificate to Active Directory (if you are using Active Directory).

Please delete all Endpoint Agent host isolation rules. Connection with the isolated hosts and control over them will be lost.

You can generate a new certificate in the web interface: of the Central Node server or upload a certificate that you have created independently.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To generate a TLS certificate for a Central Node server:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.
3. In the **Server certificate** section, click **Generate**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.
4. Click **Yes**.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform generates a new TLS certificate. The page is automatically refreshed.

Communication with the mail sensors, the Sandbox component, and the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application is interrupted until reauthorization.

You can choose to prepare the TLS certificate on your own and upload it using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface.

The TLS certificate file prepared for upload must satisfy the following requirements:

- The file must contain the certificate itself and a private encryption key for the connection.
- The file must be in PEM format.

  The application does not support other formats of certificates.

  If you have prepared a certificate in a different format, you must convert it to the PEM format.
- The private key length must be 2,048 bits or longer.

For more details on preparing TLS certificates for import, please refer to the documentation on Open SSL.

Upload the TLS certificate in the web interface of the PCN or SCN server to which you want to upload the certificate.

To upload a prepared TLS certificate using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.
3. In the **Server certificate** section, click **Upload**.

   This opens the file selection window.

4. Select a TLS certificate file to download and click the **Open** button.

   This closes the file selection window.

The TLS certificate is added to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Communication with the mail sensors, the Sandbox component, and the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application is interrupted until reauthorization.

Downloading the TLS certificate of the server

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To download the TLS certificate of the server:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.
2. In the **Server certificate** section, click **Download**.

   The server certificate file will be saved in the downloads folder of the browser.

Assigning a server DNS name

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To assign the server name to be used by DNS servers:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Network settings** subsection.
2. Enter the full domain name of the server into the **Server name (FQDN)** field.

   Specify the server name in FQDN format (for example: `host.domain.com` or `host.domain.subdomain.com`).
3. Click **Apply**.

   The server name will be assigned.

Configuring DNS settings

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure DNS:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Network settings** subsection.
2. In the **DNS settings** group, enter the IP addresses of the DNS servers in the **Primary and Secondary DNS servers** field.
3. Click **Apply**.

The DNS settings will be configured.

Configuring settings of the network interface

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure the network interface:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Network settings** subsection.
2. Select the network interface whose settings you want to configure.

   This opens the **Edit network interface** window.
3. In the **State** settings group, select one of the following options:
   - **Disabled**.
   - **Enabled, using DHCP server** if you want the settings received from the DHCP server to be used for the network interface.
   - **Enabled, manual configuration** if you want the manually configured network interface to be used.
4. If you selected **Enabled, manual configuration**, specify values for the following parameters:
   a. In the **IP** field, specify the IP address of the network interface.
   b. In the **Subnet mask** field, specify the subnet mask of the network interface.
   c. In the **Gateway** text box, enter the IP address of the gateway.
5. Click **Save**.

The settings of the network interface will be configured.

Configuring the default network route

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure the default network route:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Network settings** subsection.
2. In the **Network route** settings group, in the **Network interface** drop-down list, select the network interface for which you want to configure the network route.
3. In the **Gateway** text box, enter the IP address of the gateway.
4. Click **Apply**.

The default network route will be configured.

Configuring proxy server connection settings

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure the proxy server connection:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **General settings** subsection.
2. In the **Proxy server** settings group, set the toggle switch to **Enabled**.
3. In the **Host** field, specify the URL of the proxy server.
4. In the **Port** field, specify the port for connecting to the proxy server.
5. In the **User name** field, specify the user name for authentication on the proxy server.
6. In the **Password** field, specify the password for authentication on the proxy server.
7. If you do not want to use a proxy server when connecting to local addresses, select the **Bypass proxy server for local addresses** check box.
8. Click **Apply**.

The proxy server connection settings will be configured.

Configuring the mail server connection

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

The application can send notifications about alerts and system performance. To do so, you must configure the settings of the server used for sending notifications.

To configure the server for sending notifications:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.
2. Go to the **Mail configuration** tab.
3. In the **Host** field, specify the IP address of the mail server.
4. In the **Port** field, specify the port for connecting to the mail server.
5. In the **Email from** field, specify the email address from which the notifications will be sent.
6. If you want to enable authentication on the mail server, select the **Use SMTP authentication of message recipients** check box.
7. In the **User name** field, specify the user name for authentication on the server used for sending notifications.
8. In the **Password** field, specify the password for authentication on the server used for sending notifications.
9. If you want to use TLS encryption when sending notifications, select the **Use TLS encryption** check box.
10. If you want to validate the certificate of the mail server, select the **Validate TLS encryption** check box.

    The **Certificate fingerprint** field displays the fingerprint of the mail server certificate.

    > If the **Validate TLS encryption** check box is not selected, the application will consider any certificate of the mail server as trusted.

11. Click **Apply**.

The settings of the server used for sending notifications will be configured.

Selecting operating systems to use when scanning objects in Sandbox

You can select a set of operating systems that will be used to generate tasks for scanning objects using the Sandbox component. On the Sandbox server, you must install virtual machines with operating systems that match the configured set.

To select the set of operating systems:

1. Select the **Sandbox servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Go to the **Settings** tab.
3. Under **OS set**, select one of the following options:
   - **Windows XP, Windows 7, Windows 10**.
   - **CentOS 7.8, Windows XP, Windows 7, Windows 10**.

- **Astra Linux 1.7, Windows XP, Windows 7, Windows 10**.
- **Custom**.

4. If you selected **Custom**, under **Set composition**, select the check boxes next to the operating systems that you want to include in the set.

   Custom operating systems are displayed in the list if virtual machines with these operating systems are installed on the Sandbox server. Preset operating systems are always displayed in the list, but if virtual machines running these operating systems are not deployed, the **Unknown** status is displayed next to the name of the operating system.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will create tasks for scanning objects in Sandbox in accordance with the selected set.

If the set of operating systems installed on the Sandbox server does not match the set selected on the Central Node server, objects are not sent to be scanned by that Sandbox server. If multiple Sandbox servers are connected to the Central Node server, the application sends objects to those Sandbox servers whose installed operating systems match the set selected on Central Node.

You can change the set of operating systems in the course of using the application. In this case, you need to make sure that the configuration of the Sandbox server satisfies hardware requirements.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the settings of the operating system set configured on the PCN server are not applied to SCN servers connected to that PCN server. You can select the set of operating systems for each PCN and SCN server individually.

Managing the Sensor component

The Sensor component receives data from network traffic and mail traffic.

You can install the Sensor and Central Node components on the same server or on separate servers. The Sensor component installed on a standalone server must be connected to the server with the Central Node component. A connection request is created during component installation.

If the Sensor component is installed on the same server as the Central Node component, you can configure the Sensor component in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. If the Sensor component is installed on a standalone server, in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, you can only process connection requests from this component and view information about the component in the table of servers with the Sensor component. Other component settings can be edited in the administrator menu.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, perform the necessary actions to connect to PCN or SCN servers.

Viewing the table of servers with the Sensor component

The table of servers with the Sensor component is located in the **Sensor servers** section of the application web interface window.

The **Certificate fingerprint** field displays the fingerprint of the TLS certificate of the Central Node server.

The **Server list** table contains the following information:

- **IP/name**—IP address or domain name of the server with the Sensor component.
- **Type**—Type of Sensor component. Possible values:
  - **Central Node**—The Sensor component is installed on the same server as the Central Node component.
  - **Remote**—The Sensor component is installed on a different server or a mail sensor is used as the Sensor component.
- **Certificate fingerprint**—Fingerprint of the TLS certificate used to establish an encrypted connection between servers with the Sensor and Central Node components.
- **KSN/KPSN**—Status of the connection to the KSN/KPSN reputation databases.
- **SPAN**—Status of SPAN traffic processing.
- **SMTP**—Status of integration with a mail server via SMTP.
- **ICAP**—Status of integration with a proxy server via ICAP.
- **POP3**—Status of integration with a mail server via POP3.
- **State**—Status of the connection request.

Processing a connection request from the Sensor component

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

You can accept, decline, or revoke a previously accepted connection request from the Sensor component.

To process a connection request from the Sensor component:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.

   The **Server list** table displays the already connected Sensor components, and connection requests.

2. In the line containing the connection request of the Sensor component, perform one of the following actions:
   - If you want to connect the Sensor component, click the **Accept** button.
   - If you do not want to connect the Sensor component, click the **Reject** button.
3. In the confirmation window, click **Yes**.

The connection request from the Sensor component will be processed.

Configuring the maximum size of a scanned file

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure the maximum size of a scanned file:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.

   The **Server list** table will be displayed.

2. Select the Sensor component for which you want to configure the maximum size of a scanned file.

   This opens the Sensor component settings page.

3. Select the **General settings** section.

4. If you want the application to scan files of any size, select the **Unlimited** check box.

5. If you want to set a maximum size for files that the application will scan:

   a. Clear the **Unlimited** check box.

   b. In the field under the check box, enter the maximum allowed size of a file.

   c. In the drop-down list to the right of the field, select the unit of measurement.

6. Click **Apply**.

The maximum size of a scanned file will be configured.

Configuring receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.

   The **Server list** table will be displayed.

2. Select the Sensor component for which you want to configure the receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports.

   This opens the Sensor component settings page.

3. Select the **SPAN traffic processing** section.

   The **Network interfaces** table is displayed.

4. In the row of the network interface from which you want to configure the receipt of mirrored traffic, set the toggle switch in the **SPAN traffic scanning** column to **Enabled**.

5. In the **Capture thread** drop-down list, select the stream that will process this network interface.

6. In the **Select CPU** drop-down list, select the processor that will process the network traffic.

7. Click **Apply**.

The receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports will be configured.

Configuring integration with a mail server via SMTP

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure integration with a mail server over SMTP:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.

   The **Server list** table will be displayed.

2. Select the Sensor component for which you want to configure integration with the mail server via SMTP.

   This opens the Sensor component settings page.

3. Select the **SMTP integration** section.

4. In the **State** field, set the toggle switch to **Enabled**.

5. In the **Destination domains** field, specify the name of the mail domain or subdomain. The application will scan email messages sent to mailboxes of the specified domains.

   To disable a domain or subdomain, enclose it in the `!domain.tld` form.

   If you leave the mail domain name blank, the application will receive messages sent to any email address.

6. In the **Clients** field, specify the IP addresses of hosts and/or masks of subnets (in CIDR notation) with which the application is allowed to interact over the SMTP protocol.

   To disable a host or subnet, enclose the address in the `!host` form.

   If you leave this field blank, the application will receive the following messages:

   - From any email addresses if you specified email domains in the **Destination domains** field.
   - From a mail server in the same subnet as the server with the Sensor component if no domain is indicated in the **Destination domains** field.

7. If you want the application to receive messages of any size, in the **Message size limit** settings group, select the **Unlimited** check box.

8. If you want to set a maximum allowed size of incoming messages:

   a. Clear the **Unlimited** check box.

   b. In the field under the check box, enter the maximum allowed size of a message.

   c. In the drop-down list to the right of the field, select the unit of measurement.

9. Click **Apply**.

   Integration with a mail server via SMTP will be configured. The application will scan email messages received over the SMTP protocol according to the defined settings.

If you have deployed the Central Node and Sensor components as a cluster, you can configure fault-tolerant integration with the mail server.

To configure fault-tolerant integration with the mail server:

1. Configure Round Robin on the DNS server for the domain name corresponding to the Central Node cluster.

2. Specify this domain name in the mail server settings.

   Integration with the mail server will be configured based on the domain name. The mail server will communicate with a random server in the cluster. If this server fails, the mail server will communicate with another healthy server in the cluster.

Configuring TLS encryption of connections with a mail server via SMTP

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure TLS encryption of connections with the mail server over SMTP:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.

   The **Server list** table will be displayed.

2. Select the Sensor component for which you want to configure TLS encryption of connections with the mail server over the SMTP protocol.

   This opens the Sensor component settings page.

3. Select the **SMTP integration** section.

4. In the **State** field, set the toggle switch to **Enabled** if it is disabled.

5. In the **Client TLS security level** settings group, select one of the following options:

   - **No TLS encryption**.

     The application will not employ TLS encryption of connections with a mail server.

- **Attempt TLS encryption for incoming messages**.

  The application will support TLS encryption of the connection, but encryption will not be mandatory.

- **Require TLS encryption for incoming messages**.

  The application will receive messages only over encrypted channels.

6. Click the **Download TLS certificate** button to save the TLS certificate of the server with the Sensor component on the computer in the browser's downloads folder.

   This certificate is required for authentication on the mail server.

7. In the **Requesting Client TLS certificate** settings group, select one of the following options:

   - **Do not request**.

     The application will not verify the TLS certificate of the mail server.

   - **Request**.

     The application will request a TLS certificate from the mail server, if one is available.

   - **Require**.

     The application will receive messages only from those mail servers that have a TLS certificate.

8. Click **Apply**.

TLS encryption of connections with the mail server over the SMTP protocol will be configured.

Enabling and disabling integration with a proxy server via ICAP

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

When a standalone proxy server is used, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not provide encryption of ICAP traffic or authentication of ICAP clients by default. The application administrator must take steps to ensure a secure network connection between your proxy server and Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform by using traffic tunneling or iptables.

To enable or disable integration with a proxy server over ICAP:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.

   The **Server list** table will be displayed.

2. Select the Sensor component for which you want to configure integration with a proxy server over the ICAP protocol.

   This opens the Sensor component settings page.

3. Select the **ICAP integration with proxy server** section.

4. In the **State** field, set the toggle switch to **Enabled**.

The **Host** field displays the URL of the Response Modification (RESPMOD) service that processes inbound traffic.

Use this URL to configure integration with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform via ICAP on a proxy server in your company.

5. Click **Apply**.

Integration with a proxy server over the ICAP protocol will be enabled.

If you have deployed the Central Node and Sensor components as a cluster, you can configure fault-tolerant integration with a proxy server.

To configure the fault-tolerant integration with the proxy server:

1. Configure Round Robin on the DNS server for the domain name corresponding to the Central Node cluster.
2. Specify this domain name in the proxy server settings.

Integration with the proxy server will be configured based on the domain name. The proxy server will communicate with a random server in the cluster. If this server fails, the proxy server will communicate with another healthy server in the cluster.

Configuring integration with a mail server via POP3

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure integration with a mail server over POP3:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.

   The **Server list** table will be displayed.
2. Select the Sensor component for which you want to configure integration with the mail server via POP3.

   This opens the Sensor component settings page.
3. Select the **POP3 integration** section.
4. Set the toggle switch next to the **State** parameter to **Enabled**.
5. In the **Mail server** field, specify the IP address of the mail server with which you want to configure integration.
6. In the **Port** field, specify the port for connecting to the mail server.
7. In the **Receive every** field, specify the mail server connection frequency (in seconds).
8. If you want to use TLS encryption of connections with the mail server via POP3, select the **Use TLS encryption** check box.
9. In the **User name** field, specify the account name used for accessing the mail server.

10. In the **Password** field, specify the password for accessing the mail server.

    The mail server must support Basic Authentication.

11. In the **TLS certificate** drop-down list, select one of the following options:

    - **Accept any**.
    - **Accept untrusted self-signed**.
    - **Accept only trusted**.

    When establishing a connection with an external mail server, it is recommended to configure the acceptance of only trusted TLS certificates. If you accept untrusted TLS certificates, protection of the connection against MITM attacks cannot be guaranteed. Even though the acceptance of trusted TLS certificates also cannot guarantee protection of the connection against MITM attacks, it is the most secure of the supported methods for integration with a mail server over the POP3 protocol.

12. If necessary, in the **Cipher suite** field, modify the OpenSSL settings used when establishing a connection with the mail server via POP3.

    You can view reference information on OpenSSL by clicking the **Help** link.

13. Click **Apply**.

    Integration with the mail server via POP3 will be configured.

If you have deployed the Central Node and Sensor components as a cluster, you can configure fault-tolerant integration with the mail server.

To configure fault-tolerant integration with the mail server:

1. Configure Round Robin on the DNS server for the domain name corresponding to the Central Node cluster.
2. Specify this domain name in the mail server settings.

   Integration with the mail server will be configured based on the domain name. The mail server will communicate with a random server in the cluster. If this server fails, the mail server will communicate with another healthy server in the cluster.

Managing the cluster

This section contains information about managing the cluster servers.

Viewing the table of servers of the cluster

To view the table of cluster servers:

1. In a browser on any computer on which access to the Central Node server has been allowed, enter the IP address of any server in the Central Node cluster or the **fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the cluster** into the the address bar of your browser.

   To ensure uninterrupted access to the program web interface, you can configure the Round Robin function on the DNS server. To do this, log in to the web interface of the first healthy server of the Central Node cluster.

   An input window for account credentials of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user opens.

2. Enter the administrator user name "admin" and the password that was set during installation of the application.

3. Select the **Local administrator** check box.

4. Click **Log in**.

   This opens a web interface window in which you can manage application sizing.

5. Go to the **Cluster** section.

A window with a table will open.

The table contains the following information:

- **Server type**—server type depending on its role in the cluster.

  The following values can be displayed:

  - **Storage**.
  - **Processing**.

- **Status**—server status.

  The following values can be displayed:

  - **Connected**.
  - **Not connected**.

- **Host name**—server name.
- **IP**— IP address of the server.
- **RAM**—RAM load level of the server.
- **CPU**—CPU load level of the server.
- **Action**—Actions that you can perform with the server.

  The following action is available: **Delete**.

Adding a server to a cluster

To add a server to the cluster, you need to start the installation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform on this server and follow the steps to install the components. The added server is displayed in the cluster server list.

Increasing the disk space on the storage server

You can increase the disk space on an operational storage server by installing an additional disk.

To increase the disk space of the storage server by means of an additional disk, you need to contact Technical Support.

The server is configured in Technical Support Mode.

Decommissioning servers

To decommission an operational server, you need to contact Technical Support.

If a server fails, you can decommission it on your own.

To decommission an inoperable processing server:

1. Add a new processing server to the cluster.
2. Remove the server from the cluster.
3. Configure the sizing of the application for the new configuration.

   The processing server will be decommissioned.

To decommission an inoperable storage server:

1. Add a new storage server to the cluster.
2. Remove the inoperable storage server from the cluster.

To remove an inoperative storage server from the cluster, you must contact Technical Support.

The storage server will be decommissioned.

Removing a server from a cluster

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

A removed server cannot be restored. Make sure that the selected server is not operational.

To remove a server from the cluster:

1. Log in to the web interface for sizing management.
2. Go to the **Cluster** section.
3. In the **Action** column, click the **Delete** link opposite the server that you want to remove.
4. Click **Proceed**.

   The removal process will start. Removal may take about a day. Information about the removed server will not be displayed in the table of servers.

After removing the server, you can reconfigure the servers in the cluster or add a server with the same role to maintain the same level of application performance.

Starting up and shutting down the cluster

To shut down or start the cluster, we recommend contacting Technical Support. Do not shut down or start the cluster if you encounter problems with application health.

If you want to power off the healthy servers in the cluster, you must first shut down the cluster to avoid data loss.

To shut down a cluster:

1. In a browser on any computer on which access to the Central Node server has been allowed, enter the IP address of the server with the Central Node component into the browser's address bar.

   If you are using the fault-tolerant version of the application, you can enter the IP address of any server of the Central Node cluster or **the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the cluster**.

   To ensure uninterrupted access to the program web interface, you can configure the Round Robin function on the DNS server. To do this, log in to the web interface of the first healthy server of the Central Node cluster.

   An input window for account credentials of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user opens.
2. Enter the administrator user name "admin" and the password that was set during installation of the application.
3. Select the **Local administrator** check box.

4. Click **Log in**.

   This opens a web interface window in which you can manage application sizing.

5. Go to the **Cluster** section.

6. Click the **Shut down** button.

The main components of the application are stopped. You can now power off the cluster servers.

To start up the cluster servers:

1. Disconnect power to the servers if it has not been previously disconnected.

2. Power on the storage server.

3. Power up the remaining servers.

The cluster servers will start up.

The scaling management web interface becomes available when more than half of the cluster servers are started. For example, if there are 7 servers in the cluster, the web interface will be available when 4 servers of the cluster are powered on.

Notifications about the maximum allowed CPU and RAM load for the Central Node and Sensor servers

Maintaining a high load on the CPU and RAM of the Central Node and Sensor servers may prevent application components from working.

You can configure maximum values for the CPU and RAM loads on Central Node and Sensor servers; if these are exceeded, the upper part of the **Dashboard** section of the application web interface for users with the **Senior security officer**, **Security officer**, **Administrator**, or **Local administrator** roles displays a yellow warning box. You can also configure notifications to be sent to one or more email addresses and an SNMP protocol connection for sending information about the CPU and RAM load to external systems that support this protocol.

If you have deployed the Central Node and Sensor components as a cluster, warnings are displayed separately for each server in the cluster.

Users with the **Senior security officer** or **Security officer** role can also create rules for sending notifications. In this case, sending notifications correctly requires configuring maximum allowed load values for the CPU and RAM of servers, as well as notification settings on the server.

In existing rules for sending notifications about application components, the CPU load and RAM load notifications are enabled automatically if the **All** check box is selected under **Components** when the rule is created.

Configuring the maximum allowable CPU and RAM load of the Central Node and Sensor servers

In the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you need to set the maximum allowed load values for the CPU and RAM load of each Central Node server from which you want to receive notifications. If you use a Central Node cluster, you can configure these settings on any cluster server.

To configure the maximum allowed load on the CPU and RAM of the Central Node and Sensor servers:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **General settings** subsection.
2. Under **Monitoring**:
   - In the **Warning of CPU usage above N % for M minutes** field, enter the maximum allowed CPU usage and time period for which the maximum load can be maintained.

     By default, the maximum CPU load is 95% for 5 minutes.
   - In the **Warning of RAM usage above N % for M minutes** field, enter the maximum allowed RAM usage and time period for which the maximum usage can be maintained.

     By default, the maximum RAM usage is 95% for 5 minutes.
3. Click **Apply**.

The maximum allowed load of server CPU and RAM will be configured. If one of the values is exceeded on the Central Node and/or Sensor server, in the upper part of the **Dashboard** section of the application web interface for users with **Senior security officer**, **Security officer**, **Administrator**, or **Local administrator** role, a yellow warning box is displayed.

Configuring the SNMP protocol connection

You can send information about the CPU and RAM load on Central Node and Sensor servers to external systems that support the SNMP protocol. To do so, you must configure the connection for the protocol.

If the Central Node component is deployed as a cluster, data about the CPU and RAM load of each server in the cluster is sent to external systems.

To configure the SNMP protocol connection on the Central Node server:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **General settings** subsection.
2. Under **SNMP**, select the **Use SNMP** check box.
3. In the **Protocol version** field, select a protocol version:
   - **v2c**.
   - **v3**.

4. If you selected the **v2c** protocol version, in the **Community string** field, enter the password that will be used for connecting to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

5. If you selected **v3**:

   a. In the **Authentication protocol** field, select one of the following options for checking the accuracy and integrity of data sent to the external system:

   - **MD5**.
   - **SHA256**.

   b. In the **User name** field, enter the user name.

   c. In the **Password** field, enter the password for authentication.

   > User name and password configured in the **User name** and **Password** fields must match the user name and password configured when creating the account in the external system. If the credentials do not match, the connection cannot be established.

   d. In the **Privacy protocol** field, select an encryption type:

   - **DES**.
   - **AES**.

   e. In the **Password** field, enter the encryption password.

   > The password configured in this field must match the password configured in the external system.

Protocol connection on the Central Node server is configured. If the request for data is successfully processed, the server of the external system displays information about CPU and RAM load of the Central Node server.

To configure the SNMP protocol connection on the Sensor server:

1. Enter the management console of the Sensor server via the SSH protocol or through a terminal.

2. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was set during the installation of the application.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.

3. Follow steps 2 through 5 of the instructions above.

Protocol connection on the Sensor server is configured. If the request is successfully processed, the server of the external system displays information about CPU and RAM load of the Sensor server.

> In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, SNMP connection settings for each PCN, SCN, and Sensor server must be configured separately.

Description of MIB objects of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

The tables below provide information about MIB objects of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Information about hard drive, CPU, and RAM load of Central Node and Sensor servers

Information about hard drive, CPU, and RAM load of Central Node and Sensor servers

Symbolic name	Description	Object identifier (OID)
`dskTotal`	Total size of the disk or partition, KB.	1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.9.1.6
`dskAvail`	Available space on the disk, KB.	1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.9.1.7
`dskUsed`	Used space on the disk, KB.	1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.9.1.8
`dskPercent`	Percentage of space used on disk, %.	1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.9.1.9
`laLoad`	System load average for 1, 5 and 15 minutes.	1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.10.1.3
`memTotalReal`	Total RAM size, KB.	1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.4.5
`memAvailReal`	Total RAM used, KB.	1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.4.6
`memTotalFree`	Total RAM free, KB.	1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.4.11

Managing Endpoint Agent host information

The application that is used as the Endpoint Agent component is installed on individual computers (hereinafter also referred to as "hosts") in the IT infrastructure of the organization. The application continuously monitors processes running on those hosts, active network connections, and files that are being modified.

Users with the **Senior security officer**, **Security officer**, **Security auditor**, **Local administrator**, or **Administrator** role can assess how regularly data is received from hosts with the Endpoint Agent component on the **Endpoint Agents** tab of the web interface window of the Central Node server for tenants to whose data the user has access. If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the web interface of the PCN server displays the list of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component for the PCN and all connected SCNs.

Users with the **Local administrator** and **Administrator** roles can configure the display of how regularly data is received from hosts with Endpoint Agent for tenants to whose data they have access.

If suspicious network activity is detected, users with the **Senior security officer** role can isolate from the network any host with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent, for tenants to whose data the user has access. In this case, the connection between the server with the Central Node component and a host with the Endpoint Agent component will not be interrupted.

In order to provide support in case of problems with the Endpoint Agent component, Technical Support staff may ask you to perform the following actions for debugging purposes (including in Technical Support Mode):

- Activate collection of extended diagnostic information.
- Modify the settings of individual application components.
- Modify the settings for storing and sending the obtained diagnostic information.
- Configure network traffic to be intercepted and saved to a file.

Technical Support staff will provide all the information needed to perform these operations (description of the sequence of steps, settings to be modified, configuration files, scripts, additional command line functionality, debugging modules, special-purpose utilities, and other resources) and inform you about the scope of data obtained for debugging purposes. The retrieved diagnostic information is saved on the user's computer. The retrieved data is not automatically sent to Kaspersky.

The operations listed above should be performed only when instructed by and under the supervision of Technical Support experts. Unsupervised changes to application settings performed in ways other than those described in this manual or according to the instructions of Technical Support experts can slow down or crash the operating system, reduce computer security, or compromise the availability and integrity of data being processed.

Selecting a tenant to manage in the Endpoint Agents section

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, prior to using the **Endpoint Agents** section, you must select the tenant whose data you want to view.

*To select a tenant to manage in the **Endpoint Agents** section:*

1. In the upper part of the application web interface menu, click the arrow next to the name of the tenant.
2. In the drop-down list, select a tenant.

   Data for the selected tenant is displayed. If you want to select a different tenant, repeat the steps to select the tenant.

Viewing the table of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component

The table of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component is located in the **Endpoint Agents** section of the application web interface window.

The table can display the following data:

- Number of hosts and activity indicators of the Endpoint Agent component:
  - **Critical inactivity** is the number of hosts from which latest data was received a very long time ago.
  - **Warning** is the number hosts from which latest data was received a long time ago.
  - **Normal activity** is the number of hosts from which latest data was recently received.
- **Host**—Name of the host with the Endpoint Agent component.
- **Server** is the name of the server to which the host with the Endpoint Agent component is connected. This column is displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
- **IP**—IP address of the computer where the Endpoint Agent component is installed.
- **OS**—Version of the operating system that is installed on the computer with the Endpoint Agent component.
- **Version** is the version of the application that is used in the role of the Endpoint Agent component.
- **Activity**—Activity indicator of the Endpoint Agent component. Possible values:
  - **Normal activity** for hosts from which latest data was recently received.
  - **Warning** for hosts from which latest data was received a long time ago.
  - **Critical inactivity** for hosts from which latest data was received an extremely long time ago.

Clicking a link in a column of the table opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Filter by this value**.
- **Exclude from filter**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Viewing information about a host

To view information about a host with the Endpoint Agent component:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Select the host for which you want to view information.

   This opens a window containing information about the host.

The window contains the following information:

- In the **Host** section:
  - **Name** is the name of the host with the Endpoint Agent component.
  - **IP** is the IP address of the host where the Endpoint Agent component is installed.
  - **OS** is the version of the operating system on the host with the Endpoint Agent component installed.
  - **Server**—Name of the SCN or PCN server. Only displayed in distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
  - **Server name**—Name of the Central Node server.
- In the **Endpoint Agent** section:
  - **Version** is the version of the application that is used in the role of the Endpoint Agent component.
  - **Activity** is the activity indicator of the Endpoint Agent component. Possible values:
    - **Normal activity** for hosts from which latest data was recently received.
    - **Warning** for hosts from which latest data was received a long time ago.
    - **Critical inactivity** for hosts from which latest data was received an extremely long time ago.
  - **Connected to server**—Name of the Central Node, SCN, or PCN server to which the host is connected.
  - **Last connection**—time of the last connection to the Central Node, SCN, or PCN server.
  - **License key status** is the status of the license key of the application that is used as the Endpoint Agent component.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by host name

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by host name:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.
   This opens the table of hosts.
2. Click the **Host** link to open the filter configuration window.
3. If you want to display only isolated hosts, select the **Show isolated Endpoint Agents only** check box.
4. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:
   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**
5. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the host name.

6. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
7. If you want to delete the filter condition, click the button to the right of the field.
8. Click **Apply**.

The filter configuration window closes.

The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component that have been isolated from the network

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component that are isolated from the network:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.
   This opens the table of hosts.
2. Click the **Host** link to open the filter configuration window.
3. Select the **Show isolated Endpoint Agents only** check box.
4. Click **Apply**.

The filter configuration window closes.

The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by PCN and SCN server names

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can filter or find hosts with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component based on the names of PCN and SCN servers to which those hosts are connected.

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by the names of PCN and SCN servers:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.
   This opens the table of hosts.

2. Click the **Servers** link to open the filter configuration window.

3. Select check boxes next to names of servers by which you want to filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component.

4. Click **Apply**.

The filter configuration window closes.

The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by computer IP address

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by IP address of the computer on which the application is installed:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of hosts.

2. Click the **IP** link to open the filter configuration window.

3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:

   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**

4. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the computer IP address. You can enter the IP address or subnet mask in IPv4 format (for example, `192.0.0.1` or `192.0.0.0/16`).

5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.

6. If you want to delete the filter condition, click the button to the right of the field.

7. Click **Apply**.

The filter configuration window closes.

The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by operating system version on the computer

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by version of the operating system installed on the computer:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.
   This opens the table of hosts.
2. Click the **OS** link to open the filter settings window.
3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:
   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**
4. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the operating system version.
5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
6. If you want to delete the filter condition, click the button to the right of the field.
7. Click **Apply**.

   The filter configuration window closes.

   The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by component version

You can filter hosts by version of the application that is used in the role of the Endpoint Agent component.

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by component version:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.
   This opens the table of hosts.
2. Click the **Version** link to open the filter settings window.

3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:

   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**

4. In the entry field, specify one or more characters of the version of the application that is used as the Endpoint Agent component.

5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.

6. If you want to delete the filter condition, click the button to the right of the field.

7. Click **Apply**.

The filter configuration window closes.

The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by their activity

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by their activity:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of hosts.

2. Click the **Activity** link to open the filter configuration window.

   Select check boxes next to one or multiple activity indicators:

   - **Normal activity**, if you want to find hosts from which the last data was recently received.
   - **Warning**, if you want to find hosts from which the last data was received a long time ago.
   - **Critical inactivity**, if you want to find hosts from which the last data was received an extremely long time ago.

3. Click **Apply**.

The filter configuration window closes.

The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Quickly creating a filter for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component

To quickly create a filter for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of hosts.

2. Do the following to quickly add filter conditions to the filter being created:

   a. Position the mouse cursor on the link containing the table column value that you want to add as a filter condition.

   b. Left-click it.

      This opens a list of actions to perform on the value.

   c. In the list that opens, select one of the following actions:

      - **Filter by this value**, if you want to include this value in the filter condition.
      - **Exclude from filter**, if you want to exclude the value from the filter condition.

3. If you want to add several filter conditions to the filter being created, perform the actions to quickly add each filter condition to the filter being created.

The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

Resetting the filter for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component

To clear the Endpoint Agent host filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click to the right of the header of the table column for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

Removing hosts with the Endpoint Agent component

To remove one or more hosts from the **Endpoint Agents** table:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Select check boxes next to one or more hosts that you want to remove. You can select all hosts by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.

   A control panel appears in the lower part of the window.
3. Click **Delete**.
4. This opens the action confirmation window; in that window, click **Yes**.

The selected hosts are removed from the **Endpoint Agents** table.

When hosts are removed the following changes are made in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform:

- You cannot create a task, prevention rule, or network isolation rule for a removed host.
- If a prevention rule was previously created for a host, its name in the rule window (the **Prevent on** field) is hidden when the host is removed. The rule continues to apply.

  If this host reconnects to the Central Node server, the host name is restored in the **Prevent on** field and the prevention rule is applied to it again.
- If a network isolation rule was previously created for a host, it continues to apply until the time specified in the rule expires.

  When this host reconnects to the Central Node, the rule is reapplied to this host.
- If an object was quarantined by the **Quarantine file** task on one host only and that host was removed, the **Restore all** button in task window is inactive because the file cannot be restored on a removed host.

Event search by the name of the removed host remains available.

Configuring activity indicators of the Endpoint Agent component

Users with the **Local administrator** and **Administrator** roles can define what durations of inactivity of the application that is used as the Endpoint Agent component are to be considered normal, low, or very low activity, and can configure the activity indicators for the application. Users with the **Security auditor** role can only view the settings of application activity indicators. Users with the **Senior security officer** or **Security officer** role can see activity indicators that you configured for the Endpoint Agent component in the **Activity** field of the Endpoint Agent host table in the **Endpoint Agents** section of the application web interface.

To configure activity indicators for the Endpoint Agent component:

1. Sign in to the application web interface under the **Local administrator**, **Administrator** or **Senior security officer** account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Endpoint Agents** subsection.
3. In the fields under the section name, enter the number of days of inactivity of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component that you want to display as **Warning** and **Critical inactivity**.
4. Click **Apply**.

Activity indicators of the Endpoint Agent component are configured.

Supported interpreters and processes

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application monitors the execution of scripts by the following interpreters:

- cmd.exe
- reg.exe
- regedit.exe
- regedt32.exe
- cscript.exe
- wscript.exe
- mmc.exe
- msiexec.exe
- mshta.exe
- rundll32.exe
- runlegacycplelevated.exe
- control.exe
- explorer.exe
- regsvr32.exe
- wwahost.exe
- powershell.exe
- java.exe and javaw.exe (only if started with the –jar option)
- InstallUtil.exe

- msdt.exe
- python.exe
- ruby.exe
- rubyw.exe

Information about the processes monitored by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application is presented in the table below.

Processes and the file extensions that they open

Process	File extensions
winword.exe	rtf doc dot docm docx dotx dotm docb
excel.exe	xls xlt xlm xlsx xlsm xltx xltm xlsb xla xlam xll xlw
powerpnt.exe	ppt pot pps pptx pptm potx potm ppam ppsx ppsm sldx sldm
acrord32.exe	pdf
wordpad.exe	docx pdf
chrome.exe	pdf
MicrosoftEdge.exe	pdf

Configuring integration with the Sandbox component

You can connect one Sandbox component to multiple Central Node components.

The following procedure is used to configure the Sandbox component connection with the Central Node component:

1. **Creating a request to connect to the Sandbox component**

   You can create a request in the application web interface under an administrator account. If you have several Central Node components installed on the server, you need to create a request for each server with the Central Node component that you want to connect to the Sandbox component. If the Central Node component is deployed as a cluster, you can create a request for connection from any server in the cluster.

2. **Processing a connection request in the Sandbox web interface**

   You can accept or reject each request.

After configuring the connection, the Sandbox server needs 5 to 10 minutes to get ready for operation. During this time, the **System health** window of the application web interface display a warning: *Default configuration error. Reinstall the Central Node component*. When the server is ready for operation, the warning disappears.

Viewing the table of servers with the Sandbox component

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the table of servers with the Sandbox component.

The table of servers with the Sandbox component is located in the **Sandbox servers** section, on the **Servers** tab of the application web interface window.

The **Certificate fingerprint** field displays the fingerprint of the TLS certificate of the Central Node server.

The **Server list** table contains the following information:

- **IP and name**—IP address or fully qualified domain name of the server with the Sandbox component.
- **Certificate fingerprint**—Certificate fingerprint of the server with the Sandbox component.
- **Authorization**—Status of the request to connect to the Sandbox component.
- **Status**—Status of the connection to the Sandbox component.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot view the table of servers with the Sandbox component.

Creating a request to connect to the server with the Sandbox component

To create a request to connect to the server with the Sandbox component through the application web interface:

1. Select the **Sandbox servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. In the upper-right corner of the window, click the **Add** button.

   This opens the **Sandbox server connection** window.
3. In the **IP** field, specify the IP address of the server with the Sandbox component to which you want to connect.
4. Click **Get certificate fingerprint**.

   The workspace displays the fingerprint of the certificate of the server with the Sandbox component.
5. Compare the obtained certificate fingerprint with the fingerprint indicated in the Sandbox web interface in the **KATA authorization** section in the **Certificate fingerprint** field.

   If the certificate fingerprints match, perform the next steps of the instructions.

   > If certificate fingerprints do not match, confirming the connection is not recommended. Make sure the data you entered is correct.
6. In the **Name** field, specify the Sandbox component name that will be displayed in the web interface of the Central Node component.

   This name is not related to the name of the host where the Sandbox is installed.
7. If you want to activate a connection with Sandbox immediately after connecting, select the **Enable** check box.
8. Click **Add**.

The connection request is displayed in the web interface of the Sandbox component.

Enabling and disabling a connection with the Sandbox component

To make a connection with the Sandbox component active or to disable it:

1. Select the **Sandbox servers** section in the window of the application web interface.

   The table of servers with Sandbox components is displayed.

2. In the row containing the relevant server in the **Status** column, perform one of the following actions:
   - If you want to activate a connection with the Sandbox component, set the toggle switch to **Enabled**.
   - If you want to disable a connection with the Sandbox component, set the toggle switch to **Disabled**.
3. Click **Apply**.

The connection with the Sandbox component will become active or will be disabled.

Deleting a connection with the Sandbox component

To delete a connection with the Sandbox component:

1. Select the **Sandbox servers** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This displays the table of computers on which the Sandbox component is installed.
2. Select the check box in the line containing the Sandbox component whose connection you want to delete.
3. In the upper-right corner of the window, click the **Delete** button.
4. In the confirmation window, click **Yes**.

The connection with the Sandbox component will be deleted.

Configuring integration with external systems

You can configure integration of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with external systems to scan files stored in those systems. Their scan results are displayed in the alerts table.

The role of an external system can be served by a mail sensor, such as Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway or Kaspersky Security for Linux Mail Server. The mail sensor sends email messages to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform for processing. Based on the results of processing of email messages in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, the mail sensor may block the transfer of messages.

Integration of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with external systems involves the following procedure:

1. **Enter the integration settings and create an integration request from the external system.**

   For more details about entering integration settings for the mail sensor, please refer to the Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway Help or the Kaspersky Security for Linux Mail Server Help.

   To integrate other external systems, use the REST API.
2. **Confirm integration for Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform**

   External systems may use identical IDs and certificates for authorization on the server with the Central Node component. If this is the case, a single integration request will be displayed in the interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
3. **Check the connection between the external system and Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform**

Viewing the table of external systems

The table of external systems is in the **External systems** section of the application web interface window. The table contains the following information:

- **Sensor**—IP address or domain name of the external system server.
- **Type**—Type of external system (mail sensor or other system).
- **Name**—Name of the integrated external system that is not a mail sensor.

  A dash is displayed in this column for a mail sensor.
- **ID**—ID of the external system.
- **Certificate fingerprint**—Fingerprint of the TLS certificate of the server with the external system used to establish an encrypted connection with the server hosting the Central Node component.

  The certificate fingerprint of the server with the Central Node component is displayed in the upper part of the window in the **Certificate fingerprint** field.
- **State**—State of the integration request.

Processing a request from an external system

To process an integration request from an external system:

1. Select the **External systems** section in the window of the application web interface.

   The **Server list** table displays the already connected external systems, and requests for integration with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform from external systems.
2. In the line containing the integration request, perform one of the following actions:
   - If you want to configure integration with the external system, click the **Accept** button.
   - If you do not want to configure integration with the external system, click the **Reject** button.
3. In the confirmation window, click **Yes**.

The integration request from the external system will be processed.

Removing an external system from the list of those allowed to integrate

After you have accepted an integration request from an external system, you can remove it from the list of those allowed to integrate. If this is the case, the connection between Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and the external system will be terminated.

To remove an external system from the list of systems allowed to integrate:

1. Select the **External systems** section in the window of the application web interface.

   The **Server list** displays the already added external systems and the requests to integrate with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform from external systems.

2. Click the **Delete** button in the line containing the integration request from the external system that you want to remove.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Yes**.

The external system will be removed from the list of those allowed to integrate.

Configuring the priority for processing traffic from mail sensors

You can enable or disable the maximum priority for processing traffic from mail sensors.

To enable or disable the maximum priority for processing traffic from mail sensors:

1. Select the **External systems** section in the window of the application web interface.

2. Do one of the following:

   - Turn on the toggle switch next to the name of the **Maximum scan priority** parameter if you want to enable the maximum priority for processing traffic from mail sensors.

   - Turn off the toggle switch next to the name of the **Maximum scan priority** parameter if you want to disable the maximum priority for processing traffic from mail sensors.

The priority for processing traffic from mail sensors will be configured.

Configuring integration with Kaspersky Managed Detection and Response

Kaspersky Managed Detection and Response (hereinafter also "MDR") detects and prevents fraud in the client's infrastructure. MDR provides continuous managed protection and allows organizations to automatically discover hard-to-detect threats while freeing up IT security personnel to work on issues requiring their participation.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform obtains data and sends it to Kaspersky Managed Detection and Response using a Kaspersky Security Network stream. Therefore, participation in KSN is necessary for configuring integration with MDR.

Integration with MDR is only available if at least one KATA or EDR license is active. If only one license key (only KATA or only EDR) is added in the application statistics is limited to the functionality provided by that license. If both license keys are added in the application, complete statistics is sent.

Before configuring the integration of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with the MDR application, you must download an archive with the configuration file from the MDR portal.

Only the Local Administrator and the KATA Web Interface Administrator can configure the integration with MDR.

Enabling the MDR integration

Make sure that an active license key is added and participation in KSN is configured in the application. Otherwise the MDR integration is unavailable.

To enable integration with MDR:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **KSN/KPSN and MDR** subsection.
3. Under **MDR integration**, click **Upload** to upload the configuration file.

   This opens the file selection window.
4. Select the archive you downloaded during registration at the MDR portal and click **Open**.

   The following information about the MDR license is displayed in the window:

   - **Serial number**.
   - **Expiration date**.
   - **Days remaining**.

Integration with MDR is enabled. Integration settings configured in the configuration file are applied to all connected Sensor components. MDR starts using alert statistics sent via the KSN stream.

Disabling the MDR integration

To disable integration with MDR:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **KSN/KPSN and MDR** subsection.
3. Under **MDR integration**, click **Delete file**.
4. In the confirmation window, click **Yes**.

The configuration file is deleted and the MDR integration is disabled. Statistics is still sent to KSN servers, but this information is not used by MDR.

Replacing the MDR configuration file

To replace the MDR configuration file:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **KSN/KPSN and MDR** subsection.
3. Under **MDR integration**, click **Replace file**.

   This opens the file selection window.
4. Select a new archive containing a configuration file and click **Open**.

   MDR license information is updated in the application web interface.

The configuration file is replaced. New integration settings are applied to all connected Sensor components.

Configuring integration with an SIEM system

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform can publish information about user actions in the application web interface as well as alerts to a *SIEM system* already in use at your organization using the Syslog protocol.

You can use TLS encryption for data transmission.

If you have deployed the Central Node and Sensor components as a cluster, you can configure fault-tolerant integration with an external system using one of the following options:

- Using the Round Robin function.
- Configure the settings of the external system so that the external system switches between the IP addresses of the cluster servers if a network error occurs.

To configure fault-tolerant integration with an external system using the Round Robin function:

1. Configure Round Robin on the DNS server for the domain name corresponding to the Central Node cluster.
2. Specify this domain name in the mail server settings.

   Integration with the mail server will be configured based on the domain name. The mail server will communicate with a random server in the cluster. If this server fails, the mail server will communicate with another healthy server in the cluster.

Enabling and disabling information logging to a remote log

You can configure the logging of information about user actions in the web interface and alerts to a remote log. The log file is stored on the server on which the SIEM system is installed. To write to the remote log, you must configure the integration with the SIEM system.

To enable or disable the logging of information about user actions in the web interface and alerts to the remote log:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **SIEM system** subsection.
2. If you want to enable / disable the recording of information about user actions in the web interface to the remote log, do one of the following:
   - If you want to enable recording of information about user actions in the web interface, select the **Activity log** check box.
   - If you want to disable the recording of information about user actions in the web interface, clear the **Activity log** check box.
3. If you want to enable / disable the recording of information about alerts to the remote log, do one of the following:
   - If you want to enable recording of alert information, select the **Alerts** check box.
   - If you want to disable recording of alert information, clear the **Alerts** check box.

   You can select both check boxes simultaneously.
4. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

Information logging in the remote log is enabled or disabled.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can only view information about remote logging settings.

Configuring the main settings for SIEM system integration

To configure the main settings for SIEM system integration:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **SIEM system** subsection.
2. Select the **Activity log** and/or **Alerts** check boxes.

   You can select one check box or both check boxes.
3. In the **Host/IP** field, enter the IP address or host name of the server of your SIEM system.
4. In the **Port** field, enter the port number used for connecting to your SIEM system.
5. In the **Protocol** field, select **TCP** or **UDP**.
6. In the **Host ID** field, enter the host ID. The host with that ID is specified as the alert source in the log of the SIEM system.

7. In the **Heartbeat** field, enter the interval for sending messages to the SIEM system.
8. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

The main settings of integration with the SIEM system will be configured.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can only view information about the SIEM system integration settings.

Uploading a TLS certificate

To upload a TLS certificate for encrypting the connection with the SIEM system:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **SIEM system** subsection.
2. In the **TLS encryption** section, click the **Upload** button.
   This opens the file selection window.
3. Select a TLS certificate file to download and click the **Open** button.
   This closes the file selection window.
   The TLS certificate is added to the application.
4. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

The uploaded TLS certificate will be used to encrypt the connection with the SIEM system.

Enabling and disabling TLS encryption of the connection with the SIEM system

To enable or disable TLS encryption of the connection with the SIEM system:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **SIEM system** subsection.
2. Select the **Activity log** and/or **Alerts** check boxes.
   You can select one check box or both check boxes.
3. In the **TLS encryption** section, perform one of the following actions:

   - Turn on the toggle switch next to the name of the **TLS encryption** parameter if you want to enable TLS encryption of the connection with the SIEM system.
   - Turn off the toggle switch next to the name of the **TLS encryption** parameter if you want to disable TLS encryption of the connection with the SIEM system.

The toggle switch next to the name of the **TLS encryption** setting can be used only if a TLS certificate is loaded.

4. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

TLS encryption of the connection with the SIEM system will be enabled or disabled.

Content and properties of syslog messages about alerts

Information about each alert is transmitted in a separate syslog category (syslog facility) that is not used by the system to deliver messages from other sources. Information about each alert is transmitted as a separate syslog message in CEF format. If the alert was generated by the Targeted Attack Analyzer module, information about that alert is transmitted as multiple separate syslog messages in CEF format.

The default maximum size of a syslog message about an alert is 32 KB. Messages that exceed the maximum size are truncated at the end.

The header of each syslog message about an alert contains the following information:

- Format version.

  Current version number: `0`. Current field value: `CEF:0`.

- Vendor.

  Current field value: `AO Kaspersky Lab`.

- Application name.

  Current field value: `Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform`.

- Application version

  The current field value is `5.1.0-6596`.

- Alert type.

  See the table below.

- Event name.

  See the table below.

- Alert importance.

  Allowed field values: `Low`, `Medium`, `High` or `0` (for `heartbeat` messages).

- Additional information.

  Example:
  ```
  CEF:0|AO Kaspersky Lab| Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform |5.1.0-6596|url_web| URL from web detected|Low|
  ```

The body of a syslog message about an alert matches the information about the alert that is displayed in the application web interface. All fields are presented in the `"<key>=<value>"` format. Depending on whether the alert occurred in network traffic or mail traffic, and depending on the technology that generated the alert, various keys may be transmitted in the body of a syslog message. If the value is empty, the key is not transmitted.

The keys, as well as their values contained in a message, are presented in the table below.

Alert type	Alert name and description	Key and description of its value
file_web	File from web detected A file was detected in network traffic.	• dvchost = <name of server with the Central Node component>. • eventId = <alert ID>. • rt = <date and time of alert>. • dst = <destination IP address>. • dpt = <destination port>. • src = <source IP address>. • spt = <source port>. • shost = <name of the host on which the file was detected>. • suser = <user name>. • fName = <name of the file within the compound object>. • fsize = <size of the file within the compound object (in bytes)>. • fileType = <format of the file within the compound object>. • fileHash = <MD5 hash of the file within the compound object>. • KasperskyLabKATAcompositeFilePath = <name of the compound object>. • KasperskyLabKATAcompositeFileSize = <total size of the compound object (in bytes)>. • KasperskyLabKATAcompositeFileHash = <MD5 hash of the compound object>. • KasperskyLabKATAfileSHA256 = <SHA256 hash of the compound object>. • cs2 = <technology that was used to detect the file>. • cs3Label = <name of the virtual machine on which the file was detected> (only for the Sandbox component). • cs1 = <list of types of the detected objects according to the Kaspersky Lab classification>. • cs3 = <version of databases used to scan the file>. • app = <name of the application-level protocol> (HTTP(S) or FTP). • requestMethod = <HTTP request method> (only for the HTTP(S) protocol). • requestClientApplication = <User Agent of the client computer> (only for the HTTP(S) protocol). • request = <URL of the detected object> (only for the HTTP(S) protocol). • requestContext = <HTTP Referer header> (only for the HTTP(S) protocol).
file_mail	File from mail detected A file was detected in mail traffic.	• dvchost = <name of server with the Central Node component>. • eventId = <alert ID>. • rt = <date and time of alert>. • fName = <name of the file within the compound object>. • fsize = <size of the file within the compound object (in bytes)>. • fileType = <format of the file within the compound object>. • fileHash = <MD5 hash of the file within the compound object>. • KasperskyLabKATAcompositeFilePath = <name of the compound object>. • KasperskyLabKATAcompositeFileSize = <total size of the compound object (in bytes)>. • KasperskyLabKATAcompositeFileHash = <MD5 hash of the compound object>. • KasperskyLabKATAfileSHA256 = <SHA256 hash of the compound object>. • KasperskyLabKATAmailEnvelopeFrom = <sender email address> (from the Received header). • KasperskyLabKATAmailFor = <recipient email address> (from the Received header). • KasperskyLabKATAmailRecievedFromIp = <IP address of the first server in the message delivery chain> (from the Received header). • cs2 = <technology that was used to detect the file>. • cs3Label = <name of the virtual machine on which the file was detected> (only for the Sandbox component). • cs1 = <list of types of the detected objects according to the Kaspersky Lab classification>. • cs3 = <version of databases used to scan the file>. • externalId = <Email message ID>. • suser = <email address of sender>. • duser = <email addresses of recipients>. • msg = <message subject>.
ids	IDS event detected An alert was generated by the Intrusion Detection System module.	• dvchost = <name of server with the Central Node component>. • eventId = <alert ID>. • requestMethod = <HTTP request method> (only for the HTTP(S) protocol). • requestClientApplication = <User Agent of the client computer> (only for the HTTP(S) protocol). • rt = <date and time of alert>. • dst = <destination IP address>. • dpt = <destination port>.

Alert type	Alert name and description	Key and description of its value
		• src = <source IP address>. • spt = <source port>. • proto = <name of the network-level protocol> (TCP or UDP). • cs1 = <type of the detected object according to the Kaspersky Lab classification>. • cs2Label = <name of the IDS rule>. • cs2 = <number of the IDS rule>. • cs3 = <Intrusion Detection System module database version>. • requestMethod = <HTTP request method> (only for the HTTP protocol). • requestClientApplication = <User Agent of the client computer> (only for the HTTP protocol). • request = <URL of the detected object>.
url_web	URL from web detected An alert was generated by URL Reputation technology or Sandbox in network traffic.	• dvchost = <name of server with the Central Node component>. • eventId = <alert ID>. • rt = <date and time of alert>. • dst = <destination IP address>. • dpt = <destination port>. • src = <source IP address>. • spt = <source port>. • shost = <name of the host on which the file was detected>. • suser = <user name>. • cs1 = <list of categories to which the URL of the detected object belongs>. • requestMethod = <HTTP request method>. • requestClientApplication = <User Agent of the client computer>. • request = <URL of the detected object>. • requestContext = <HTTP Referer header>. • reason = <HTTP response code>.
url_mail	URL from mail detected An alert was generated by URL Reputation technology or Sandbox in mail traffic.	• dvchost = <name of server with the Central Node component>. • eventId = <alert ID>. • rt = <date and time of alert>. • externalId = <Email message ID>. • suser = <email address of sender>. • duser = <email addresses of recipients>. • KasperskyLabKATAmailEnvelopeFrom = <sender email address> (from the Received header). • KasperskyLabKATAmailFor = <recipient address> (from the Received header). • KasperskyLabKATAmailRecievedFromIp = <IP address of the first server in the message delivery chain> (from the Received header). • msg = <message subject>. • request = <URL of the detected object>. • cs2 = <technology that was used to generate the alert> (Sandbox or URL Reputation). • cs3Label = <name of the virtual machine on which the file was detected> (only for Sandbox). • cs1 = <list of types of the detected objects according to the Kaspersky Lab classification> (for the Sandbox component) or <list of categories> (for URL Reputation). • cs3 = <version of databases used to scan the file> (only for Sandbox).
dns	DNS request detected An alert was generated by URL Reputation technology in DNS traffic.	• dvchost = <name of server with the Central Node component>. • eventId = <alert ID>. • rt = <date and time of alert>. • dst = <destination IP address>. • dpt = <destination port>. • src = <source IP address>. • spt = <source port>. • shost = <name of the host on which the file was detected>. • suser = <user name>. • cs2 = <list of URL categories to which the domain names belong>. • requestMethod = <type of DNS message> (request or response). • flexString1 = <type of record from the DNS request>. • dhost = <host name from the DNS request>. • cs1 = <list of domain names from the DNS response>.
file_endpoint	File from endpoint detected The alert was generated by the Endpoint Agent component on the user's computer and contains a file.	• dvchost = <name of server with the Central Node component>. • eventId = <alert ID>. • rt = <date and time of alert>. • src = <source IP address>. • shost = <name of the host on which the file was detected>. • fName = <name of the file within the compound object>. • fsize = <size of the file within the compound object (in bytes)>.

Alert type	Alert name and description	Key and description of its value
		• `fileType` = <format of the file within the compound object>. • `fileHash` = <MD5 hash of the file within the compound object>. • `KasperskyLabKATAcompositeFilePath` = <name of the compound object>. • `KasperskyLabKATAcompositeFileSize` = <total size of the compound object (in bytes)>. • `KasperskyLabKATAcompositeFileHash` = <MD5 hash of the compound object>. • `KasperskyLabKATAfileSHA256` = <SHA256 hash of the compound object>. • `cs2` = <technology that was used to detect the file>. • `cs3Label` = <name of the virtual machine on which the file was detected> (only for the Sandbox component). • `cs1` = <list of types of the detected objects according to the Kaspersky Lab classification>. • `cs3` = <version of databases used to scan the file>. • `app` = <name of the application-level protocol> (HTTP(S) or FTP). • `FilePath` = <path to the file on the computer with the Endpoint Sensors component>.
`iocScanning`	`IOC has tripped on endpoint` The alert was generated while carrying out an IOC scan of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component for Windows. This type of alert is available if you are using KEDR functionality.	• `dvchost` = <name of server with the Central Node component>. • `eventId` = <alert ID>. • `rt` = <date and time of alert>. • `src` = <source IP address>. • `shost` = <name of the host on which the file was detected>. • `cs1` = <name of the IOC file by which the alert was generated>.
`taaScanning`	`TAA has tripped on events database` Alert resulting from the IOA analysis of events. This type of alert is available if you are using KEDR functionality.	• `dvchost` = <name of server with the Central Node component>. • `eventId` = <alert ID>. • `rt` = <date and time of alert>. • `shost` = <name of the host on which the alert was generated>. • `cs1` = <name of the IOA rule by which the alert was generated>.
`yaraScanningEP`	`YARA has tripped on endpoint` The alert was generated while carrying out a YARA scan of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component for Windows. This type of alert is available if you are using KEDR functionality.	• `dvchost` = <name of server with the Central Node component>. • `eventId` = <alert ID>. • `rt` = <date and time of alert>. • `src` = <source IP address>. • `shost` = <name of the host on which the alert was generated>. • `cs1` = <name of the YARA rule by which the alert was generated>.
`heartbeat`	Periodic message containing the state of components.	• `dvchost` = <name of server with the Central Node component>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `KasperskyLabKATAcomponentName` = <name of the component>. • `KasperskyLabKATAcomponentState` = <status of the component> (`0` – OK, `>0` – Error).

Managing the activity log

Some user actions in the application web interface can cause errors in the operation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. You can enable logging of user action information in the application web interface and if necessary, view the information by downloading log files.

Enabling and disabling the recording of information in the activity log

To enable or disable the logging of information about user actions in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface to the activity log:

1. Select the **Reports** section, **Activity log** subsection in the window of the application web interface.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Set the **Activity log** toggle switch to the **Enabled** position if you want to enable the logging of information about user actions in the application web interface.
   - Set the **Activity log** toggle switch to the **Disabled** position if you want to disable the logging of information about user actions in the application web interface.

     This function is enabled by default.

Information is logged for 30 days in the user_actions.log file. After 30 days, the user_actions.log file is saved on the Central Node server in the /var/log/kaspersky/apt-base/ directory with the name user_actions.log<month>. A new file named user_actions.log is created to record information for the current month. Each file is retained for 90 days and then deleted.

To view activity log files, you must download them.

You can configure the logging of information about user activity in the application web interface to a remote log. The remote log is saved on the server on which a SIEM system is installed. The settings of integration with the SIEM system must be configured to write to the remote log.

In distributed solution mode, information about user actions in the application web interface is recorded in the log of the same server for which the users are managing the web interface. Information about the actions of PCN server users that affect the settings of SCN servers is recorded in the PCN server log.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can only view the settings for logging information to the activity log.

Downloading the activity log file

To download the activity log file:

1. Select the **Reports** section, **Activity log** subsection in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click **Download**.

Log files are saved on your local computer in your browser's downloads folder. The files are downloaded as a ZIP archive.

In distributed solution mode, you can download log files only for the server for which you are managing the web interface.

Content and properties of CEF messages about user activity in the web interface

The header of each message contains the following information:

- Format version.

  Current version number: `0`. Current field value: `CEF:0`.

- Vendor.

  Current field value: `AO Kaspersky Lab`.

- Application name.

  Current field value: `Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform`.

- Application version

  The current field value is `5.1.0-6596`.

- Event type.

  See the table below.

- Event name.

  See the table below.

- Event importance.

  Current field value: `Low`.

  Example:

  ```
  CEF:0|AO Kaspersky Lab|Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform|5.1.0-6596|tasks|Managing tasks|Low|
  ```

All fields of the CEF message have the `"<key>=<value>"` format. The keys, as well as their values contained in a message, are presented in the table below.

Event type	Event name and description	Key and description of its value
sensors	Managing the Sensor component Connecting the Sensor component to the Central Node server, modifying component settings.	• dvs = <IP address of the server>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • user = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>.
sb	Configuring integration with the Sandbox component Connecting the Sandbox component to the Central Node server.	• dvs = <IP address of the server>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • user = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>.
ex_integration	Configuring integration with external systems Configuring integration with external systems.	• dvs = <IP address of the server>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • user = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>.
ksn_kpsn_mdr	Participation in KSN, KPSN and MDR Configuring participation in Kaspersky Security Network, enabling or disabling the usage of Kaspersky Private Security Network, and configuring integration with Kaspersky Managed Detection and Response.	• dvs = <IP address of the server>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • user = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>.
yara	Managing YARA rules Operations with YARA rules.	• dvs = <IP address of the server>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • user = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>. • device external ID = <ID of the host in distributed solution mode>. • cs1label = <name of the uploaded file>.
ioc	Managing indicator of compromise Operations with IOC rules.	• dvs = <IP address of the server>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • user = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>. • deviceExternalID = <identifier of the host in distributed solution mode>.
ids	Managing IDS rules Operations with IDS rules.	• dvs = <IP address of the server>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • user = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>. • deviceExternalID = <identifier of the host in distributed solution mode>.
taa	Managing TAA rules Operations with TAA (IOA) rules.	• dvs = <IP address of the server>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • user = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>.
sb rules	Managing Sandbox rules Operations with Sandbox rules.	• dvs = <IP address of the server>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • user = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>.

Event type	Event name and description	Key and description of its value
`prevention`	`Managing prevention rules` Operations with prevention rules.	• `dvs` = <IP address of the server>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `user` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.
`exclusions`	`Managing scan exclusions` Operations with scan exclusion rules.	• `dvs` = <IP address of the server>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `user` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.
endpoint_agents	Managing Endpoint Agent hosts Operations with hosts on which the Endpoint Agent component is installed.	• `dvs` = <IP address of the server>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `user` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.
`tasks`	`Managing tasks` Operations with tasks.	• `dvs` = <IP address of the server>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `user` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.
`network_isolation`	`Network isolation of Endpoint Agent hosts` Network isolation of Endpoint Agent hosts.	• `dvs` = <IP address of the server>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `user` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.
`settings`	`Settings` Modifying Central Node server settings.	• `dvs` = <IP address of the server>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `user` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.
`settings`	`Settings` The set of virtual machine operating systems is changed to <version of the operating system set>.	• `dvs` = <IP address of the server>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `user` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>. • `cs1label` = <name of the server where the settings were updated>.
`mt`	`Managing CN, PCN and SCN servers` Modifying the settings of Primary Central Node and Secondary Central Node servers in distributed solution and multitenancy mode	• `dvs` = <IP address of the server>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `user` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.
`user_account`	`Managing user accounts` Actions on user accounts.	• `dvs` = <IP address of the server>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `user` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.
`notifications`	`Sending notifications` Configuring email notifications.	• `dvs` = <IP address of the server>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `user` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.

Event type	Event name and description	Key and description of its value
`license`	`License` Managing the license key.	• `dvs` = <IP address of the server>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `user` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.

If an operation is performed on over 30 objects simultaneously, only one entry is logged for this operation. The entry includes the information about the operation and the number of objects on which it was performed.

Updating application databases

Application databases (hereinafter also referred to as "databases") are files with records used by the application components and modules to detect events occurring in your organization's IT infrastructure.

Virus analysts at Kaspersky detect hundreds of new threats daily (including "zero-day" exploits), create records to identify them, and include them in database updates packages ("update packages"). *Update packages* consist of one or more files containing records to identify threats that were detected since the previous update package was released. We recommend that you regularly receive update packages. When the application is installed, the database release date is the same as the application release date, and therefore you must update the databases immediately after installing the application.

The application automatically looks for new update packages on Kaspersky update servers once every 30 minutes. By default, if for some reason application databases are not updated for 24 hours, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform displays this information in the **Dashboard** section of the window of the application web interface.

If the version of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is not supported, databases are not updated. You can see which versions of the application are currently supported on the application lifecycle page.

The update functionality (including anti-virus signature updates and code base updates), as well as the KSN functionality may be unavailable in the territory of the USA.

Selecting a database update source

You can select the source from which the application will download database updates. The update source may be the Kaspersky server, or a network folder or local folder on one of the computers of your organization.

To select a database update source:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **General settings** subsection.
2. In the **Database update** section, in the **Update source** drop-down list, select one of the following values:
   - **Kaspersky update server**.

     The application connects to Kaspersky update server over HTTP and downloads up-to-date databases.

- **Kaspersky update server (secure connection)**.

  The application connects to Kaspersky update server over HTTPS and downloads up-to-date databases. It is recommended to use HTTPS for database updates.

- **Custom server**.

  The application connects to your FTP or HTTP server or to the folder with application databases on your computer to download up-to-date databases.

3. If you have selected **Custom server**, in the field under the name of this setting, enter the URL of the update package on your HTTP server or the full path to the folder on your computer containing the application database update package.

4. Click **Apply**.

The application database update source is applied.

Updating databases manually

To start the database update manually:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **General settings** subsection.

2. In the **Database update** section, click the **Start** button.

3. Click **Apply**.

The application database update is started. The progress of the update will be displayed to the right of the button.

Creating a list of passwords for archives

The application does not scan password-protected archives. You can create a list of the most frequently encountered passwords for archives that are used when exchanging files within your organization. If you do so, the application will try passwords from the list when scanning an archive. If one of the passwords match, the archive will be unlocked and scanned.

The list of passwords set in application settings is also transmitted to the server with the Sandbox component.

To create a list of archive passwords:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Passwords for archives** subsection.

2. In the **Passwords for archives** field, enter the passwords that the application will use for password-protected archives.

   Enter each password on a new line. You can enter up to 50 passwords.

3. Click **Apply**.

The list of passwords for archives will be created. When scanning PDF files and files of Microsoft Word, Excel®, and PowerPoint® that are password protected, the application will use the passwords from the defined list.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the list of passwords for archives, but cannot edit it.

For security officers: Getting started with the application web interface

This section is intended for specialists who are in charge of providing data security within an organization. It contains information and instructions on configuring resources for the security of a corporate IT infrastructure and timely detection of threats.

The application allows multiple security officers to work together.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Interface

The application is managed through the web interface. Sections of the application web interface differ depending on the role of the user: **Administrator** or **Senior security officer** / **Security officer** / **Security auditor**.

The window of the application web interface contains the following:

- Sections in the left part and in the lower part of the application web interface window.
- Tabs in the upper part of the application web interface window for certain sections of the application.
- The workspace in the lower part of the application web interface window.

Sections of the application web interface window

The application web interface provides the following sections for users with the **Senior security officer**, **Security officer**, and **Security auditor** roles:

- **Dashboard**. Contains Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Monitoring data.
- **Alerts** Contains information about alerts in the network of the tenant to which you have access.
- **Threat Hunting**. Contains information about events found on hosts of the tenant to which you have access.
- **Tasks**. Contains information about tasks that you can use to manage files and application on hosts.
- **Prevention**. Contains information about policies that you can use to manage preventions of files running on selected hosts.
- **Custom rules**: **TAA**, **IDS**, **IOC**, and **YARA**. Contains information for managing user-defined rules.
- **Storage**: **Files**, and **Quarantine**. Contains information for managing objects in quarantine and Storage.
- **Endpoint Agents**. Contains information about computers with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component and their settings.

- **Reports**: **Generated Reports** and **Templates**. Contains a report builder and a list of generated reports about alerts.

- **Settings**: **IOC scanning schedule**, **Endpoint Agents**, **KPSN reputation database**, **Notification rules**, **VIP status**, **Exclusions**, **Passwords for archives**, and **License**. Contains information on the IOC scan schedule, and the settings for publishing objects in KPSN and assigning the VIP status to alerts based on information contained in alerts, the list of allowed objects, and IDS and TAA (IOA) rules excluded from scanning, passwords of archives, and added keys.

Workspace of the application web interface window

The workspace displays the information you choose to view in the sections and on the tabs of the application web interface window. It also contains control elements that you can use to configure how the information is displayed.

Selecting a tenant to manage in the web interface of the application

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode with a **Senior security officer** or **Security officer** account, before you begin using the web interface, you must select the tenant that you want to manage in the application web interface.

To select a tenant to manage in the web interface of the application:

1. In the upper part of the application web interface menu, click the arrow next to the name of the tenant.
2. In the **Select tenant** drop-down list, select a tenant.

   You can also start typing the name of the tenant in the search box and select the tenant from the list of search results.

All actions in the application web interface are applied to the selected tenant. If you want to select a different tenant, repeat the steps to select the tenant.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot select a tenant to manage in the web interface.

Monitoring the performance of the application

You can monitor application operation using the widgets in the **Dashboard** section of the application web interface window. You can add, delete, and move widgets, configure the display scale of widgets, and select the data display period.

About widgets and layouts

You can use widgets to monitor application operation.

A *layout* is the appearance of the workspace of the application web interface window in the **Dashboard** section. You can add, delete, and move widgets in the layout, as well as configure the scale of widgets.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, this section displays information for the selected tenant.

By default, this section displays information only on alerts that were not processed by users. To also display information on processed alerts, turn on the **Processed** switch in the upper-right corner of the window.

The **Dashboard** section displays the following widgets:

- Alerts:
  - **Alerts by status**. Displays the alert status depending on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user processing the alert and on whether or not this alert has been processed.
  - **Alerts by technology**. Displays the names of the application modules or components that generated the alert.
  - **Alerts by attack vector**. Displays detected objects based on the vector of the attack.
  - **VIP alerts by importance**. Displays the importance of alerts with VIP status depending on the impact that these alerts may have on the security of computers or the corporate LAN based on Kaspersky experience.
  - **Alerts by importance**. Displays the importance of alerts for users of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform depending on the impact that these alerts may have on the security of computers or the corporate LAN based on Kaspersky experience.

  The left part of each widget lists attack vectors, alert importance levels, alert status, and technologies that generated the alerts. The right part of each widget displays the number of times the alerts were triggered during the selected period for data display in widgets.

  To go to the **Alerts** section of the application web interface and view related alerts, click the link with the name of the attack vector, alert importance level, and technology that generated the alert. Alerts are filtered based on the selected element.

- Top 10:
  - **Domains**. 10 domains most frequently seen in alerts.
  - **IP addresses**. 10 IP addresses most frequently seen in alerts.
  - **Email senders**. 10 email senders most frequently seen in alerts.
  - **Email recipients**. 10 email recipients most frequently seen in alerts.
  - **TAA hosts**. 10 hosts that occur most frequently in events and alerts generated by the Targeted Attack Analyzer (TAA) technology.

- **TAA rules**. 10 TAA (IOA) rules that occur most frequently in events and alerts generated by the Targeted Attack Analyzer (TAA) technology.

- **Sent to Sandbox by TAA rules**. 10 TAA (IOA) rules that most frequently cause Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to send files for scanning by the Sandbox component.

The left part of each widget lists the domains, email addresses of recipients, IP addresses and email addresses of message senders, host names, and TAA (IOA) rule names. The right part of each widget displays the number of times the alerts were triggered during the selected period for data display in widgets.

By clicking the link with the name of each domain, recipient address, IP address, message sender address, host name, and TAA (IOA) rule name, you can go to the **Alerts** section of the application web interface and view related alerts. Alerts are filtered based on the selected element.

Adding a widget to the current layout

To add a widget to the current layout:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the button.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Customize**.
4. Click **Widgets**.
5. This opens the **Manage widgets** window; in that window, turn on the toggle switch next to the widget that you want to add.

The widget is added to the current layout.

Moving a widget in the current layout

To move a widget in the current layout:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the button.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Customize**.
4. Select the widget that you want to move within the layout.
5. Left-click and hold the upper part of the widget to drag and drop the widget to a different place in the layout.
6. Click **Save**.

The current layout is saved.

Removing a widget from the current layout

To remove a widget from the current layout:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the button.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Customize**.
4. Click the icon in the upper right corner of the widget that you want to remove from the layout.
   The widget is removed from the workspace of the application web interface window.
5. Click **Save**.

The widget is removed from the current layout.

Saving a layout to PDF

To save a layout to PDF:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the button.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Save as PDF**.
   This opens the **Saving as PDF** window.
4. In the lower part of the window, in the **Layout** drop-down list, select the page orientation.
5. Click **Download**.
   The layout in PDF format is saved to the hard drive of your computer in the downloads folder of the browser.
6. Click **Close**.

Configuring the data display period in widgets

You can configure the display of data in widgets for the following periods:

- **Day**
- **Week**
- **Month**

To configure the display of data in widgets for a day (from 00:00 a.m. to 11:59 p.m.):

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, in the drop-down list of data display periods, select **Day**.
3. In the calendar to the right of the **Day** period name, select the date for which you want to display data in the widget.

All widgets on the **Dashboard** page display data for the period you selected.

To configure the display of data on widgets for a week (Monday through Sunday):

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, in the drop-down list of data display periods, select **Week**.
3. In the calendar to the right of the **Week** period name, select the week for which you want to display data in the widget.

All widgets on the **Dashboard** page display data for the period you selected.

To display data display in widgets for a month (calendar month):

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, in the drop-down list of data display periods, select **Month**.
3. In the calendar to the right of the **Month** period name, select the month for which you want to display data in the widget.

All widgets on the **Dashboard** page display data for the period you selected.

Configuring the widget display scale

You can configure the display scale for "Alerts" type widgets. The ☰ icon in the upper right corner of a widget means you can configure the scale for that widget.

To configure the display scale for widgets:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the ☰ button.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Customize**.
4. Click ☰ in the upper right corner of the widget.

5. In the drop-down list, select one of the following widget display sizes:

   - **1x1**.
   - **2x1**.
   - **3x1**.

   The display scale of the selected widget is modified.

6. Repeat the steps for all widgets for which you want to set the display scale.

7. Click **Save**.

   The display scale of widgets is configured.

Basics of managing "Alerts" type widgets

You can configure the display scale for all "Alerts" type widgets.

The left part of each widget displays the legend for colors used in widgets.

Example:
The **Alerts by importance** widget displays the number of alerts of various importance.
Importance—Alert importance for the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user depending on the impact this alert may have on computer or corporate LAN security based on Kaspersky experience.
In the **Alerts by importance** widget, the following colors correspond to importance levels:

- Red—Alert has a high level of importance.
- Orange—Alert has a medium level of importance.
- Green—Alert has a low level of importance.

To the right of the legend, the number of alerts of each type for the selected period for displaying data in widgets is displayed.

By clicking the link with the type of each alert, you can go to the **Alerts** section of the application web interface and view all alerts of this type. Alerts are filtered based on the specific type.

Example:
The **Alerts by attack vector** widget displays **Files from email** alerts, which indicate the number of files that Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform detected in mail traffic for the selected period.
Clicking the **Files from email** link opens the **Alerts** section and displays all alerts associated with the detection of files in mail traffic for the selected period. Data will be filtered based on the following parameters: **Time**, **Object type**=FILE and **Object source**=MAIL.

The right part of each widget displays data columns. The vertical axis shows the number of events, and the horizontal axis shows the date and time of the alert. You can edit the period of data display in widgets and select the tenant for which information is displayed in the widget.

Position your mouse cursor on each data column to display the number of alerts counted for the period represented by the specific column. The number of unprocessed alerts is displayed by default. You can enable the display of processed alerts by selecting the **Processed** check box in the upper-right corner of the window. In this case, the total number of all alerts will be displayed.

Viewing the working condition of modules and components of the application

If modules or components of the application encounter errors that the administrator is advised to look at, a yellow warning box is displayed in the upper part of the **Dashboard** section of the application web interface.

Users with the **Local administrator**, **Administrator**, or **Security auditor** roles can gain access to information about the working condition of the Central Node, PCN, or SCN server that the user is currently managing.

Users with the **Senior security officer**, **Security officer**, or **Security auditor** roles can gain access to the following information about the working condition:

- If you are using a standalone Central Node server, the user can access information about the working condition of the Central Node server which the user is currently managing.
- If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, and the user is managing an SCN server, the user can gain access to information about the working condition of that SCN server for tenants to whose data the user has access.
- If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, and the user is managing the PCN server, the user can gain access to information about the working condition of the PCN server and all SCN servers connected to that server, for tenants to whose data the user has access.

For details about the working condition of application modules and components,

click **View details** to open the **System health** window.

In the **System health** window, one of the following icons is displayed depending on the working condition of the application modules and components:

- OK if the modules and components of the application are working normally.
- An icon with the number of problems (for example, 1) if problems are found that the administrator is recommended to pay attention to. In this case, detailed problem information is displayed in the right part of the **System health** window.

The **System health** window contains the following sections:

- **Component health** contains information on the operational status of application modules and components, quarantine, and database update on all servers where the application is running.

  Example:
  If the databases of one or more application components have not been updated in 24 hours, the ! icon is displayed next to the name of the server on which the application modules and components are installed.
  To resolve the problem, make sure that update servers are accessible. If you are using a proxy server to connect to update servers, make sure the proxy server has no errors pertaining to the connection to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform servers.

- **Processed**—Status of receiving and processing incoming data. The status is generated based on the following criteria:
  - State of receiving data from servers with the Sensor component, from the server or virtual machine with the mail sensor, from hosts with the Endpoint Agent component.
  - Information about exceeding the maximum allowed time that objects wait in the queue to be scanned by application modules and components.
- **Connection with servers**—Status of the connection between the PCN server and connected SCN servers (displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode).

If problems are detected with the performance of application modules or components and you cannot resolve those problems on your own, please contact Kaspersky Technical Support.

Viewing the alert table

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform processes data from the following sources:

- Mirrored traffic on the corporate LAN (HTTP, FTP, and DNS protocols).
- HTTP and FTP traffic, as well as HTTPS traffic if the administrator has configured SSL certificate replacement on the proxy server.
- Copies of email messages received via the POP3 or SMTP protocol, as well as copies of email messages received from Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway or Kaspersky Security for Linux Mail Server if they are being used in your organization.
- Information on running processes, active network connections, and modified files, which is received from individual computers belonging to the corporate IT infrastructure.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform uses a table of alerts to display the detected signs of targeted attacks and intrusions into the corporate IT infrastructure.

The table of alerts does not display information on objects which satisfy at least one of the following conditions:

- The object has reputation *Trusted* in the KSN database.
- The object is digitally signed by a trusted vendor:
  - Kaspersky.
  - Google.
  - Apple.
  - Microsoft.

Information about these alerts is saved in the application database (on the Central Node or SCN).

Information about alerts in the database is rotated every night when the maximum allowed number of alerts is reached:

- Alerts generated by the **(IDS) Intrusion Detection System** and **(URL) URL Reputation** components have a maximum of 100,000 alerts for each component.
- All other alerts have a maximum of 20,000 alerts for each module or component.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, rotation is performed on all SCNs and then synchronization with the PCN is performed. After synchronization, all deleted alerts are automatically deleted from the PCN.

The alerts table is in the **Alerts** section.

By default, this section displays information only on alerts that were not processed by users. To also display information on processed alerts, turn on the **Processed** switch in the upper-right corner of the window.

You can sort alerts in the table by **Created** or **Updated**, **Importance**, **Source**, and **State** columns.

The table of alerts contains the following information:

1. **VIP** specifies if the alert has a status with special access rights. For example, alerts with the VIP status cannot be viewed by program users with the **Security officer** role.
2. **Created** is the time when the program generated the alert, and **Updated** is the time when the alert was updated.
3. —Alert importance for the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user depending on the impact this alert may have on computer or corporate LAN security based on Kaspersky experience.

   Alerts can have one of the following importance levels:

   - **High**, marked with the symbol—the alert has a high level of importance.
   - **Medium**, marked with the symbol—the alert has a medium level of importance.
   - **Low**, marked with the symbol—the alert has a low level of importance.
4. **Detected**—One or multiple categories of detected objects. For example, when the application detects a file infected with the Trojan-Downloader.JS.Cryptoload.ad virus, the **Detected** field shows the Trojan-Downloader.JS.Cryptoload.ad category for this alert.
5. **Details**—Brief summary of the alert. For example: the name of a detected file or URL address of a malicious link.
6. **Source**—Address of the source of the detected object. For example, this can be the email address from which a malicious file was sent, or the URL from which a malicious file was downloaded.
7. **Destination**—Destination address of a detected object. For example, this can be the email address of your organization's mail domain to which a malicious file was sent, or the IP address of a computer on your corporate LAN to which a malicious file was downloaded.
8. **Technologies** are names of application modules or components that generated the alert.

The **Technologies** column may indicate the following application modules and components:

- **(YARA) YARA**.
- **(SB) Sandbox**.
- **(URL) URL Reputation**.
- **(IDS) Intrusion Detection System**.
- **(AM) Anti-Malware Engine**.
- **(TAA) Targeted Attack Analyzer**.
- **(IOC) IOC**.

9. **State**—Alert status depending on whether or not this alert has been processed by the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user.

   Alerts can have one of the following states:

   - **New** for new alerts.
   - **In process** for alerts that are already being processed by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user.
   - **Rescan** for alerts resulting from a rescan of an object.
   - **Assigned to** is the name of the user to which the alert is assigned.

- **Servers** is the list of names of servers which created the alert. Servers belong to the tenant that you are managing in the application web interface. This column is displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.

If information in table columns is displayed as a link, you can click the link to open a list in which you can select the action to perform on the object. Depending on the type of value of the cell, you can perform one of the following actions:

- Any type of cell value:
  - **Filter by this value**.
  - **Exclude from filter**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.
- MD5 hash:
  - **Filter by this value**.
  - **Exclude from filter**.
  - Find events.
  - **Find on TIP**.

    - Create prevention rule.
    - **Copy value to clipboard**.
- SHA256 hash:
    - **Filter by this value**.
    - **Exclude from filter**.
    - Find events.
    - **Find on TIP**.
    - Create prevention rule.
    - **Copy value to clipboard**.
- Destination IP address
    - **Find events**.
- Alert state:
    - **Assign to me**.
    - **Close alert**.

The **Intrusion Detection System** module consolidates information about processed network events in one alert when the following conditions are simultaneously met:

- The name of the triggered rule, version of application databases, and source all match for network events.
- No more than 24 hours elapsed between the events.

One alert is displayed for all network events that meet these conditions. The alert notification contains information only about the first network event.

Configuring the alert table display

You can show or hide columns and change the order of columns in the alert table.

To configure the alert table display:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. In the heading part of the table, click .

   This opens the **Customize table** window.

3. If you want to show a column in the table, select the check box next to the name of the parameter that you want displayed in the table.

If you want to hide a parameter in the table, clear the check box.

> At least one check box must be selected.

4. If you want to change the order of columns in the table, move the mouse cursor to the row with the relevant parameter, click and move the row to its new place.
5. If you want to restore default table display settings, click **Default**.
6. Click **Apply**.

The alert table display is configured.

Filtering, sorting, and searching alerts

You can filter alerts to be displayed in the table of alerts for one or several columns of the table, or search for alerts in certain table columns according to the search criteria you specify.

You can create, save, and remove filters, and start filtering and searching alerts based on the conditions specified in saved filters.

> If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you cannot save filters on the PCN.

Filters are saved for each user on the server on which they were created.

You can also sort alerts in the table by **Created** or **Updated**, **Importance**, **Source**, and **State** columns.

> By default, this section displays information only on alerts that were not processed by users. To also display information on processed alerts, turn on the **Processed** switch in the upper-right corner of the window.

Filtering alerts by VIP status

You can filter alerts and search for alerts in the alerts table based on the ☆ criterion, which indicates whether the alert has a status with special access rights. For example, alerts with the VIP status cannot be viewed by program users with the **Security officer** role.

To filter alerts by VIP status:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.
2. Click the heading of the **VIP** column to expand the list of filter settings.

3. Configure alert filtering settings:

   - If you want the table of alerts to display only alerts that have the VIP status, select **VIP**.
   - If you want the table of alerts to display all alerts, select **All**.

   If neither is selected, the table shows all alerts.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering and searching alerts by time

You can filter alerts and search the alert table by **Created** attribute, which is the time when the alert was created, as sell as by **Updated** attribute, which is the time when the alert was updated.

To filter or search alerts by time:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click the **Created** link to open the list of alert display periods.
3. Select one of the following alert display periods from the **Time** list:

   - **All** if you want the application to display all alerts in the table.
   - **Last hour** if you want the application to display alerts that occurred during the last hour in the table.
   - **Last day** if you want the application to display alerts that occurred during the last day in the table.
   - **Custom range** if you want the application to display alerts that occurred during the period you specify in the table.

4. If you have selected the **Custom range** event display range, do the following:

   a. In the calendar that opens, specify the start and end dates of the alert display period.

   b. Click **Apply**.

   The calendar closes.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering alerts by level of importance

You can filter events detected by the program as well as search the table of events for specific events based on the **Importance** criterion, which indicates the alert importance for the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user depending on the impact this alert may have on computer or corporate LAN security based on Kaspersky experience.

To filter alerts by importance:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click ≣ to expand the filter settings list.

3. Select one or several of the following alert importance levels:

   - **Low**—Alert has a low level of importance.
   - **Medium**—Alert has a medium level of importance.
   - **High**—Alert has a high level of importance.

   If no value is selected, the table shows alerts of all importance levels.

4. Click **Apply**.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering and searching alerts by categories of objects detected

You can filter alerts and search the alerts table for specific alerts based on the **Detected** criterion, which indicates one or multiple categories of the object detected in the event. For example, if you want the table to display alerts about files infected by a specific virus, you can set a filter based on the name of this virus.

To filter or search alerts by category of the detected object:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click the **Detected** link to open the filter configuration window.

3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following alert filtering operators:

   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**

4. In the entry field, type the name of a category (for example, Trojan) or several characters from the name of a category.

5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.

6. Click **Apply**.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering and searching alerts by obtained information

You can filter alerts and search the alerts table for specific alerts based on the **Details** criterion, which refers to brief information about the alert. For example: the name of a detected file or URL address of a malicious link.

To filter or search alerts by obtained information:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click the **Details** link to open the filter configuration window.

3. In the drop-down list on the left, select one of the following search criteria:

   - **Details**. The search will encompass all data on the detected object
   - **ID**
   - **File name**
   - **File type**
   - **MD5**
   - **SHA256**
   - **URL**
   - **Domain**
   - **User Agent**
   - **Subject**
   - **HTTP status**
   - **Object source**
   - **Object type**
   - **Autosend to Sandbox**
   - **TAA (IOA) rule**

4. In the drop-down list on the right, select one of the following alert filtering operators:

   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**

- **Equal to**
- **Not equal to**

5. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of alert information.
6. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
7. Click **Apply**.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering and searching alerts by source address

You can filter alerts and search the alerts table for specific alerts based on the **Source** criterion, which indicates the alert source address. For example, this can be the email address from which a malicious file was sent, or the IP address of the computer on your corporate LAN to which a malicious file was downloaded.

To filter or search alerts by source address:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.
2. Click the **Source** link to open the filter configuration window.
3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following alert filtering operators:
   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**
   - **Matches**
   - **Not matches**
4. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the alert source address.
5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
6. Click **Apply**.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering and searching alerts by destination address

You can filter alerts and search the alerts table for specific alerts based on the **Destination** criterion, which indicates the alert destination address. For example, this can be the email address of your organization's mail domain to which a malicious file was sent, or the IP address of a computer on your corporate LAN to which a malicious file was downloaded.

To filter or search alerts by destination address:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.
   This opens the table of alerts.
2. Click the **Destination** link to open the filter configuration window.
3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following alert filtering operators:
   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**
   - **Matches**
   - **Not matches**
4. In the text box, type one or more characters of the destination address of the detected objects.
5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
6. Click **Apply**.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering and searching alerts by server name

You can filter alerts and search for alerts in the alerts table based on the **Servers** criterion, which indicates the name of servers that created the alert.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, servers belong to the tenant that you are managing in the application web interface. Filtering is available only on the PCN.

To filter or search alerts by server name:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.
   This opens the table of alerts.
2. Click **Servers** to expand the list of servers which created alerts.
3. Select check boxes next to one or multiple server names.
4. Click **Apply**.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering and searching alerts by technology name

You can filter alerts and search the alerts table for specific alerts based on the **Technologies** criterion, which indicates the names of program modules or components that generated the alert.

To filter alerts by technology name:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click the **Technologies** link to open the filter configuration window.

3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following alert filtering operators:

   - **Contain** if you want the application to display alerts generated by an application module or component that you specify.
   - **Not contain** if you want the application to hide alerts generated by an application module or component that you specify.
   - **Equal to** if you want the application to display alerts generated by an application module or component that you specify.
   - **Not equal to** if you want the application to hide alerts generated by an application module or component that you specify.

4. In the drop-down list to the right of the alert filtering operator that you have selected, select the name of the technology which you want to filter alerts:

   - **(YARA) YARA**.
   - **(SB) Sandbox**.
   - **(URL) URL Reputation**.
   - **(IDS) Intrusion Detection System**.
   - **(AM) Anti-Malware Engine**.
   - **(TAA) Targeted Attack Analyzer**.
   - **(IOC) IOC**.

   For example, if you want the application to display alerts generated by the Sandbox component, select the **Contain** filtering operator and the name of the **(SB) Sandbox** component.

5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.

6. Click **Apply**.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering and searching alerts by the status of their processing by the user

You can filter alerts and search for them in the table of alerts based on the **State** criterion—alert status depending on whether or not this alert has been processed by the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user.

To filter or search alerts by the status of their processing by the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. To include processed alerts in the filter, turn on the **Processed** switch in the upper right corner of the window.

3. Click the **State** link to open a list of possible alert options depending on the status of their processing by the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user.

4. Select one of the following values:

   - **New** if you want the application to display new alerts that are not being processed by any user yet.
   - **In process** if you want the application to display alerts that a user of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is already processing.
   - **Rescan** if you want the application to display alerts that resulted from a rescan.

5. In the **User name** field, specify a user name if you want to find alerts that have been assigned to a specific user with the **Senior security officer** or **Security officer** role.

6. Click **Apply**.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Sorting alerts in the table

You can sort alerts in the table by **Created** or **Updated**, **Importance**, **Source**, and **State** columns.

To sort alerts in the alert table:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. If you want to sort the alerts by date, click one of the icons to the right of the **Created** (if the table is displaying alert creation dates) or **Updated** (if the table is displaying alert update dates) column header:

   - ↑ to display newer alerts at the top of the table.
   - ↓ to display older alerts at the top of the table.

3. If you want to sort the alerts by the level of importance, to the right of the icon, click one of the following icons:

   - to display high importance alerts at the top of the table.
   - to display low importance alerts at the top of the table.

4. If you want to sort alerts by the address of the source of the detected object, click one of the icons to the right of the **Source** column header:

   - to sort alphabetically, A–Z.
   - to sort alphabetically, Z–A.

5. If you want to sort alerts by the state of processing by the user, click one of the icons to the right of the **State** column header:

   - to sort alerts in order of processing **New** - **Rescan** - **In process** - **Closed**.
   - to sort alerts in order of processing **Closed** - **In process** - **Rescan** - **New**.

Quickly creating an alert filter

To quickly create an alert filter:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Do the following to quickly add filter conditions to the filter being created:

   a. Position the mouse cursor on the link containing the table column value that you want to add as a filter condition.

   b. Left-click it.

   This opens a list of actions to perform on the value.

   c. In the list that opens, select one of the following actions:

   - **Filter by this value**, if you want to include this value in the filter condition.
   - **Exclude from filter**, if you want to exclude the value from the filter condition.

3. If you want to add several filter conditions to the filter being created, perform the actions to quickly add each filter condition to the filter being created.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Clearing an alert filter

To clear the alert filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click to the right of the header of the alerts table column for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Recommendations for processing alerts

Information about alerts made by AM (Anti-Malware Engine), SB (Sandbox), YARA, IOC, and IDS (intrusion Detection System) technologies that is displayed in the right part of the window includes recommendations on processing these alerts.

To view information about an alert:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click the line containing the alert whose information you want to view.

This opens a window containing information about the alert.

Recommendations for processing AM alerts

In the right part of the window, the **Recommendations** section displays recommendations that you can follow, as well as the number of alerts or events that have attributes in common with the alert you are working on.

You can follow the following recommendations:

- Under **Qualifying**, expand the **Find similar alerts** list.

  A list of attributes is displayed that can be used to find similar alerts, and the number of similar alerts for each attribute.

Select one of the following attributes:

- **By MD5**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the MD5 hash. The MD5 hash of the file from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.
- **By SHA256**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the SHA256 hash. The SHA256 hash of the file from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.
- **By host name**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Source** column. The host name from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.
- **By sender address**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Source** column. The sender address of the email message from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.
- **By recipient address**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Destination** column. The recipient address of the email message from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.
- **By URL**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the URL from the alert you are working on.

- Under **Qualifying**, select **Find similar events**. Click the link to display the **Threat Hunting** event table in a new browser tab. In the search criteria, the **Scan: detect processing result** event type is selected and a search filter is configured, for example, by **RemoteIP**, **MD5**, **SHA256**, **URI**. The filtering values are populated with the properties of the alert you are working on. For example, the MD5 hash of the file in the alert.

  The action is only available if you are using KEDR functionality and a KEDR license key has been added.

- Under **Investigation**, select **Find similar events**. Click the link to display the **Threat Hunting** event table in a new browser tab. In the search criteria, a search filter is configured, for example, by **RemoteIP**, **MD5**, **SHA256**, **URI**. The filtering values are populated with the properties of the alert you are working on. For example, the MD5 hash of the file in the alert.

  The action is only available if you are using KEDR functionality and a KEDR license key has been added.

Recommendations for processing TAA alerts

In the right part of the window, the **Recommendations** section displays recommendations that you can follow, as well as the number of alerts or events that have attributes in common with the alert you are working on.

You can follow the following recommendations:

- Under **Qualifying**, expand the **Find similar alerts** list.

  A list of attributes is displayed that can be used to find similar alerts, and the number of similar alerts for each attribute.

Select one of the following attributes:

- **By rule name (TAA alerts)**. Clicking the link opens the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab; the alerts are filtered by **Detected** and **Technologies** columns, that is, the name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert, and the name of the **(TAA) Targeted Attack Analyzer** technology.

- **By rule name (SB alerts)**. Clicking the link opens the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab; the alerts are filtered by **Detected** and **Technologies** columns, that is, the name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert, and the name of the **(SB) Sandbox** technology.

- Under **Investigation**, select **Find similar events**. Click the link to display the **Threat Hunting** event table in a new browser tab. In the search criteria, a search filter is configured, for example, by **RemoteIP**, **MD5**, **SHA256**, **URI**. The filtering values are populated with the properties of the alert you are working on. For example, the MD5 hash of the file in the alert.

  The action is only available if you are using KEDR functionality and a KEDR license key has been added.

Recommendations for processing SB alerts

In the right part of the window, the **Recommendations** section displays recommendations that you can follow, as well as the number of alerts or events that have attributes in common with the alert you are working on.

You can follow the following recommendations:

- Under **Qualifying**, expand the **Find similar alerts** list.

  A list of attributes is displayed that can be used to find similar alerts, and the number of similar alerts for each attribute.

  Select one of the following attributes:

  - **By MD5**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the MD5 hash. The MD5 hash of the file from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

  - **By SHA256**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the SHA256 hash. The SHA256 hash of the file from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

  - **By host name**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Source** column. The host name from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

  - **By sender address**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Source** column. The sender address of the email message from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

  - **By recipient address**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Destination** column. The recipient address of the email message from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

- **By URL**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the URL from the alert you are working on.

- **By URL from Sandbox**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, that is, the URL address from the alert you are working on, as well as all URLs that were found to be relevant by the Sandbox component as the alert was processed.

- Under **Qualifying**, select **Find similar EPP events**. Click the link to display the **Threat Hunting** event table in a new browser tab. In the search criteria, the **Scan: detect processing result** event type is selected and a search filter is configured, for example, by **RemoteIP**, **MD5**, **SHA256**, **URI**. The filtering values are populated with the properties of the alert you are working on. For example, the MD5 hash of the file in the alert.

  The action is only available if you are using KEDR functionality and a KEDR license key has been added.

- Under **Investigation**, select **Find similar events**. Click the link to display the **Threat Hunting** event table in a new browser tab. In the search criteria, a search filter is configured, for example, by **RemoteIP**, **MD5**, **SHA256**, **URI**. The filtering values are populated with the properties of the alert you are working on. For example, the MD5 hash of the file in the alert.

  The action is only available if you are using KEDR functionality and a KEDR license key has been added.

Recommendations for processing IOC alerts

In the right part of the window, the **Recommendations** section displays recommendations that you can follow, as well as the number of alerts that have attributes in common with the alert you are working on.

You can follow the following recommendations:

- Under **Qualifying**, select **Find similar alerts by host name**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Source** column. The host name from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

- Under **Qualifying**, select **Find similar alerts by IOC**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Detected** column, the name of the IOC file from the alert you are working on.

- In the **Quick response** section, select **Isolate <host name>**. This opens the network isolation rule creation window.

To create a host isolation rule, enter the following settings:

1. In the **Disable isolation after** field, enter the time in hours (1 to 9,999) during which network isolation of the host will be active.
2. In the **Exclusions for the host isolation rule** settings group, in the **Traffic direction** list, select the direction of network traffic that must not be blocked:
   - **Incoming/Outgoing**.
   - **Incoming**.
   - **Outgoing**.
3. In the **IP** field, enter the IP address whose network traffic must not be blocked.

   If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in the role of the Endpoint Agent component, you can use a proxy server for the connection of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. When you add this proxy server to exclusions, network resources that can be accessed through the proxy server are also added to exclusions. If network resources that are accessed through the proxy server are added to exclusions, but the proxy server itself is not, such exclusions do not work.
4. If you selected **Incoming** or **Outgoing**, in the **Ports** field, enter the connection ports.
5. If you want to add more than one exclusion, click **Add** and repeat the steps to fill in the **Traffic direction**, **IP** and **Ports** fields.
6. Click **Save**.

Recommendations for processing YARA alerts

In the right part of the window, the **Recommendations** section displays recommendations that you can follow, as well as the number of alerts or events that have attributes in common with the alert you are working on.

You can follow the following recommendations:

- Under **Qualifying**, expand the **Find similar alerts** list.

  A list of attributes is displayed that can be used to find similar alerts, and the number of similar alerts for each attribute.

  Select one of the following attributes:

  - **By MD5**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the MD5 hash. The MD5 hash of the file from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.
  - **By SHA256**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the SHA256 hash. The SHA256 hash of the file from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.
  - **By host name**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Source** column. The host name from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

- **By sender address**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Source** column. The sender address of the email message from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

- **By recipient address**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Destination** column. The recipient address of the email message from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

- **By URL**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the URL from the alert you are working on.

- Under **Qualifying**, select **Find similar alerts by host name**. Click the link to display the **Threat Hunting** event table in a new browser tab. In the search criteria, the **Scan: detect processing result** event type is selected and a search filter is configured, for example, by **RemoteIP**, **MD5**, **SHA256**, **URI**. The filtering values are populated with the properties of the alert you are working on. For example, the MD5 hash of the file in the alert.

  The action is only available if you are using KEDR functionality and a KEDR license key has been added.

- Under **Investigation**, select **Find similar events**. Click the link to display the **Threat Hunting** event table in a new browser tab. In the search criteria, a search filter is configured, for example, by **RemoteIP**, **MD5**, **SHA256**, **URI**. The filtering values are populated with the properties of the alert you are working on. For example, the MD5 hash of the file in the alert.

  The action is only available if you are using KEDR functionality and a KEDR license key has been added.

- In the **Quick response** section, select **Isolate <host name>**. This opens the network isolation rule creation window.

Recommendations for processing IDS alerts

In the right part of the window, the **Recommendations** section displays recommendations that you can follow, as well as the number of alerts or events that have attributes in common with the alert you are working on.

You can follow the following recommendations:

- Under **Qualifying**, select **Find similar alerts by host name**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Source** column. The host name or IP address from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

- Under **Qualifying**, select **Find similar alerts by URL**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the URL. The URL from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

- Under **Qualifying**, select **Add to exclusions**.

  This opens the **Add IDS rule to exclusions** window. If you want to add an IDS rule that was used to create the alert to exclusions, enter a comment in the **Description** field and click **Add**.

  The IDS rule is added to exclusions and is displayed in the exclusion list in the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection on the **IDS exclusions** tab in the application web interface.

- Under **Investigation**, select **Find similar events by URL**. Click the link to display the **Threat Hunting** event table in a new browser tab. In the search criteria, the search filter is configured to use the **URI** from the alert you are working on.

- Under **Investigation**, select **Find similar events by host name**. Click the link to display the **Threat Hunting** event table in a new browser tab. In the search criteria, the search filter is configured to use the **RemoteIP** from the alert you are working on.

- In the **Investigation** section, click **Download IDS artifact** to download the file with alert data.

- In the **Investigation** section, click **Download PCAP file** to download the file with intercepted traffic data.

Viewing alerts

The web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform displays the following types of alerts that the user should keep track of:

- A file has been downloaded or an attempt was made to download a file to a corporate LAN computer. The application detected this file in mirrored traffic on the organization's local network or in ICAP data of HTTP and FTP traffic, as well as HTTPS traffic if the administrator has configured SSL certificate replacement on the proxy server.

- A file has been sent to the email address of a user on the corporate LAN. The application detected this file in copies of email messages received via the POP3 or SMTP protocol, or received from the virtual machine or server with Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway if it is being used in your organization.

- A website link was opened on a corporate LAN computer. The application detected this website link in mirrored traffic on the organization's local network or in ICAP data of HTTP and FTP traffic, as well as HTTPS traffic if the administrator has configured SSL certificate replacement on the proxy server.

- Network activity has occurred in which the IP address or domain name of a corporate LAN computer was detected. The application detected this network activity in mirrored traffic on the organization's local network.

- Processes have been started on a corporate LAN computer. The application detected the processes using the Endpoint Agent component installed on computers belonging to the corporate IT infrastructure.

If a file was detected, the following information may be displayed in the program web interface depending on which program modules or components generated the alert:

- General information about the alert and the detected file (for example, the IP address of the computer on which the file was detected, and the name of the detected file).

- Results of the virus scan of the file performed by AM Engine.

- Results of scanning the file for signs of intrusion into the corporate IT infrastructure, performed by the YARA module.

- Results of the file behavior analysis performed by the Sandbox component.

- Results of analysis of APK executable files in the cloud infrastructure using machine learning technology.

If a website link was detected, the following information may be displayed in the program web interface depending on which program modules or components generated the alert:

- General information about the alert and the detected website link (for example, the IP address of the computer on which the website link was detected, and the address of the website link).
- Results of the link scan performed by the URL Reputation module for detecting of signs of malware, phishing URL addresses and URL addresses previously used by hackers for targeted attacks on the corporate IT infrastructure.

If the program detects network activity of the IP address or domain name of a computer on a corporate LAN, the program web interface may display the following information:

- General information about the alert and the detected network activity.
- Results of web traffic scanning for signs of intrusion into the corporate IT infrastructure according to preset rules, performed by the Intrusion Detection System module (IDS).
- Results of network activity scanning performed using Kaspersky TAA (IOA) rules.
- Results of network activity scanning performed using TAA (IOA), IDS, IOC user rules.

If the program detects processes running on a corporate LAN computer where the Endpoint Agent component is installed, the program web interface can display the following information:

- General information about the alert and processes running on the computer.
- Results of network activity scanning performed for the computer using Kaspersky TAA (IOA) rules.
- Results of network activity scanning performed for the computer using TAA (IOA), IOC user rules.

Viewing alert details

To view alert details:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click the line containing the alert whose information you want to view.

   This opens a window containing information about the alert.

General information about an alert of any type

Regardless of the technology that was used to create the alert, the header of the window containing the alert information displays the alert ID. The ☆ or ★ icon will be displayed next to the status depending on whether the alert has VIP status.

The upper part of the window containing alert information may display the following general information about the alert:

- **State**—Alert status depending on whether or not this alert has been processed by the user of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
- **Importance**—Alert importance for the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user depending on the impact this alert may have on computer or corporate LAN security based on Kaspersky experience.
- **Server** is the name of the server where the alert was generated. Servers belong to the organization you are managing in the application web interface.
- **Host**—Domain name of the computer where the alert occurred.
- **Data source**—Source of the data. For example, SMTP Sensor or SPAN Sensor.
- **Time created**—Time when the alert was generated.
- **Time updated**—Time when information about the alert was updated.

Information in the Object information section

The **Object information** section can display the following event information about the detected object:

- File name.

  To expand the **Copy value to clipboard** action, click the link with the file name.

- File type. For example: ExecutableWin32.

  The **Find on TIP** button allows to find a file on the Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal.

  Click **Create prevention rule** to prevent the file from running.

  Click **Download** to download the file to your computer's hard drive.

  The file is downloaded in the form of a ZIP archive encrypted with the password "infected". The name of the file inside the archive is replaced by the file's MD5 hash. The file extension of file inside the archive is not displayed.

- File size in kilobytes.
- **MD5**—MD5 hash of a file.

  Clicking the link with **MD5** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

  - **Find on TIP**.
  - **Find events**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - **Create prevention rule**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.

- **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of a file.

Clicking the **SHA256** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find on TIP**.
- **Find on virustotal.com**.
- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

- **Sender email**—Email address from which the message containing the file was sent.
- **Recipient email**—One or more email addresses to which the message containing the file was sent.
- **Original sender email**—Source email address from which the message containing the file was sent.
  This field is populated with data from the 'Received' header.
- **Original recipient email**—Source email address(es) to which the message containing the file was sent.
  This field is populated with data from the 'Received' header.
- **Subject**—Message subject.
- **Sender server IP** —IP address of the first mail server in the message delivery chain.
  Clicking the **Sender server IP** link with opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:
  - **Find events**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.
- **Headers**—Extended set of email message headers. For example, it can contain information about email addresses of the message sender and recipients, about mail servers that relayed the message, and the type of content in the email message.

Information in the Alert information section

The **Alert details** section can display the following information about an alert:

- , or —Alert importance for the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user depending on the impact this alert may have on computer or corporate LAN security based on Kaspersky experience.
- **Time**—Time when the program generated the alert.
- **Detected**—One or multiple categories of detected objects. For example, when the application detects a file infected with the Trojan-Downloader.JS.Cryptoload.ad virus, the **Detected** field shows the Trojan-Downloader.JS.Cryptoload.ad category for this alert.
- **Method**—HTTP request method. For example, Get, Post, or Connect.

- **URL**—Detected URL. It may also contain a response code.

  Clicking the link with **URL** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

  - **Find on TIP by URL**.
  - **Find on TIP by domain name**.
  - **Find events**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.

- **Referrer**—URL from which the user was redirected to the website link requiring attention. In the HTTP protocol, it is one of the headers in the client's request containing the request source URL.

- **Destination IP**—IP address of the resource requested by the user or the application.

  Clicking the link with **Destination IP** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

  - **Find on TIP**.
  - **Find events**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.

- **User name**—Name of the user account whose actions led to the event.

- **Request/Response**—Length of the request and response.

Information in the Scan results section

The **Scan results** section can display the following results of alert scanning:

- The names of the application modules or components that generated the alert.

- One or multiple categories of the detected object. For example, the name of the virus can be shown: Virus.Win32.Chiton.i.

- Versions of databases of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform modules and components that generated the alert.

- Results of alert scanning by application modules and components:

  - **YARA**—Results of streaming scans of files and objects received at the Central Node, or results of scanning hosts with the Endpoint Agent component. Possible values:

    - Category of the detected file in YARA rules (for example, category name susp_fake_Microsoft_signer can be displayed).

      Displayed for streaming scans.

      Click **Create prevention rule** to prevent the file from running.

The **Find on TIP** button allows to find a file on the Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal.

- Path to the file and/or name of the memory dump.

  Displayed when scanning hosts with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component.

  Clicking the link with the file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

  - Find events.
  - Find alerts.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.

You can click **Create task** to create the following tasks:

- **Get data** → File, Disk image, Memory dump
- Delete file
- Quarantine file

Click **Create prevention rule** to prevent the file from running.

The **Find on TIP** button allows to find a file on the Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal.

You can click **View in quarantine** to display quarantined object details.

- **SB** (Sandbox)—Results of the file behavior analysis performed by the Sandbox component.

  You can click **Sandbox detect** to open a window with detailed information about the results of file behavior analysis.

  The **Find on TIP** button allows to find a file on the Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal.

  Click **Create prevention rule** to prevent the file from running.

  You can download a detailed log of file behavior analysis in all operating systems by clicking **Download debug info**.

  The file is downloaded in the form of a ZIP archive encrypted with the password "infected". The name of the scanned file inside the archive is replaced by the file's MD5 hash. The file extension of file inside the archive is not displayed.

  > By default, the maximum hard drive space for storing file behavior scan logs is 300 GB in all operating systems. Upon reaching this limit, the application deletes the oldest file behavior scan logs and replaces them with new logs.

- **URL** (URL Reputation) is the category of a malicious, phishing URL or an URL that has been previously used by attackers for targeted attacks on corporate IT infrastructures.
- **IDS** (Intrusion Detection System) is the category of the detected object based on the Intrusion Detection System database or the name of the IDS user rule that was used to create the alert. For example, the displayed category can be Trojan-Clicker.Win32.Cycler.a.

  Click the link to display the category of the object in the Kaspersky Threats database.

- **AM** (Anti-Malware Engine)—Category of the detected object based on the anti-virus database. For example, the name of the virus can be shown: Virus.Win32.Chiton.i.

  Click the link to display the category of the object in the Kaspersky Threats database.

  The **Find on TIP** button allows to find a file on the Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal.

Click **Create prevention rule** to prevent the file from running.

Click **Download** to download the file to your computer's hard drive.

- **TAA** (Targeted Attack Analyzer)—Information about the results of file analysis using the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology: name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert.

  Click the link to display information about the TAA (IOA) rule. If the rule was provided by Kaspersky experts, it contains information about the triggered MITRE technique as well as recommendations for reacting to the event.

- **IOC**—Name of the IOC file used to create the alert.

  Select an IOC file to open a window with the results of the IOC scan.

  Click **All alert-related events** to display the **Threat Hunting** event table in a new browser tab. A search filter is configured in the search criteria, for example, by **MD5**, **FileFullName**. The filtering values are populated with the properties of the alert you are working on. For example, the MD5 hash of the file in the alert.

Information in the IDS rule section

The **IDS rule** section displays information about the alert made by the IDS (Intrusion Detection System) technology as a hex-editor matrix.

The *hex-editor* or hexadecimal editor is an application for editing data where data is represented as a sequence of bytes.

The upper part of the matrix displays the length of the IDS rule.

The left part of the matrix displays the data of the rule in text format.

The **Rule details** subsection of the **IDS rule** section displays the header of the IDS rule and data of the IDS alert in the Suricata format. For example, it can display information about the direction of the traffic (`flow`), the HTTP request method (`http_method`), the HTTP header (`http_header`), the security ID (`sid`).

Information in the Network event section

The **Network event** section can show the following information about the link to the website opened on the computer:

- **Date** and **Time**—Date and time of the network event.
- **Method**—Type of HTTP request, for example, GET or POST.
- **Source IP**—IP address of the computer on which the website link was opened.
- **Destination IP**—IP address of the computer on which the website link was opened.
- **URL**—Type of the HTTP request, for example, GET or POST, and the URL of the website.

  Clicking the link with the URL opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

  - **Find on TIP by URL**.
  - **Find on TIP by domain name**.

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

- **User Agent**—Information about the browser that was used to download the file or to attempt to download the file, or to open the website link. It is the text string included in the HTTP request, which normally contains the name and version of the browser as well as the name and version of the operating system installed on the user's computer.

Scan results in Sandbox

The object scan results window in Sandbox can display the following alert details:

- **File**—Full name and path of the scanned file.
- **File size**—Size of the file.
- **MD5**—MD5 hash of a file.

  Clicking the link with **MD5** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

  - **Find on TIP**.
  - **Find events**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - **Create prevention rule**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.

- **Detected**—One or multiple categories of detected objects. For example, when the application detects a file infected with the Trojan-Downloader.JS.Cryptoload.ad virus, the **Detected** field shows the Trojan-Downloader.JS.Cryptoload.ad category for this alert.
- **Time processed**—Time when the file was scanned.
- **Database versions**—Versions of the databases of modules and components of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform that generated the alert.

You can click **New prevention rule** in the upper right corner of the window to prevent the file from running.

Information about the file behavior analysis results is provided for each operating system in which the Sandbox component performed a scan. For the Windows 7 operating system (64-bit), you can view file activity logs for two Sandbox component scan modes: **Quick scan mode** and **Full logging mode**.

The following activity logs may be available for each scan mode:

- **Activity list**—Actions of the file within the operating system.
- **Activity tree**—Graphical representation of the file analysis process.

- **HTTP activity log**—Log of the file's HTTP activity. It contains the following information:
  - **Destination IP**—IP address to which the file is attempting to go from the operating system.
  - **Method**—HTTP request method, for example, GET or POST.
  - **URL**—URL of the website link that the file is attempting to open from the operating system.

  Clicking links in the **Destination IP** column opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:
  - **Find on TIP**.
  - **Find events**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.

  Clicking a link in the **URL** column opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:
  - **Find on TIP by URL**.
  - **Find on TIP by domain name**.
  - **Find events**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.
- **IDS activity log**—Log of the file's network activity. It contains the following information:
  - **Source IP**—IP address of the host on which the file is saved.
  - **Destination IP**—IP address to which the file is attempting to go from the operating system.
  - **Method**—HTTP request method, for example, GET or POST.
  - **URL**—URL of the website link that the file is attempting to open from the operating system.

  Clicking links in the **Destination IP** column opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:
  - **Find on TIP**.
  - **Find events**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.

  Clicking a link in the **URL** column opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:
  - **Find on TIP by URL**.
  - **Find on TIP by domain name**.

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

- **DNS activity log** —Log of the file's DNS activity. It contains the following information:
  - Request type (Request or Response).
  - **DNS name** —Domain name of the server.
  - **Type** —Type of DNS request, for example A or CNAME.
  - **Host**—Host name or IP address that was interacted with.

  Clicking a link in the **DNS name** or **Host** columns opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:
  - **Find on TIP**.
  - **Find events**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.

You can click **Download full log** in the lower part of each scanning mode (**Quick scan mode** and **Full logging mode**) to download the log of file behavior analysis in each operating system to your computer

IOC scan results

Depending on the type of processed object, the indicator of compromise search result window can display the following information:

- **ARP protocol**:
  - IP address from the ARP table.
  - Physical address from the ARP table.
- **DNS record**:
  - Type and name of the DNS record.
  - IP address of the protected computer.
- **Windows Log event**:
  - Entry ID in the event log.
  - Data source name in the log.
  - Log name.

- User account.
- Event time.

- **File**:
  - MD5 hash of the file.
  - SHA256 hash of the file.
  - Full name of the file (including path).
  - File size.
- **Port**:
  - Remote IP address with which a connection was established at the time of the scan.
  - Remote port with which a connection was established at the time of the scan.
  - IP address of the local adapter.
  - Port open on the local adapter.
  - Protocol as a number (in accordance with the IANA standard).
- **Process**:
  - Process name.
  - Process arguments.
  - Path to process file.
  - Windows ID (PID) of the process.
  - Windows ID (PID) of the parent process.
  - Name of the user account that started the process.
  - Date and time when the process started.
- **Service**:
  - Service name.
  - Service description.
  - Path and name of the DLL service (for svchost).
  - Path and name of the executable file of the service.
  - Windows ID (PID) of the service.
  - Service type (for example, kernel driver or adapter).

- Service status.
- Service run mode.

- **User**:
  - User account name.
- **Volume**:
  - Volume name.
  - Volume letter.
  - Volume type.
- **Registry**:
  - Windows registry value.
  - Registry hive value.
  - Path to registry key (without hive or value name).
  - Registry parameter.
- **Environment variables**:
  - Physical (MAC) address of the protected computer.
  - System (environment).
  - OS name with version.
  - Network name of the protected device.
  - Domain and group to which the protected computer belongs.

The **IOC** section displays the structure of the IOC file. If the processed object matches a condition of the IOC rule, that condition is highlighted. If the processed object matches multiple conditions, the text of the whole branch is highlighted.

Information in the Hosts section

The **Hosts** section displays the following information about hosts on which the TAA (IOA) rule was triggered:

- **Host name**—IP address or domain name of the computer where the event occurred. Clicking the link opens the **Threat Hunting** section with the search condition containing the ID of the selected rule and the selected host.
- **IP**—IP address of the computer where the event occurred.

> If you are using dynamic IP addresses, the field displays the IP address assigned to the computer at the moment when the alert was created or updated.

The application does not support IPv6. If you are using IPv6, the IP address of the computer is not displayed.

- **Number of events**—Number of events that occurred on the host.
- **Find events**. Clicking the link opens the **Threat Hunting** section with the search condition containing the ID of the selected rule.

Information in the Change log section

The **Change log** section can display the following alert information:

- Date and time of alert modification.
- Author of modifications.

  For example, **System** or the application user name.
- Modification that occurred with the alert.

  For example, an alert may be assigned to a VIP group, or it may be marked as processed.

Sending alert data

You can provide Kaspersky with data about an alert (except the URL Reputation and IOC technologies) for further analysis.

To do so, you must copy the alert data to the clipboard and then email it to Kaspersky.

Alert data may contain information about your organization that you consider to be confidential. You must consult with the security department of your organization for approval to send this data to Kaspersky for further analysis.

To copy alert details to the clipboard:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.
2. Click the line containing the alert whose information you want to view.

   This opens a window containing information about the alert.
3. Click the **Provide the alert details to Kaspersky** link in the lower part of the window containing alert information.

   This opens the **Details** window.
4. View the alert data to be sent to Kaspersky.

5. If you want to copy this data, click the **Copy to clipboard** button.

   The alert data will be copied to the clipboard. You will be able to send it to Kaspersky for further analysis.

User actions performed on alerts

When managing the application web interface using a **Senior security officer** or **Security officer** account, you can take the following actions on alerts:

- Assign an alert to yourself or to another user of the application web interface.

  You can view all alerts assigned to a specific user by filtering alerts based on the status of their processing by the user.

- Mark an alert as processed.

  You can view all alerts that have been processed by a specific user by filtering alerts based on the status of their processing by the user.

- Add a comment to an alert.

  You can find commented alerts based on keywords within comments by filtering alerts based on received information.

- Mark the alert as VIP.

  This action is available only to users with the **Senior security officer** role. Users with this role can view all alerts with the VIP status by filtering alerts by VIP status.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view information about alerts but cannot edit this information.

Assigning alerts to a specific user

Users with the **Senior security officer** and **Security officer** roles can assign an alert or multiple alerts to themselves or to another user of the application web interface with the **Senior security officer** and **Security officer** roles.

To assign an alert to yourself or to another user of the application web interface:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Select the check boxes next to the alert or alerts that you want to assign to yourself or to another user.

   You can select all alerts by selecting the check box in the table header.

3. In the panel that appears in the lower part of the window, click the arrow to the right of the **Assign to** button to expand the user list.

4. Select the user to whom you want to assign the alerts.

   This opens the action confirmation window. You can also leave a comment that will be displayed in the alert change history.

5. Click **Proceed**.

The alerts will be assigned to the selected user.

You can view all alerts assigned to a specific user by filtering alerts based on the status of their processing by the user.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot assign alerts to themselves or to other users of the application web interface. Users with the **Senior security officer** and **Security officer** roles also cannot assign alerts to users with the **Security auditor** role.

Marking the completion of single alert processing

To mark one alert assigned to you as processed in the alerts table:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. In the **State** column of the alert that you want to mark as processed, click on your user name.

3. In the action list, select **Close alert**.

The alert will be marked as processed.

To mark an alert as processed in the course of managing that alert:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Open the alert that you want to mark as processed.

   Expand the list of actions. In the upper right corner of the window, click the arrow to the right of the button showing the alert status.

   This opens the list of actions.

3. In the action list, select **Close alert**.

The alert will be marked as processed. If the alert was assigned to a different user, it will be marked as processed by you.

You can view all alerts that have been processed by a specific user by filtering alerts based on the status of their processing by the user.

If an alert based on TAA (IOA), IDS, or URL technology that is similar to a processed alert is received within the day (from 00:00 a.m. to 11:59 p.m.), the application will either create a new alert or update the information about an identical alert with the **New** or **In process** status.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot assign and process alerts.

Marking the completion of alerts processing

To mark one or multiple alerts as processed:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Select the check boxes opposite those alerts that you want to mark as processed.

   You can select all alerts by selecting the check box in the table header.

3. In the pane that appears in the lower part of the window, click the **Close alert** button.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

   You can also leave a comment that will be displayed in the alert change history.

4. Click **Proceed**.

   The selected alerts will be marked as processed. If the alerts were assigned to other users, they will be marked as processed by you.

You can view all processed alerts by filtering alerts based on the status of their processing by the user.

If an alert based on TAA (IOA), IDS, or URL technology that is similar to a processed alert is received within the day (from 00:00 a.m. to 11:59 p.m.), the application will either create a new alert or update the information about an identical alert with the **New** or **In process** status.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot assign and process alerts.

Modifying the status of VIP alerts

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can assign the VIP status to alerts or clear the VIP status of alerts.

To toggle the VIP status for alerts:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Select the check boxes for alerts for which you want to change the VIP status.

   You can select all alerts by selecting the check box in the table header.

3. Do one of the following:

   - If you want to mark alerts as VIP, click the **Mark as VIP** button in the pane that appears in the lower part of the window.
   - If you want to remove the VIP status from alerts, in the pane that appears in the lower part of the window, in the **Mark as VIP** drop-down list, select **Mark as non-VIP**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

   You can also leave a comment that will be displayed in the alert change history.

4. Click **Proceed**.

The VIP status of alerts is changed.

Users with the **Senior security officer** and **Security auditor** roles can view all events with the VIP status by filtering alerts by VIP status.

Adding a comment to an alert

Users with the **Senior security officer** and **Security officer** roles can add a comment to an alert.

To add a comment to an alert:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Select an alert for which you want to add a comment.

   This opens a window containing information about the alert.

3. In the comment field under the **Change log** section, enter a comment for the alert.

4. Click **Add**.

The comment will be added to the alert and will be displayed in the **Change log** section of this alert.

You can find commented alerts based on keywords within comments by filtering alerts based on received information.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view comments for alerts but cannot edit the comments.

Events database threat hunting

When managing the application web interface, you can generate search queries and use IOC files to search the events database for threats, for tenants to whose data you have access.

To form search queries through the events database, you can use *design mode* or *source code mode*.

In design mode, you can create and modify search queries using drop-down lists with options for the type of field value and operators.

In source code mode, you can create and modify search queries using text commands.

You can upload an IOC file and search for events based on conditions defined in this IOC file.

Users with the **Senior security officer**, **Security officer** roles can also create TAA (IOA) rules based on event search conditions.

Searching events in design mode

To define event search conditions in design mode:

1. Select the **Threat Hunting** section, **Builder** tab in the application web interface window.

   This opens the event search form.

2. In the drop-down list, select an event search criterion.

   You can view a description of the event search criteria in the Event search criteria section.

3. In the drop-down list, select an operator.

   For a list of available operators, see the Operators section.

   Each type of value of the field has its own relevant set of operators. For example, when the **EventType** field value type is selected, the **=** and **!=** operators will be available.

4. Depending on the selected type of field value, perform one of the following actions:

   - In the field, specify one or several characters by which you want to perform an event search.
   - In the drop-down list, select the field value option by which you want to perform an event search.

   For example, to search for a full match based on a user name, enter the user name.

5. If you want to add a new condition, use the **AND** or **OR** logical operator and repeat the necessary actions for adding a condition.

6. If you want to add a group of conditions, click the **Group** button and repeat the actions necessary for adding conditions.

7. If you want to delete a group of conditions, click the **Remove group** button.

8. If you want to search events that occurred during a specific period, in the **Any time** drop-down list select one of the following event search periods:

   - **Any time** if you want the table to display events found as far back as the records go.
   - **Last hour** if you want the table to display events that were found during the last hour.
   - **Last day** if you want the table to display events found during the last day.
   - **Custom range** if you want the table to display events found during the period you specify.

9. If you selected **Custom range**:

   a. In the calendar that opens, specify the start and end dates of the event display range.

   b. Click **Apply**.

   The calendar closes.

10. Click **Search**.

    The table of events that satisfy the search criteria is displayed.

    If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, found events are grouped in tiers: Server – Tenant names – Server names.

11. Click the name of the server for which you want to view events.

The host table of the selected server is displayed. Event grouping levels are displayed above the table.

Event search criteria

The following criteria can be used to search for events:

- **General details**:
  - Host is the host name.
  - HostIP is the IP address of the host.
  - EventType is the type of the event.
  - UserName is the name of the user.
  - OsFamily is the family of the operating system.
  - OsVersion is the version of the operating system being used on the host.
- **TAA properties**:
  - IOAId is the TAA (IOA) rule ID.
  - IOATag is the information about the results of file analysis using the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology: name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert.

- IOATechnique is the MITRE technique.
- IOATactics is the MITRE tactic.
- IOAImportance is the importance level that is assigned to an event generated using this TAA (IOA) rule.
- IOAConfidence is the level of confidence depending on the likelihood of false alarms caused by the rule.

- **File properties**:
  - CreationTime is the event creation time.
  - FileName is the name of the file.
  - FilePath is the path to the directory where the file is located.
  - FileFullName is the full path to the file. Includes the path to the directory and the file name.
  - ModificationTime is the file modification time.
  - FileSize is the size of the file.
  - MD5 is the MD5 hash of the file.
  - SHA256 is the SHA256 hash of the file.
  - SimilarDLLPath — Malicious DLL placed in a directory on the standard search path to make the operating system load it before the original DLL.
- **Linux processes**:
  - LogonRemoteHost is the IP address of the host that initiated remote access.
  - RealUserName is the name of the user assigned when the user was registered in the system.
  - EffectiveUserName is the user name that was used to log in to the system.
  - Environment is system environment variables.
  - ProcessType is the type of the process.
  - OperationResult is the result of the operation.
- **Process started**:
  - PID is the process ID.
  - ParentFileFullName is the path to the parent process file.
  - ParentMD5 is the MD5 hash of the parent process file.
  - ParentSHA256 is the SHA256 hash of the parent process file.

- StartupParameters is the options that the process was started with.
- ParentPID is the parent process ID.

- **Remote connection**:
  - HTTPMethod is the HTTP request method. For example, Get, Post, or Connect.
  - ConnectionDirection is the direction of the connection (inbound or outbound).
  - LocalIP is the IP address of the local computer from which the remote connection attempt was made.
  - LocalPort is the IP address of the local computer from which the remote connection attempt was made.
  - RemoteHostName is the name of the computer that was the target of the remote connection attempt.
  - RemoteIP is the IP address of the computer that was the target of the remote connection attempt.
  - RemotePort is the port of the computer that was the target of the remote connection attempt.
  - URI is the address of the resource to which the HTTP request was made.
- **Registry modified**:
  - RegistryKey is the registry key.
  - RegistryValueName is the name of the registry value.
  - RegistryValue is the data of the registry value.
  - RegistryOperationType is the type of the operation with the registry.
  - RegistryPreviousKey is the previous registry key.
  - RegistryPreviousValue is the previous name of the registry value.
- **System event log**:
  - WinLogEventID is the type ID of the security event in the Windows log.
  - LinuxEventType is the type of the event.
  - WinLogName is the name of the log.
  - WinLogEventRecordID is the log entry ID.
  - WinLogProviderName is the ID of the system that logged the event.
  - WinLogTargetDomainName is the domain name of the remote computer.
  - WinLogObjectName is the name of the object that initiated the event.
  - WinlogPackageName is the name of the package that initiated the event.
  - WinLogProcessName is the name of the process that initiated the event.

- **Detect and processing result**:
  - DetectName is the name of the detected object.
  - RecordID is the ID of the triggered rule.
  - ProcessingMode is the scanning mode.
  - ObjectName is the name of the object.
  - ObjectType is the type of the object.
  - ThreatStatus is the detection mode.
  - UntreatedReason is the event processing status.
  - ObjectContent (for AMSI events too) is the content of the script sent for scanning.
  - ObjectContentType (for AMSI events too) is the type of script content.
- **Console interactive input**:
  - InteractiveInputText is the text entered on the command line.
  - InteractiveInputType is the input type (console or pipe).
- **File changed**:
  - FileOperationType is the type of the file operation.
  - FilePreviousPath is the path to the directory where the file was previously located.
  - FilePreviousFullName is the full name of the file including the path to the directory where the file was previously located and/or the previous file name.
  - DroppedFileType is the type of the modified file.

Operators

The following operators are available:

- **=**
- **!=**
- **CONTAINS**
- **!CONTAINS**
- **STARTS**
- **!STARTS**
- **ENDS**

- **!ENDS**
- **>**
- **<**

Searching events in source code mode

To define event search conditions in source code mode:

1. Select the **Threat Hunting** section, **Source code** tab in the application web interface window.

   This opens a form containing the field for entering event search conditions in source code mode.

2. Enter the event search conditions using commands, the logical operators `OR` and `AND`, and parentheses for creating groups of conditions.

   Commands must match the following syntax: `<field type> <comparison operator> <field value>`.

   Example:

   ```
   EventType = "filechange"
   AND (
   FileName CONTAINS "example"
   OR UserName = "example"
   )
   ```

3. If you want to search events that occurred during a specific period, click the **Any time** button and select one of the following event search periods:

   - **Any time** if you want the table to display events found as far back as the records go.
   - **Last hour** if you want the table to display events that were found during the last hour.
   - **Last day** if you want the table to display events found during the last day.
   - **Custom range** if you want the table to display events found during the period you specify.

4. If you selected **Custom range**:

   a. In the calendar that opens, specify the start and end dates of the event display range.

   b. Click **Apply**.

   The calendar closes.

5. Click **Search**.

   The table of events that satisfy the search criteria is displayed.

   If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, found events are grouped in tiers: Server – Tenant names – Server names.

6. Click the name of the server for which you want to view events.

The host table of the selected server is displayed. Event grouping levels are displayed above the table.

Sorting events in the table

You can sort events in the table by the **Event time**, **Event type**, **Host**, and **User name** columns.

To sort events in the event table:

1. Select the **Threat Hunting** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the **Threat Hunting** window.

2. Define the criteria for searching events in design mode or source code mode.

   The table of events that satisfy the search criteria is displayed.

3. If you want to sort events by time, click one of the icons to the right of the **Event time** column name:

   - ↑ to display newer events at the top of the table.
   - ↓ to display older events at the top of the table.

4. If you want to sort events by the event type name, click one of the icons to the right of the **Event type** column heading:

   - ↑ to sort alphabetically, A–Z.
   - ↓ to sort alphabetically, Z–A.

5. If you want to sort events based on the names of host on which the alerts were generated, click one of the icons to the right of the **Host** column name:

   - ↑ to sort alphabetically, A–Z.
   - ↓ to sort alphabetically, Z–A.

6. If you want to sort events based on the user names of hosts, click one of the icons on the right of the **User name** column name:

   - ↑ to sort alphabetically, A–Z.
   - ↓ to sort alphabetically, Z–A.

7. If you want to group events based on the names of hosts or by the event type name, click one of the values in the **Group by** drop-down list:

   - **Group by host name** if you want to group events by the names of hosts.
   - **Group by event type** if you want to group events by the names of event types.

If events were sorted by the **Host** or **Event type** field, the sorting result is cleared when events are grouped by a similar attribute. To return to the sorting results, select the **Group by** value from the **Group by** drop-down list.

By default, events in the table are sorted by time, with the newest events at the top of the table.

You can sort events based on one attribute only.

When sorting by event type in a foreign language, events are sorted based on the internal name of the event type in English.

Changing the event search conditions

*To change the event search conditions, perform the following actions in the **Threat Hunting** section of the application web interface window:*

1. Click the form containing the event search conditions in the upper part of the window.
2. Select one of the following tabs:
   - **Builder**, if you want to change the event search conditions in design mode.
   - **Source code**, if you want to change the event search conditions in source code mode.
3. Make the relevant changes.
4. Click one of the following buttons:
   - **Refresh**, if you want to refresh the current event search with the new conditions.
   - **New search**, if you want to perform a new event search.

The table of events that satisfy the search criteria is displayed.

Searching events by processing results in EPP applications

To search events by processing results in EPP applications in design mode:

1. Select the **Threat Hunting** section, **Builder** tab in the application web interface window.

   This opens the event search form.

2. To search events by processing status:

   a. In the search criteria drop-down lost in the **Detect and processing result** group, select **ThreatStatus**.

   b. In the drop-down list of comparison operators, select one of the following options:

   - **=** (equals)
   - **!=** (does not equal)

   c. In the drop-down list of event processing status, select one of the following options:

   - **Object clean**.
   - **Object disinfected**.
   - **False positive**.
   - **Object added by user**.
   - **Object added to exclusions**.
   - **Object deleted**.
   - **Object quarantined**.
   - **Object not found**.
   - **Object rolled back**.
   - **Object cannot be processed**.
   - **Object not processed**.
   - **Processing terminated**.
   - **Unknown**.

3. To search events by reasons why they were not processed:

   a. In the search criteria drop-down lost in the **Detect and processing result** group, select **UntreatedReason**.

   b. In the drop-down list of comparison operators, select one of the following options:

   - **=** (equals)
   - **!=** (does not equal)

   c. In the drop-down list of reasons why the events were not processed, select one of the following options:

   - **Object already processed**.
   - **Application is running in Report only mode**.
   - **Failed to back up object**.

- **Failed to copy object**.
- **Device not ready**.
- **Object blocked**.
- **No rights to perform action**.
- **Object not curable**.
- **Object not overwritable**.
- **Object not found**.
- **No free space on disk**.
- **Processing canceled**.
- **Processing postponed**.
- **Processing task stopped**.
- **Error reading data**.
- **Reason unknown**.
- **Object is critical system**.
- **Data write error**.
- **Data write not supported**.
- **Object write-protected**.

4. If you want to add a new condition, use the **AND** or **OR** logical operator and repeat the necessary actions for adding a condition.

5. If you want to add a group of conditions, click the **Group** button and repeat the actions necessary for adding conditions.

6. If you want to delete a group of conditions, click the **Remove group** button.

7. If you want to search events that occurred during a specific period, in the **Any time** drop-down list select one of the following event search periods:

   - **Any time** if you want the table to display events found as far back as the records go.
   - **Last hour** if you want the table to display events that were found during the last hour.
   - **Last day** if you want the table to display events found during the last day.
   - **Custom range** if you want the table to display events found during the period you specify.

8. If you have selected the **Custom range** display period for found events:

   a. In the calendar that opens, specify the start and end dates of the event display range.

   b. Click **Apply**.

   The calendar closes.

9. Click **Search**.

The table of events that satisfy the search criteria is displayed.

Uploading an IOC file and searching for events based on conditions defined in the IOC file

To upload an IOC file and search for events based on conditions defined in that IOC file:

1. Select the **Threat Hunting** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the event search form.

2. Click **Import**.

   This opens the file selection window.

3. Select the IOC file that you want to upload and click the **Open** button.

   The IOC file will be uploaded.

   On the **Source code** tab, the form containing event search conditions will display the conditions defined in the uploaded IOC file.

   > You can search for events that match these conditions. You can also change the conditions defined in an uploaded IOC file, or add event search conditions in source code mode.

4. If you want to search events that occurred during a specific period, click the **Any time** button and select one of the following event search periods:

   - **Any time** if you want the table to display events found as far back as the records go.
   - **Last hour** if you want the table to display events that were found during the last hour.
   - **Last day** if you want the table to display events found during the last day.
   - **Custom range** if you want the table to display events found during the period you specify.

5. If you have selected the **Custom range** display period for found events:

   a. In the calendar that opens, specify the start and end dates of the event display range.

   b. Click **Apply**.

The calendar closes.

6. Click **Search**.

An event table is displayed that corresponds to criteria specified in the IOC file.

Creating a TAA (IOA) rule based on event search conditions

To create a TAA (IOA) rule based on event search conditions:

1. Select the **Threat Hunting** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the event search form.

2. Perform an event search in design mode or source code mode.

3. Click **Save as TAA (IOA) rule**.

   This opens the **New TAA (IOA) rule** window.

4. In the **Name** field, type the name of the rule.

5. Click **Save**.

The event search condition will be saved. In the TAA (IOA) rule table in the **Custom rules** section, **TAA** subsection of the web interface, the new rule is displayed with the specified name.

If you want to save event search conditions as a user-defined TAA (IOA) rule, avoid using the following fields:

- IOAId.
- IOATag.
- IOATechnique.
- IOATactics.
- IOAImportance.
- IOAConfidence.

At the time of saving the user-defined TAA (IOA) rule, the application may not have any events containing data for these fields. When events with this data turn up, the user-defined field that you have created earlier will be unable to mark events by these fields.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot create TAA (IOA) rules based on event search conditions.

Event information

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, when managing the application using the web interface, you can view event information for those tenants to whose data you have access.

Event information displays local timestamps of the Endpoint Agent computer that detected the event. The application administrator must make sure the time on computers with the Endpoint Agent component is current.

To enable the display of events for all tenants:

1. Select the **Threat Hunting** section in the application web interface window.
2. Turn on the **Search in all tenants** toggle switch.

   The table of events displays events for all tenants.

Recommendations for processing events

The event window displays recommendations for processing the event in the box between the event tree and the information text for users with the **Senior security officer** role.

You can follow the following recommendations:

- **Isolate <host name>** – isolate the host with the Endpoint Agent component where the event was detected from the network. Applies to all event types.
- **Create prevention rule** – prohibit the execution of the file that was detected in the event. Applies to all event types except **System event log** and **Host name changed**.
- **Create task** — create a task. Applies to all event types except **System event log** and **Host name changed**.

Additionally, you can process the event by clicking the link with the name, path, MD5 or SHA256 hash of the file and the host name while viewing text information about the event in the lower part of the window.

Clicking the link with the file name or file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Run the following tasks:
  - **Kill process**.
  - **Kill by unique PID**.
  - **Delete file**.

    - Get file.
    - Get forensics.
    - Quarantine file.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **MD5** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Filter by this value**.
- **Exclude from filter**.
- Find on TIP.
- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **SHA256** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Find on TIP.
- **Find on virustotal.com**.
- Find in Storage.
- Create prevention rule.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Run the following tasks:
    - Kill process.
    - Delete file.
    - Get file.
    - Get forensics.

- Quarantine file.
- Run application.

- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles are not shown recommendations for processing events.

Following a recommendation to isolate a host

To follow a recommendation to isolate a host from the network:

1. In the recommendation box, select **Isolate <host name>**.

   This opens the host isolation settings window for the host from the event you are working on.

2. In the **Disable isolation after** field, enter the time in hours (1 to 9,999) during which network isolation of the host will be active.

3. In the **Exclusions for the host isolation rule** settings group, in the **Traffic direction** list, select the direction of network traffic that must not be blocked:

   - **Incoming/Outgoing**.
   - **Incoming**.
   - **Outgoing**.

4. In the **IP** field, enter the IP address whose network traffic must not be blocked.

   If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in the role of the Endpoint Agent component, you can use a proxy server for the connection of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. When you add this proxy server to exclusions, network resources that can be accessed through the proxy server are also added to exclusions. If network resources that are accessed through the proxy server are added to exclusions, but the proxy server itself is not, such exclusions do not work.

5. If you selected **Incoming** or **Outgoing**, in the **Ports** field, enter the connection ports.

6. If you want to add more than one exclusion, click **Add** and repeat the steps to fill in the **Traffic direction**, **IP** and **Ports** fields.

7. Click **Save**.

Information about host isolation is displayed in the **Endpoint Agents section** of the web interface.

You can also create a network isolation rule by clicking the **Isolate <host name>** link in the alert information and in the **Endpoint Agents section** of the web interface.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot isolate a host from the network.

Following a recommendation to prevent a file from running

To follow a recommendation to prevent a file from running:

1. In the recommendations box, select **Create prevention rule**.

   This opens the prevention rule creation window with the MD5 or SHA256 hash of the file from the event you are working on.

2. Configure the following settings:

   a. **State** is the state of the prevention rule:

   - If you want to enable the prevention rule, set the toggle switch to **On**.
   - If you want to disable the prevention rule, set the toggle switch to **Off**.

   b. **Name** is the name of the prevention rule.

   c. If you want the application to display a notification about prevention rule triggering to the user of the computer on which the prevention is applied, select the **Notify user about blocking file execution** check box.

   d. If you want to change the scope of the prevention rule, configure the **Prevent on** setting:

   - If you want to apply the prevention rule on all hosts of all servers, select **All hosts**.
   - If you want to apply the prevention rule on selected servers, select the **Specified servers** option and on the right of the **Servers** parameter name select the check boxes next to the names of the servers on which you want to apply the prevention rule.

     This option is available only when distributed solution and multitenancy mode is enabled.

   - If you want to apply the prevention rule on selected hosts, select the **Specified hosts** option and list these hosts in the **Hosts** field.

3. Click **Add**.

The file run prevention is created.

Information about the created prevention is displayed in the **Prevention section** of the web interface.

If you selected the **Notify user about blocking file execution** check box and an attempt is made to execute a file prevented from running, the user is notified that an execution prevention rule was triggered by this file.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot prevent file execution.

Following a recommendation to create a task

To follow a recommendation to create a task:

1. Click **Create task**, and in the recommendation box, expand the list of task types.
2. Select a task type:
   - Kill process
   - Get forensics
   - Start YARA scan
   - Service management
   - Get process memory dump
   - Get NTFS metafiles
   - Run application
   - Get file
   - Delete file
   - Quarantine file
   - Restore file from quarantine

   This opens the task creation window with preset values (for example, host name, file path, MD5 or SHA256 hash of the file) from the event you are working on.
3. If you want to modify preset values from the event, edit the corresponding fields.
4. If you want to add a comment for the task, enter it in the **Description** box.
5. If you are creating a **Kill process**, **Delete file**, **Start YARA scan**, or **Service management** task and you want to modify the scope of the task, change the value of the **Task for** setting:
   - If you want to run the task on all hosts of all servers, select the **All hosts** option.
   - If you want to run the task on selected servers, select the **Specified servers** option and on the right of the **Servers** parameter name select the check boxes next to the names of the servers on which you want to run the task.

     This option is available only when distributed solution and multitenancy mode is enabled.
   - If you want to run the task on selected hosts, select the **Specified hosts** option and list these hosts in the **Hosts** field.
6. Click **Add**.

The task is created.

Information about the created task is displayed in the **Tasks section** of the web interface.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot create tasks.

Information about events in the tree of events

The tree of events is displayed in the upper part of the event information window.

The tree of events contains the following information:

- The event for which you are viewing information.

  The event you are viewing is displayed on the right side.

- The parent process.

  The parent process is displayed to the left of the event you are viewing. If the event you are viewing does not have a parent process, the host name where the event was registered is displayed instead.

Clicking the name of the parent process on the left side displays the process that has initiated the process in question and is a parent process with regard to that process. If there is no parent process, the host name is displayed instead.

To the right of each parent process name, the total number of events generated by this process is displayed. You can view the list of events and information about the selected event.

Viewing parent process information in the tree of events

To display parent process information for the event being viewed:

1. Perform an event search in design mode or source code mode.

   The event table is displayed.

2. Select the event whose information you want to view.

   This opens a window containing information about the event. The upper part of the window displays the tree of events.

3. Click the name of the parent process.

   In the bottom part of the window, the **Details** tab displays information about the process that is the parent process with regard to the event being viewed.

Viewing information about events initiated by the parent process in the tree of events

To view the table of all events initiated by the parent process:

1. Perform an event search in design mode or source code mode.

   The event table is displayed.

2. Select the event whose information you want to view.

   This opens a window containing information about the event. The upper part of the event information window displays the tree of events.

3. Click the name of the parent process in the event tree.

   In the bottom part of the window, the **Details** tab displays information about the event that is the parent event with regard to the event being viewed.

4. Go to the **Events** tab.

   A table of all events initiated by the parent process is displayed. By default, events in the table are sorted by time, with the newest events at the top of the table.

   You can view event information by clicking the row of the relevant event. The event node is displayed in the tree of events.

To display the event table grouped by type:

1. Perform an event search in design mode or source code mode.

   The event table is displayed.

2. Select the event whose information you want to view.

   This opens a window containing information about the event. The upper part of the event information window displays the tree of events.

3. Click the drop-down list to the right of the parent process name in the tree of events.

   A list of all events initiated by the parent process is displayed. By default, the events in the list are grouped by type.

4. In the tree of events, in the drop-down list to the right of the parent process name, select one of the following options:

   - If you want to display all events initiated by the parent process, click **All events**.

     A table of all events initiated by the parent process is displayed. By default, events in the table are sorted by time, with the newest events at the top of the table.

   - If you want to view all events of a particular type initiated by the parent process, select the name of the relevant event type.

     A table of all events initiated by the parent process is displayed, grouped by type.

   You can view event information by clicking the row of the relevant event. The event is displayed in the tree of events.

Viewing host information in the tree of events

If the event that you are viewing or the parent process do not have a process that initiated it, the process node in the tree of events is replaced with the node of the host where the event was registered or the parent process was running.

To view information for the host where the event was registered or the parent process was started:

1. Perform an event search in design mode or source code mode.

   The event table is displayed.

2. Select the event whose information you want to view.

   This opens a window containing information about the event. The upper part of the window displays the tree of events.

3. Click the host name in the tree of events.

   The bottom part of the window displays information about the host where the event was registered or the parent process was running.

Viewing the table of events

The events table is displayed in the **Threat Hunting** section of the application web interface window after completion of Threat Hunting in the events database. You can sort events in the table by the **Event time**, **Event type**, **Host**, and **User name** columns.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, events in the table are grouped by hosts of the selected servers and tenants.

The table of events contains the following information:

1. **Event time**—Date and time when the event was detected.
2. **Event type**, for example, **Process started**.
3. **Host name**—Name of the host on which the alert was generated.
4. **Details**—Information about the event.
5. **User name**—Name of the user on the computer with the Endpoint Agent component whose user account was used to detect the event.

In the events table, the **Details** column displays the set of data for each type of event in the **Event type** column (see the table below).

Set of data in the **Details** column for each event type in the **Event** column

Event type	Details
Process started	Name of the process file that was started. SHA256- and MD5 hash.
Module loaded	Name of the dynamic library that was loaded. SHA256- and MD5 hash.

Event type	Details
Connection to remote host	URL to which a remote connection attempt was made. Name of the file that attempted to establish a remote connection.
Blocked application (prevention rule)	Name of the file of the application that was blocked from starting. SHA256- and MD5 hash.
Document blocked	Name of the document that was blocked from starting. SHA256- and MD5 hash.
File changed	Name of the created file. SHA256- and MD5 hash.
System event log	Channel for recording events in the system log. Event type ID.
Registry modified	Name of key in registry. `<name of the variable in the key>=<value of the variable>`.
Port listened	Server address and port. Name of the file of the process that listens to the port.
Driver loaded	File name of the driver that has been loaded. SHA256- and MD5 hash.
Scan: detect	Alert
Scan: detect processing result	Alert processing result.
AMSI scan	AMSI scan results.
Process: interpreted file run	Interpreted run of a file.
Process: console interactive input	Interactive input of commands in the console.

If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Agent as the Endpoint Agent component, information about the **AMSI scan** event is available when Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is integrated with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows 3.10 or later and when Kaspersky Endpoint Agent is integrated with Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows 11.5 or later. If Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows is not installed on the computer and is not integrated with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent, information about the **AMSI scan** event is not logged in the event database and is not displayed in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface.

If Kaspersky Endpoint Agent is used in the role of the Endpoint Agent component, the Central Node server generates **Scan: detect** and **Scan: detect processing result** events based on data received from EPP applications. If EPP applications are not installed on the computer and are not integrated with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent, information about these events is not logged in the event database and is not displayed in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface.

Clicking the link with the name of the event type, data, additional information and user name opens a list in which you can select the action to perform on the object. Depending on the value in the cell, you can perform one of the following actions:

- For all values in the cell:
  - **Filter by this value**.
  - **Exclude from filter**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.

- Host name:
  - Find events.
  - Find alerts.
  - Isolate from network.
- File name:
  - Kill process.
  - Kill by unique PID.
  - Delete file.
  - Get file.
  - Get forensics.
  - Quarantine file.
- MD5 hash:
  - Find events.
  - Find alerts.
  - Find on TIP.
  - Create prevention rule.
  - Find in Storage.
- SHA256 hash:
  - Find events.
  - Find alerts.
  - Find on TIP.
  - Find on virustotal.com.
  - Create prevention rule.
  - Find in Storage.

Configuring the event table display

You can show or hide columns and change the order of columns in the event table.

To configure the event table display:

1. Perform an event search in design mode or source code mode.

   The event table is displayed.

2. In the heading part of the table, click .

   This opens the **Customize table** window.

3. If you want to show a column in the table, select the check box next to the name of the parameter that you want displayed in the table.

   If you want to hide a parameter in the table, clear the check box.

   > At least one check box must be selected.

4. If you want to change the order of columns in the table, move the mouse cursor to the row with the relevant parameter, click and move the row to its new place.

5. If you want to restore default table display settings, click **Default**.

6. Click **Apply**.

The display of the event table is configured.

Viewing information about an event

To view event details:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Threat Hunting** section, **Builder** or **Source code** tab.

   This opens the event search form.

2. If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode and want to enable the display of events for all tenants, turn on the **Search in all tenants** toggle switch.

3. Perform an event search in design mode or source code mode.

   The event table is displayed.

4. Select the event whose information you want to view.

This opens a window containing information about the event.

Information about the "Process started" event

The window showing information about **Process started** events contains the following details:

- Tree of events.
- Recommendations for processing an event.
- **Process started** section:
  - **IOA tags**—Information about the results of file analysis using the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology: name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert.

    Click the link to display information about the TAA (IOA) rule. If the rule was provided by Kaspersky experts, it contains information about the triggered MITRE technique as well as recommendations for reacting to the event.

    The field is displayed if a TAA (IOA) rule was triggered when the event was created.
  - **File**—Process file name.
  - **Process ID**—Process identifier.
  - **Launch parameters**—Process startup settings.

    If the event was logged in the event database by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux, instead of the **Launch parameters** field, the **Command** field is displayed, that is, the command that was used to run the process.
  - **MD5**—MD5 hash of the process file.
  - **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the process file.
  - **Size**—Size of the process file.
  - **Event time**—Process start time.
  - **Time created**—Process file creation time.
  - **Time modified**—Time of last modification of the process file.
- **Details** section:
  - **Application name**—For example, the name of the operating system.
  - **Vendor**—For example, vendor of the operating system.
  - **File description**—For example, Example File.
  - **Original file name**—For example, ExampleFile.exe.
  - **Signature subject**—Organization that issued the digital certificate of the file.

- **Signature validation result**—For example, "Invalid" or "OK".
- **Attributes**—File attribute in accordance with the Windows classification. For example, A (archive), D (directory), or S (system file).

If the event was logged in the event database by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux, the **Details** section also includes the following fields:

- **Attributes**—Attributes of the process file.
- **Process type**—For example, exec.
- **Environment variables**—Environment variables of the process.
- **Real user name**—Name of the user assigned when registering in the system.
- **Real group name**—Group to which the user belongs.
- **Effective user name**—User name that was used to log in to the system.
- **Effective group name**—Group of the user whose name was used to log in to the system.
- **Owner user name**—Name of the user that created the process file.
- **Owner group name**—Name of the group whose users can modify or delete the file of the process.
- **File permitted capabilities**—Permissions that can be used to gain access to the process file.
- **File inheritable capabilities**—Permissions that an user group has to perform operations on the parent directory of the process file.
- **File effective capabilities**—Permissions that are relevant to the process file at the current moment.

- **Event initiator** section:
  - **File**—Path to the parent process file.
  - **Process ID**—Identifier of the parent process.
  - **Launch parameters**—Parent process startup settings.

    If the event was logged in the event database by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux, instead of the **Launch parameters** field, the **Command** field is displayed, that is, the command that was used to run the parent process.
  - **MD5**—MD5 hash of the parent process file.
  - **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the parent process file.
- **System info** section:
  - **Host name**—Name of the host on which the process was started.
  - **Host IP**—IP address of the host on which the process was started.

If you are using dynamic IP addresses, the field displays the IP address assigned to the host at the moment when the event was created.

The application does not support IPv6. If you are using IPv6, the IP address of the host is not displayed.

- **Account type**—Type of the account that ran the process. For example, administrator.
- **Logon type**—For example, using a running service.
- **User name**—Name of the user that started the process.
- **OS name**—Version of the operating system that is being used on the host.

  If the event was logged in the event database by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux, the **System info** section also displays the **Logon from remote host** field for the name of host from which the remote logon was performed.

Clicking the link with the file name or file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Run the following tasks:
  - Kill process.
  - Kill by unique PID.
  - Delete file.
  - Get file.
  - Get forensics.
  - Quarantine file.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

In the information about the event that Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux records in the event database, you can click the links with the file name or file path to open a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Run the Get file task.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Run the following tasks:
  - **Get data** → File, Forensics, Disk image, Memory dump.
  - **Kill process**.
  - **Delete file**.
  - **Quarantine file.**
  - **Run application**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

In the information about the event that Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux records in the event database, you can click the link with the host name to expand a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Run the following tasks:
  - Get file.
  - Run application.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **MD5** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Find on TIP.
- **Find in Storage**.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **SHA256** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.

- Find on TIP.
- **Find on virustotal.com**.
- Find in Storage.
- Create prevention rule.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Information about the "Process terminated" event

The window showing information about **Process terminated** events contains the following details:

- Tree of events.
- Recommendations for processing an event.
- **Process terminated** section:
  - **IOA tags**—Information about the results of file analysis using the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology: name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert.

    Click the link to display information about the TAA (IOA) rule. If the rule was provided by Kaspersky experts, it contains information about the triggered MITRE technique as well as recommendations for reacting to the event.

    The field is displayed if a TAA (IOA) rule was triggered when the event was created.
  - **File**—Process file name.
  - **Process ID**—Process identifier.
  - **Launch parameters**—Process startup settings.

    If the event was logged in the event database by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux, instead of the **Launch parameters** field, the **Command** field is displayed, that is, the command that was used to run the process.
  - **MD5**—MD5 hash of the process file.
  - **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the process file.
  - **Size**—Size of the process file.
  - **Event time**— Process termination time.
- **Event initiator** section:
  - **File**—Path to the parent process file.
  - **Process ID**—Identifier of the parent process.

- **Launch parameters**—Parent process startup settings.

  If the event was logged in the event database by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux, instead of the **Launch parameters** field, the **Command** field is displayed, that is, the command that was used to run the parent process.

- **MD5**—MD5 hash of the parent process file.

- **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the parent process file.

- **System info** section:

  - **Host name**—Name of the host on which the process was started.

  - **Host IP**—IP address of the host on which the process was started.

    If you are using dynamic IP addresses, the field displays the IP address assigned to the host at the moment when the event was created.

    The application does not support IPv6. If you are using IPv6, the IP address of the host is not displayed.

  - **Account type**—Type of the account that terminated the process. For example, administrator.

  - **User name**—Name of the user that started the process.

  - **OS name**—Version of the operating system that is being used on the host.

  If the event was logged in the event database by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux, the **System info** section also displays the **Logon from remote host**, that is, the name of host from which the remote logon was performed.

Clicking the link with the file name or file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Run the following tasks:
  - Delete file.
  - Get file.
  - Get forensics.
  - Quarantine file.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.
- In the information about the event that Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux records in the event database, you can click the links with the file name or file path to open a list in which you can select one of the following actions:
- Find events.

- Find alerts.
- Run the Get file task.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Run the following tasks:
  - **Get data** → File, Forensics, Disk image, Memory dump.
  - **Kill process**.
  - **Delete file**.
  - **Quarantine file.**
  - **Run application**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

In the information about the event that Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux records in the event database, you can click the link with the host name to expand a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Run the following tasks:
  - Get file.
  - Run application.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **MD5** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Find on TIP.
- **Find in Storage**.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **SHA256** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Find on TIP.
- **Find on virustotal.com**.
- Find in Storage.
- Create prevention rule.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Information about the "Module loaded" event

The window showing information about **Module loaded** events contains the following details:

- Tree of events.
- Recommendations for processing an event.
- **Module loaded** section:
  - **IOA tags**—Information about the results of file analysis using the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology: name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert.

    Click the link to display information about the TAA (IOA) rule. If the rule was provided by Kaspersky experts, it contains information about the triggered MITRE technique as well as recommendations for reacting to the event.

    The field is displayed if a TAA (IOA) rule was triggered when the event was created.
  - **File**—Name of the loaded module file.
  - **MD5**—MD5 hash of the loaded module file.
  - **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the loaded module file.
  - **Size**—Size of the loaded module.
  - **Event time**—Time when the module was loaded.
- **Details** section:
  - **Application name**—For example, name of the operating system.
  - **Vendor**—For example, vendor of the operating system.
  - **File description**—For example, Example File.
  - **Original file name**—For example, Example File.

- **Signature subject**—Organization that issued the digital certificate of the file.
- **Signature validation result**—For example, "Signature invalid" or "Signature OK".
- **Time created**—Creation time of the loaded module.
- **Time modified**—Date of last modification of the loaded module.
- **Next DLL in bypass path**—The field contains the path to the DLL library that could have been loaded instead of the existing library.

  The field is displayed if the following conditions are satisfied:

  - The source of the loaded DLL is not trusted.
  - A folder in the standard search path contains a library with the same name but a different hash.

  If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Agent as the Endpoint Agent component, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform receives the data required to populate the **Next DLL in bypass path** field only when Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is integrated with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.10 for Windows. When integrating the application with older versions of the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application the field is not displayed in the event information.

- **Event initiator** section:
  - **File**—Path to the parent process file.
  - **MD5**—MD5 hash of the parent process file.
  - **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the parent process file.
- **System info** section:
  - **Host name**—Name of the host on which the module was loaded.
  - **Host IP**—IP address of the host on which the module was loaded.

    If you are using dynamic IP addresses, the field displays the IP address assigned to the host at the moment when the event was created.

    The application does not support IPv6. If you are using IPv6, the IP address of the host is not displayed.

  - **User name**—Name of the user that loaded the module.
  - **OS name**—Version of the operating system being used on the host.

Clicking the link with the file name or file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.

- Run the following tasks:
  - Kill process.
  - Kill by unique PID.
  - Delete file.
  - Get file.
  - Get forensics.
  - Quarantine file.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Run the following tasks:
  - **Get data** → File, Forensics, Disk image, Memory dump.
  - **Kill process**.
  - **Delete file**.
  - **Quarantine file.**
  - **Run application**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **MD5** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Find on TIP.
- **Find in Storage**.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **SHA256** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.

- Find on TIP.
- **Find on virustotal.com**.
- Find in Storage.
- Create prevention rule.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Information about the "Remote connection" event

The window showing information about **Connection to remote host** events contains the following details:

- Tree of events.
- Recommendations for processing an event.
- **Connection to remote host** section:
  - **IOA tags**—Information about the results of file analysis using the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology: name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert.

    Click the link to display information about the TAA (IOA) rule. If the rule was provided by Kaspersky experts, it contains information about the triggered MITRE technique as well as recommendations for reacting to the event.

    The field is displayed if a TAA (IOA) rule was triggered when the event was created.
  - **Connection direction** is the direction of the connection (inbound or outbound).
  - **Remote IP**—IP address of the host to which a remote connection attempt was made.
  - **Local IP**—IP address of the local computer from which a remote connection attempt was made.
  - **Event time**—Time of the remote connection attempt.
- **Event initiator** section:
  - **File**—Name of the parent process file.
  - **MD5**—MD5 hash of the parent process file.
  - **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the parent process file.
- **System info** section:
  - **Host name**—Host name from which a remote connection attempt was made.
  - **Host IP**—IP address of the host from which a remote connection attempt was made.

    If you are using dynamic IP addresses, the field displays the IP address assigned to the host at the moment when the event was created.

The application does not support IPv6. If you are using IPv6, the IP address of the host is not displayed.

- **User name**—Name of the user that attempted to establish a remote connection.
- **OS name**—Version of the operating system being used on the host.

Clicking the link with the file name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Run the following tasks:
  - Kill process.
  - Kill by unique PID.
  - Delete file.
  - Get file.
  - Get forensics.
  - Quarantine file.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Run the following tasks:
  - **Get data** → File, Forensics, Disk image, Memory dump.
  - **Kill process**.
  - **Delete file**.
  - **Quarantine file.**
  - **Run application**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **MD5** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.

- Find on TIP.
- **Find in Storage**.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **SHA256** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Find on TIP.
- **Find on virustotal.com**.
- Find in Storage.
- Create prevention rule.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Information about the "Prevention rule" event

The window with information about events in which prevention rules were triggered, i. e. events of the **Blocked application (prevention rule)** type, displays the following details:

- Tree of events.
- Recommendations for processing an event.
- **Blocked application (prevention rule)** section:
  - **IOA tags**—Information about the results of file analysis using the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology: name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert.

    Click the link to display information about the TAA (IOA) rule. If the rule was provided by Kaspersky experts, it contains information about the triggered MITRE technique as well as recommendations for reacting to the event.

    The field is displayed if a TAA (IOA) rule was triggered when the event was created.
  - **File**—Name of the file that was prevented from running.
  - **Launch parameters**—Parameters that were used for the attempt to run the file.
  - **MD5**—MD5 hash of the file that was prevented from running.
  - **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the file that was prevented from running.
  - **Size**—Size of the file that was prevented from running.
  - **Event time**—Time when the file startup prevention was triggered.

- **Details** section:
  - **Application name**—For example, the name of the operating system.
  - **Vendor**—For example, vendor of the operating system.
  - **File description**—For example, Example File.
  - **Original file name**—For example, ExampleFile.exe.
  - **Signature subject**—Organization that issued the digital certificate of the file.
  - **Signature validation result**—For example, "Signature invalid" or "Signature OK".
  - **Time created**—Creation time of the file that was prevented from running.
  - **Time modified**—Date of last modification of the file that was prevented from running.
- **Event initiator** section:
  - **File**—Name of the parent process file.
  - **MD5**—MD5 hash of the parent process file.
  - **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the parent process file.
  - **Process ID**—Identifier of the parent process.
- **System info** section:
  - **Host name**—Name of the host on which the file startup prevention was triggered.
  - **Host IP**—IP address of the host on which the file startup prevention was triggered.

    If you are using dynamic IP addresses, the field displays the IP address assigned to the host at the moment when the event was created.

    The application does not support IPv6. If you are using IPv6, the IP address of the host is not displayed.
  - **User name**—Name of the user whose account was used to run the file.
  - **OS name**—Version of the operating system being used on the host.

Clicking the link with the file name or file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.

- Run the following tasks:
  - Kill process.
  - Kill by unique PID.
  - Delete file.
  - Get file.
  - Get forensics.
  - Quarantine file.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Run the following tasks:
  - **Get data** → File, Forensics, Disk image, Memory dump.
  - **Kill process**.
  - **Delete file**.
  - **Quarantine file.**
  - **Run application**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **MD5** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Find on TIP.
- **Find in Storage**.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **SHA256** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.

- Find on TIP.
- **Find on virustotal.com**.
- Find in Storage.
- Create prevention rule.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Information about the "Document blocked" event

The window showing information about **Document blocked** events contains the following details:

- Tree of events.
- Recommendations for processing an event.
- **Document blocked** section:
  - **IOA tags**—Information about the results of file analysis using the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology: name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert.

    Click the link to display information about the TAA (IOA) rule. If the rule was provided by Kaspersky experts, it contains information about the triggered MITRE technique as well as recommendations for reacting to the event.

    The field is displayed if a TAA (IOA) rule was triggered when the event was created.
  - **File**—Name of the blocked document.
  - **MD5**—MD5 hash of the blocked document.
  - **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the blocked document.
  - **Event time**—Time when the document was blocked.
  - **Process file**—Name of the file of the process that attempted to open the document.
  - **Process MD5**—MD5 hash of the process that attempted to open the document.
  - **Process SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the process that attempted to open the document.
- **Event initiator** section:
  - **File**—Name of the parent process file.
  - **MD5**—MD5 hash of the parent process file.
  - **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the parent process file.
  - **Process ID**—Identifier of the parent process.

- **System info** section:
  - **Host name**—Name of the host on which the document was blocked.
  - **Host IP**—IP address of the host on which the document was blocked.

    If you are using dynamic IP addresses, the field displays the IP address assigned to the host at the moment when the event was created.

    The application does not support IPv6. If you are using IPv6, the IP address of the host is not displayed.
  - **User name**—Name of the user that attempted to open the document.
  - **OS name**—Version of the operating system being used on the host.

Clicking the link with the file name or file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Run the following tasks:
  - Kill process.
  - Kill by unique PID.
  - Delete file.
  - Get file.
  - Get forensics.
  - Quarantine file.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Run the following tasks:
  - **Get data** → File, Forensics, Disk image, Memory dump.
  - **Kill process**.
  - **Delete file**.

    - **Quarantine file.**
    - **Run application**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **MD5** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Find on TIP.
- **Find in Storage**.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **SHA256** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Find on TIP.
- **Find on virustotal.com**.
- Find in Storage.
- Create prevention rule.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Information about the "File modified" event

The window displaying information about **File changed** events contains the following details:

- Tree of events.
- Recommendations for processing an event.
- Depending on the type of operation that was performed with the file, one of the following section names is displayed in the event information:
    - **File created**.
    - **File modified**.
    - **File renamed**.
    - **File removed**.

- **File attributes modified**.
- **File read**.

The section displays the following information:

- **IOA tags**—Information about the results of file analysis using the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology: name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert.

  Click the link to display information about the TAA (IOA) rule. If the rule was provided by Kaspersky experts, it contains information about the triggered MITRE technique as well as recommendations for reacting to the event.

  The field is displayed if a TAA (IOA) rule was triggered when the event was created.
- **File**—Name of the created, deleted, or modified file.
- **MD5**—MD5 hash of the created, deleted, or modified file.
- **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the created, deleted, or modified file.
- **Size**—Size of the created, deleted, or modified file.
- **Event time**—Time when the event was detected.
- **Time created**—Time when the file was created.
- **Time modified**—Time of last modification of the file.
- **Previous version**—Name of the previous version of the file.

  > The **Previous version** field is displayed in event details only for operations of the **File renamed** type.

- **Remove file after reboot**—Status of the file to be deleted.

  If the file to which the "delete" operation was applied is opened in any application or is used by other processes, it is deleted when these processes terminate after a restart of the host. In this case, **Remove file after reboot** displays Yes.

  If the file to which the "delete" operation was applied was deleted immediately, the **Remove file after reboot** field displays No.

  > The **Remove file after reboot** field is displayed in event details only for operations of the **File removed** type.

If the event was logged in the event database by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux, the section also includes the following fields:

- **File type**—Extension of the created, deleted, or modified file.
- **File open flags**—Value of the open flags for the created, deleted, or modified file.
- **Owner user name**—Name of the user that created the file.
- **Owner group name**—Name of the group whose users can modify or delete the file.

- **File permitted capabilities**—Permissions that can be used to gain access to a created, deleted, or modified file.
- **File inheritable capabilities**—Permissions that an user group has to perform operations on the parent directory of the created, deleted, or modified file.
- **File effective capabilities**—Permissions that are relevant to the created, deleted, or modified file at the current moment.

- **Event initiator** section:
  - **File**—Path to the parent process file.
  - **MD5**—MD5 hash of the parent process file.
  - **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the parent process file.

  If the event was logged in the event database by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux, the **Event initiator** section also includes the following fields:

  - **Environment variables**—Environment variables of the process.
  - **Real user name**—Name of the user assigned when registering in the system.
  - **Real group name**—Group to which the user belongs.
  - **Effective user name**—User name that was used to log in to the system.
  - **Effective group name**—Group of the user whose name was used to log in to the system.
- **System info** section:
  - **Host name**—Name of the host on which the file was created.
  - **Host IP**—IP address of the host on which the file was created.

    If you are using dynamic IP addresses, the field displays the IP address assigned to the host at the moment when the event was created.

    The application does not support IPv6. If you are using IPv6, the IP address of the host is not displayed.
  - **User name**—Name of the user that created the file.
  - **OS name**—Version of the operating system that is being used on the host.

  If the event was logged in the event database by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux, the **System info** section also displays the **Logon from remote host** field for the name of host from which the remote logon was performed.

Clicking the link with the file name or file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Run the following tasks:
  - Kill process.
  - Kill by unique PID.
  - Delete file.
  - Get file.
  - Get forensics.
  - Quarantine file.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

In the information about the event that Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux records in the event database, you can click the links with the file name or file path to open a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Run the Get file task.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Run the following tasks:
  - **Get data** → File, Forensics, Disk image, Memory dump.
  - **Kill process**.
  - **Delete file**.
  - **Quarantine file.**
  - **Run application**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

In the information about the event that Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux records in the event database, you can click the link with the host name to expand a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Run the following tasks:
  - Get file.
  - Run application.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **MD5** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Find on TIP.
- **Find in Storage**.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **SHA256** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Find on TIP.
- **Find on virustotal.com**.
- Find in Storage.
- Create prevention rule.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Information about the "System event log" event

The window displaying information about **System event log** events contains the following details:

- Tree of events.
- Recommendations for processing an event.

- **System event log** section:
  - **IOA tags**—Information about the results of file analysis using the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology: name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert.

    Click the link to display information about the TAA (IOA) rule. If the rule was provided by Kaspersky experts, it contains information about the triggered MITRE technique as well as recommendations for reacting to the event.

    The field is displayed if a TAA (IOA) rule was triggered when the event was created.
  - **Event time**—Time when the event was detected.
  - **Security event ID**—Identifier of the type of security event in the Windows log.

  If the event was logged in the event database by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux, the **System event log** section also includes the following fields:

  - **Event type**—Type of the event.
  - **Operation result**—For example, **Success** or **Failed**.
- The **Event data** section containing information from the system log. The scope of data depends on the type of Windows event.

  The **Event data** section is not displayed in information about events logged in the events database by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux.
- **Event initiator** section:
  - **File**—Process file name.
  - **Process ID**—Process identifier.
  - **Command**—Command used to run the parent process.
  - **Environment variables**—Environment variables of the process.
  - **Real user name**—Name of the user assigned when registering in the system.
  - **Real group name**—Group to which the user belongs.

  The **Event initiator** section is not displayed in information about events logged to events database by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows.
- **System info** section:
  - **Host name**—Name of the host on which the event occurred.
  - **Host IP**—IP address of the host on which the event took place.

    If you are using dynamic IP addresses, the field displays the IP address assigned to the host at the moment when the event was created.

The application does not support IPv6. If you are using IPv6, the IP address of the host is not displayed.

- **User name**—Name of the user who started the process that initiated the system log record.
- **OS name**—Version of the operating system that is being used on the host.

  Event information logged to events database by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux also includes the **Logon from remote host** field, that is, the name of the host from which remote logon was performed.

In the information about the event that Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux records in the event database, you can click the links with the file name or file path to open a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Run the Get file task.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Run the following tasks:
  - **Get data** → File, Forensics, Disk image, Memory dump.
  - **Kill process**.
  - **Delete file**.
  - **Quarantine file.**
  - **Run application**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

In the information about the event that Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux records in the event database, you can click the link with the host name to expand a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.

- Run the following tasks:
  - Get file.
  - Run application.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Information about the "Changes in the registry" event

The window showing information about **Registry modified** events contains the following details:

- Tree of events.
- Recommendations for processing an event.
- **Registry modified** section:
  - **IOA tags**—Information about the results of file analysis using the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology: name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert.

    Click the link to display information about the TAA (IOA) rule. If the rule was provided by Kaspersky experts, it contains information about the triggered MITRE technique as well as recommendations for reacting to the event.

    The field is displayed if a TAA (IOA) rule was triggered when the event was created.
  - **Key path** is the path to the registry key that was modified
  - **Value name**: for example, RegistrySizeLimit
  - **Value data** is the value of the registry entry
  - **Value type**: for example, REG_DWORD
  - **Event time** is the time of registry modification

    When changing the name or value of a registry key, you may see additional fields containing information about the state of the registry key prior to its modification:
    - The **Previous key path** field is displayed when the name of the registry key is modified.
    - The **Previous value data** field is displayed when the registry value is modified.
    - The **Previous value type** field is displayed when the type of the registry value is modified.

      If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Agent as the Endpoint Agent component, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform receives the data required to populate the **Previous key path**, **Previous value data**, **Previous value type** fields only when Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is integrated with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows application version 3.10 and higher. When integrating the application with older versions of the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent, the fields are not displayed in the event information.

- **Event initiator** section:
  - **File**—Path to the parent process file.

    Clicking the link with the file name or file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

    - Find events.
    - Find alerts.
    - **Copy value to clipboard**.

    Run the following tasks:

    - Kill process.
    - Kill by unique PID.
    - Delete file.
    - Get file.
    - Get forensics.
    - Quarantine file.
  - **MD5**—MD5 hash of the parent process file.

    Clicking the **MD5** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

    - **Find events**.
    - **Find alerts**.
    - Find on TIP.
    - **Find in Storage**.
    - **Create prevention rule**.

    Copy value to clipboard.
  - **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the parent process file.

    Clicking the **SHA256** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

    - **Find events**.
    - **Find alerts**.
    - Find on TIP.
    - **Find in Storage**.

- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

- **System info** section:
  - **Host name**—Name of the host on which the registry modification was made.

    Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

    - Find events.
    - Find alerts.
    - **Copy value to clipboard**.

    Run the following tasks:

    - **Get data** → File, Forensics, Disk image, Memory dump.
    - Kill process.
    - Delete file.
    - Quarantine file.
    - Run application.
  - **Host IP**—IP address of the host on which the registry modification was made.

    If you are using dynamic IP addresses, the field displays the IP address assigned to the host at the moment when the event was created.

    The application does not support IPv6. If you are using IPv6, the IP address of the host is not displayed.
  - **User name**—Name of the user that made the change in the registry.
  - **OS name**—Version of the operating system being used on the host.

You can view information about the modification of the selected register key by editing or replacing the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform configuration file. To edit or replace the configuration file of the application, you must contact Technical Support.

You are strongly advised not to perform any operations with the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform configuration file in Technical Support Mode without advice or instructions from Technical Support staff.

Information about the "Port listened" event

The window showing information about **Port listened** events contains the following details:

- Tree of events.
- Recommendations for processing an event.
- **Port listened** section:
  - **IOA tags**—Information about the results of file analysis using the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology: name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert.

    Click the link to display information about the TAA (IOA) rule. If the rule was provided by Kaspersky experts, it contains information about the triggered MITRE technique as well as recommendations for reacting to the event.

    The field is displayed if a TAA (IOA) rule was triggered when the event was created.
  - **Local port**—Port that was listened to.
  - **Local IP**—IP address of the network interface whose port was listened to.
  - **Event time**—Port listening time.
- **Event initiator** section:
  - **File**—Path to the parent process file.

    Clicking the link with the file name or file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

    - Find events.
    - Find alerts.
    - **Copy value to clipboard**.

    Run the following tasks:

    - Kill process.
    - Kill by unique PID.
    - Delete file.
    - Get file.
    - Get forensics.
    - Quarantine file.
  - **MD5**—MD5 hash of the parent process file.

Clicking the **MD5** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Find on TIP.
- **Find in Storage**.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

- **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the parent process file.
  Clicking the **SHA256** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:
  - **Find events**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - Find on TIP.
  - **Find in Storage**.
  - **Create prevention rule**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.

- **System info** section:
  - **Host name**—Name of the host whose port was listened to.
    Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:
    - Find events.
    - Find alerts.
    - **Copy value to clipboard**.

    Run the following tasks:
    - **Get data** → File, Forensics, Disk image, Memory dump.
    - Kill process.
    - Delete file.
    - Quarantine file.
    - Run application.
  - **Host IP**—IP address of the host whose port was listened.

If you are using dynamic IP addresses, the field displays the IP address assigned to the host at the moment when the event was created.

The application does not support IPv6. If you are using IPv6, the IP address of the host is not displayed.

- **User name**—Name of the user whose account was used to listen to the port.
- **OS name**—Version of the operating system that is being used on the host.

Information about the "Driver loaded" event

The window showing information about **Driver loaded** events contains the following details:

- Tree of events.
- Recommendations for processing an event.
- **Driver loaded** section:
  - **IOA tags**—Information about the results of file analysis using the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology: name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert.

    Click the link to display information about the TAA (IOA) rule. If the rule was provided by Kaspersky experts, it contains information about the triggered MITRE technique as well as recommendations for reacting to the event.

    The field is displayed if a TAA (IOA) rule was triggered when the event was created.
  - **File**—Name of the loaded driver file.
  - **MD5**—MD5 hash of the loaded driver file.
  - **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the loaded driver file.
  - **Size**—Size of the loaded driver.
  - **Event time**—Time when the driver was loaded.
- **Details** section:
  - **Application name**—For example, the name of the operating system.
  - **Vendor**—For example, vendor of the operating system.
  - **File description**—For example, Example File.
  - **Original file name**—For example, ExampleFile.exe.
  - **Signature subject**—Organization that issued the digital certificate of the file.
  - **Signature validation result**—For example, "Signature invalid" or "Signature OK".

- **Time created**—Creation time of the loaded driver.
- **Time modified**—Time of last modification of the loaded driver.

- **System info** section:
  - **Host name**—Name of the host on which the driver was loaded.
  - **Host IP**—IP address of the host to which the driver was loaded.

    If you are using dynamic IP addresses, the field displays the IP address assigned to the host at the moment when the event was created.

    The application does not support IPv6. If you are using IPv6, the IP address of the host is not displayed.

  - **User name**—Name of the user that loaded the driver.
  - **OS name**—Version of the operating system being used on the host.

Clicking the link with the file name or file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Run the following tasks:
  - Kill process.
  - Kill by unique PID.
  - Delete file.
  - Get file.
  - Get forensics.
  - Quarantine file.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Run the following tasks:
  - **Get data** → File, Forensics, Disk image, Memory dump.
  - **Kill process**.

- **Delete file**.
- **Quarantine file.**
- **Run application**.

- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **MD5** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Find on TIP.
- **Find in Storage**.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **SHA256** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Find on TIP.
- **Find on virustotal.com**.
- Find in Storage.
- Create prevention rule.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Information about the "Alert" event

The window showing information about a **Scan: detect** type event contains the following details:

- Tree of events.
- Recommendations for processing an event.

- On the **Details** tab, in the **Scan: detect** section:
  - **IOA tags**—Information about the results of file analysis using the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology: name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert.

    Click the link to display information about the TAA (IOA) rule. If the rule was provided by Kaspersky experts, it contains information about the triggered MITRE technique as well as recommendations for reacting to the event.

    The field is displayed if a TAA (IOA) rule was triggered when the event was created.
  - **Detect**—Name of the detected object.

    Clicking the link with the object name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:
    - Find events.
    - **View on Kaspersky Threats**.
    - **Copy value to clipboard**.
  - **Last action**—Last action taken on the detected object.
  - **Object name**—Full name of the file in which the object was detected.
  - **MD5**—MD5 hash of the file in which the object was detected.
  - **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the file in which the object was detected.
  - **Object type**—Type of object (for example, a file).
  - **Detect mode**—Scan mode in which the alert was generated.
  - **Event time**—Date and time of the event.
  - **Record ID**—ID of the record of the alert in the database.
  - **Database version**—Version of the database used to generate the alert.
  - **Content**—Contents of the script sent to be scanned.

    You can download this data by clicking **Save to file**.
- On the **Details** tab, in the **Event initiator** section:
  - **File**—Path to the parent process file.

    Clicking the link with the file name or file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:
    - Find events.
    - Find alerts.
    - **Copy value to clipboard**.

Run the following tasks:

- Kill process.
- Kill by unique PID.
- Delete file.
- Get file.
- Get forensics.
- Quarantine file.

- **Process ID**—Identifier of the parent process.
- **Launch parameters**—Parent process startup settings.
- **MD5**—MD5 hash of the parent process file.
- **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the parent process file.

- On the **Details** tab, in the **System info** section:
  - **Host name**—Name of the host on which the alert was generated.

    Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

    - Find events.
    - Find alerts.
    - **Copy value to clipboard**.

    Run the following tasks:

    - **Get data** → File, Forensics, Disk image, Memory dump.
    - Kill process.
    - Delete file.
    - Quarantine file.
    - Run application.
  - **Host IP**—IP address of the host on which the alert was created.

    If you are using dynamic IP addresses, the field displays the IP address assigned to the host at the moment when the event was created.

    The application does not support IPv6. If you are using IPv6, the IP address of the host is not displayed.

- **User name**—User account used to complete the action taken on the detected object.
- **OS name**—Version of the operating system that is being used on the host.

- On the **History** tab, in the table:
  - **Type**—Type of event: **Scan: detect** or **Scan: detect processing result**.
  - **Description**—Description of the event.
  - **Time**—Date and time of detection and alert processing result.

Clicking the **MD5** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Find on TIP.
- **Find in Storage**.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **SHA256** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Find on TIP.
- **Find on virustotal.com**.
- Find in Storage.
- Create prevention rule.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Information about the "Alert processing result" event

The window showing information about a **Scan: detect processing result** type event contains the following details:

- Tree of events.
- Recommendations for processing an event.

- On the **Details** tab, under **Scan: detect processing result**:
  - **IOA tags**—Information about the results of file analysis using the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology: name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert.

    Click the link to display information about the TAA (IOA) rule. If the rule was provided by Kaspersky experts, it contains information about the triggered MITRE technique as well as recommendations for reacting to the event.

    The field is displayed if a TAA (IOA) rule was triggered when the event was created.
  - **Detect**—Name of the detected object.

    Clicking the link with the object name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:
    - Find events.
    - **View on Kaspersky Threats**.
    - **Copy value to clipboard**.
  - **Last action**—Last action taken on the detected object.
  - **MD5**—MD5 hash of the file in which the object was detected.
  - **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the file in which the object was detected.
  - **Object type**—Type of object (for example, a file).
  - **Object name**—Full name of the file in which the object was detected.
  - **Detect mode**—Scan mode in which the alert was generated.
  - **Event time**—Date and time of the event.
  - **Record ID**—ID of the record of the alert in the database.
  - **Database version**—Version of the database used to generate the alert.
- On the **Details** tab, under **Event initiator**:
  - **File**—Path to the parent process file.

    Clicking the link with the file name or file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:
    - Find events.
    - Find alerts.
    - **Copy value to clipboard**.

    Run the following tasks:
    - Kill process.
    - Kill by unique PID.

- Delete file.
- Get file.
- Get forensics.
- Quarantine file.

- **Process ID**—Identifier of the parent process.
- **Launch parameters**—Parent process startup settings.
- **MD5**—MD5 hash of the parent process file.
- **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the parent process file.

- On the **Details** tab, under **System info**:
  - **Host name**—Name of the host on which the alert was generated.
    Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:
    - Find events.
    - Find alerts.
    - **Copy value to clipboard**.

    Run the following tasks:
    - **Get data** → File, Forensics, Disk image, Memory dump.
    - Kill process.
    - Delete file.
    - Quarantine file.

    Run application.
  - **Host IP**—IP address of the host on which the alert was created.

    If you are using dynamic IP addresses, the field displays the IP address assigned to the host at the moment when the event was created.

    The application does not support IPv6. If you are using IPv6, the IP address of the host is not displayed.
  - **User name**—User account used to complete the action taken on the detected object.
  - **OS name**—Version of the operating system that is being used on the host.

- On the **History** tab, in the table:
  - **Type** is the type of the **Scan: detect processing result** event.
  - **Description**—Description of the event.
  - **Time** is the date and time of the alert processing result.

Clicking the **MD5** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Find on TIP.
- **Find in Storage**.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **SHA256** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Find on TIP.
- **Find on virustotal.com**.
- Find in Storage.
- Create prevention rule.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Information about the "Interpreted file run" event

The window showing information about **Process: interpreted file run** events contains the following details:

- Tree of events.
- Recommendations for processing an event.

- **Process: interpreted file run** section:
  - **IOA tags**—Information about the results of file analysis using the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology: name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert.

    Click the link to display information about the TAA (IOA) rule. If the rule was provided by Kaspersky experts, it contains information about the triggered MITRE technique as well as recommendations for reacting to the event.

    The field is displayed if a TAA (IOA) rule was triggered when the event was created.
  - **File**—Name of the file.
  - **MD5**—MD5 hash of a file.
  - **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of a file.
  - **Size**—Size of the file.
  - **Time created**—Time when the file was created.
  - **Time modified**—Time of last modification of the file.
- **Event initiator** section:
  - **File**—Path to the parent process file.
  - **MD5**—MD5 hash of the parent process file.
  - **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the parent process file.
  - **Process ID**—Identifier of the parent process.
- **System info** section:
  - **Host name**—Name of the host on which the file was run.
  - **Host IP**—IP address of the host on which the file was executed.

    If you are using dynamic IP addresses, the field displays the IP address assigned to the host at the moment when the event was created.

    The application does not support IPv6. If you are using IPv6, the IP address of the host is not displayed.
  - **User name**—Name of the user whose account was used to run the file.
  - **OS name**—Version of the operating system being used on the host.

Clicking the link with the file name or file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.

- Run the following tasks:
  - Kill process.
  - Kill by unique PID.
  - Delete file.
  - Get file.
  - Get forensics.
  - Quarantine file.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Run the following tasks:
  - **Get data** → File, Forensics, Disk image, Memory dump.
  - **Kill process**.
  - **Delete file**.
  - **Quarantine file.**
  - **Run application**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **MD5** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- Find on TIP.
- **Find in Storage**.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the **SHA256** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.

- Find on TIP.
- **Find on virustotal.com**.
- Find in Storage.
- Create prevention rule.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Information about the "AMSI scan" event

The window showing information about an **AMSI scan** event contains the following details:

- Tree of events.
- Recommendations for processing an event.
- In the **AMSI scan** section:
  - **IOA tags**—Information about the results of file analysis using the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology: name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert.

    Click the link to display information about the TAA (IOA) rule. If the rule was provided by Kaspersky experts, it contains information about the triggered MITRE technique as well as recommendations for reacting to the event.

    The field is displayed if a TAA (IOA) rule was triggered when the event was created.
  - **Event time**—Date and time of the event.
  - **Content type**—Type of script.

    The application provides two types of scripts:
    - If the script is presented as text, the **Content type** field shows the *Text* script type.
    - If the script is presented in another format, the **Content type** field displays the *Binary* script type.
  - **Content**—Contents of the script sent to be scanned.

    You can copy this data by clicking **Copy to clipboard** if the data is presented as text or download a file containing the data by clicking **Save to file** if the data has a different format.

    > The **Content** field is displayed in the event information if the application registers signs of targeted attacks.
- In the **Event initiator** section:
  - **File**—Path to the parent process file.

Clicking the link with the file name or file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Run the following tasks:

- Kill process.
- Kill by unique PID.
- Delete file.
- Get file.
- Get forensics.
- Quarantine file.

- **MD5**—MD5 hash of the parent process file.

  Clicking the **MD5** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

  - **Find events**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - Find on TIP.
  - **Find in Storage**.
  - **Create prevention rule**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.

- **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the parent process file.

  Clicking the **SHA256** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

  - **Find events**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - Find on TIP.
  - **Find in Storage**.
  - **Create prevention rule**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.

- In the **System info** section:
  - **Host name**—Name of the host on which the alert was generated.

    Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:
    - Find events.
    - Find alerts.
    - **Copy value to clipboard**.

    Run the following tasks:
    - **Get data** → File, Forensics, Disk image, Memory dump.
    - Kill process.
    - Delete file.
    - Quarantine file.
    - Run application.
  - **Host IP**—IP address of the host on which the alert was created.

    If you are using dynamic IP addresses, the field displays the IP address assigned to the host at the moment when the event was created.

    The application does not support IPv6. If you are using IPv6, the IP address of the host is not displayed.
  - **User name**—User account that was used to make the change in the registry.
  - **OS name**—Version of the operating system that is being used on the host.

Information about the "Interactive command input at the console" event

The window showing information about **Process: console interactive input** events contains the following details:

- Tree of events.
- Recommendations for processing an event.

- **Process: console interactive input** section:
  - **IOA tags**—Information about the results of file analysis using the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology: name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert.

    Click the link to display information about the TAA (IOA) rule. If the rule was provided by Kaspersky experts, it contains information about the triggered MITRE technique as well as recommendations for reacting to the event.

    The field is displayed if a TAA (IOA) rule was triggered when the event was created.
  - **Input type**—Type of input of commands that were passed to the console application.

    The application provides two ways to enter commands:
    - If commands were entered by the user in the console application, the **Input type** field displays the *Console* command input type.
    - If commands were passed to the console application from another application through a pipe, the **Input type** field displays the *Pipe* command input type.

    > If you are using the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application as the Endpoint Agent component, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform receives the data required to populate the **Input** field only when Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is integrated with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.10 for Windows. When integrating the application with older versions of the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows application, the field is not displayed in the event information.

    - **Input text**—Text entered at the command line (for example, CMD) on the host with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows application.

    You can copy this text by clicking the **Copy to clipboard** button located in the **Input text** field.
  - **Event time**—Time when the event was detected.
- **Event initiator** section:
  - **File**—Path to the parent process file.

    Clicking the link with the file name or file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:
    - Find events.
    - Find alerts.
    - **Copy value to clipboard**.

    Run the following tasks:
    - Kill process.
    - Kill by unique PID.
    - Delete file.
    - Get file.

- Get forensics.
- Quarantine file.

- **MD5**—MD5 hash of the parent process file.
  Clicking the **MD5** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:
  - **Find events**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - Find on TIP.
  - **Find in Storage**.
  - **Create prevention rule**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.
- **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the parent process file.
  Clicking the **SHA256** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:
  - **Find events**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - Find on TIP.
  - **Find in Storage**.
  - **Create prevention rule**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.

- **System info** section:
  - **Host name**—Name of the host on which the command was entered.
    Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:
    - Find events.
    - Find alerts.
    - **Copy value to clipboard**.

    Run the following tasks:
    - **Get data** → File, Forensics, Disk image, Memory dump.
    - Kill process.
    - Delete file.

- Quarantine file.
- Run application.

- **Host IP**—IP address of the host on which the command was entered.

  If you are using dynamic IP addresses, the field displays the IP address assigned to the host at the moment when the event was created.

  The application does not support IPv6. If you are using IPv6, the IP address of the host is not displayed.

- **User name**—User account that was used to enter the command.
- **OS name**—Version of the operating system that is being used on the host.

Managing Endpoint Agent host information

The application that is used as the Endpoint Agent component is installed on individual computers (hereinafter also referred to as "hosts") in the IT infrastructure of the organization. The application continuously monitors processes running on those hosts, active network connections, and files that are being modified.

Users with the **Senior security officer**, **Security officer**, **Security auditor**, **Local administrator**, or **Administrator** role can assess how regularly data is received from hosts with the Endpoint Agent component on the **Endpoint Agents** tab of the web interface window of the Central Node server for tenants to whose data the user has access. If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the web interface of the PCN server displays the list of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component for the PCN and all connected SCNs.

Users with the **Local administrator** and **Administrator** roles can configure the display of how regularly data is received from hosts with Endpoint Agent for tenants to whose data they have access.

If suspicious network activity is detected, users with the **Senior security officer** role can isolate from the network any host with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent, for tenants to whose data the user has access. In this case, the connection between the server with the Central Node component and a host with the Endpoint Agent component will not be interrupted.

In order to provide support in case of problems with the Endpoint Agent component, Technical Support staff may ask you to perform the following actions for debugging purposes (including in Technical Support Mode):

- Activate collection of extended diagnostic information.
- Modify the settings of individual application components.
- Modify the settings for storing and sending the obtained diagnostic information.
- Configure network traffic to be intercepted and saved to a file.

Technical Support staff will provide all the information needed to perform these operations (description of the sequence of steps, settings to be modified, configuration files, scripts, additional command line functionality, debugging modules, special-purpose utilities, and other resources) and inform you about the scope of data obtained for debugging purposes. The retrieved diagnostic information is saved on the user's computer. The retrieved data is not automatically sent to Kaspersky.

The operations listed above should be performed only when instructed by and under the supervision of Technical Support experts. Unsupervised changes to application settings performed in ways other than those described in this manual or according to the instructions of Technical Support experts can slow down or crash the operating system, reduce computer security, or compromise the availability and integrity of data being processed.

Viewing the table of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component

The table of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component is located in the **Endpoint Agents** section of the application web interface window.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the table contains information about hosts with the Endpoint Agent component connected to the PCN and all SCN servers.

The table can display the following data:

- Number of hosts and activity indicators of the Endpoint Agent component:
  - **Critical inactivity** is the number of hosts from which latest data was received a very long time ago.
  - **Warning** is the number hosts from which latest data was received a long time ago.
  - **Normal activity** is the number of hosts from which latest data was recently received.
- **Host**—Name of the host with the Endpoint Agent component.
- **Server** is the name of the server to which the host with the Endpoint Agent component is connected.
  This column is displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
- **IP** is the IP address of the host where the Endpoint Agent component is installed.
- **OS** is the version of the operating system that is installed on the computer with the Endpoint Agent application.
- **Version**—Version of the Endpoint Agent component installed.
- **Activity** is the activity indicator of the Endpoint Agent application.
  - **Normal activity** for hosts from which latest data was recently received.
  - **Warning** for hosts from which latest data was received a long time ago.
  - **Critical inactivity** for hosts from which latest data was received an extremely long time ago.

Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Filter by this value**.
- **Exclude from filter**.
- Run the following tasks:
  - **Kill process**.
  - **Delete file**.
  - **Kill by unique PID**.
  - **Get file**.
  - **Get forensics.**
  - **Quarantine file**.
  - **Run application**.
- **New prevention rule**.
- **Isolate from network**.
- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

The list of available actions depends on the Endpoint Agent component type (for Windows or Linux), version, and activity indicator.

Clicking the link with the IP opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Filter by this value**.
- **Exclude from filter**.
- **Find alerts**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking a link in any other column of the table opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Filter by this value**.
- **Exclude from filter**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Configuring the display of the table of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component

You can show or hide columns and change the order of columns in the table of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component.

To configure the display of the table of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. In the heading part of the table, click .
3. This opens the **Customize table** window.
4. If you want to show a column in the table, select the check box next to the name of the parameter that you want displayed in the table.

   If you want to hide a parameter in the table, clear the check box.

   > At least one check box must be selected.

5. If you want to change the order of columns in the table, move the mouse cursor to the row with the relevant parameter, click and move the row to its new place.
6. If you want to restore default table display settings, click **Default**.
7. Click **Apply**.

The display of the table of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component is configured.

Viewing information about a host

To view information about a host with the Endpoint Agent component:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Select the host for which you want to view information.

This opens a window containing information about the host.

The window contains the following information:

- Recommendations group:
  - Clicking the **Alerts** link opens the **Alerts** section with the search condition containing the selected host.
  - Clicking the **Events** link opens the **Threat Hunting** section with the search condition containing the selected host.
  - Clicking the **Events affected by prevention rules** link opens the **Threat Hunting** section with the search condition containing the selected host and the **Blocked application (prevention rule)** event type.

  The **Events affected by prevention rules** link is not displayed in the information about hosts that use Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux as the Endpoint Agent components.

- On the **Details** tab, the **Host** section displays the following information:
  - **Name** is the name of the host with the Endpoint Agent component.
  - **IP** is the IP address of the host where the Endpoint Agent component is installed.
  - **OS**—Version of the operating system on the host with the Endpoint Agent component installed.
- On the **Details** tab, the **Endpoint Agent** section displays the following information:
  - **Version**—Version of the Endpoint Agent component installed.
- **Activity** is the activity indicator of the Endpoint Agent component. Possible values:
  - **Normal activity** for hosts from which latest data was recently received.
  - **Warning** for hosts from which latest data was received a long time ago.
  - **Critical inactivity** for hosts from which latest data was received an extremely long time ago.
- **Server**—Name of the SCN or PCN server. Only displayed in distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
- **Connected to server**—Name of the Central Node server.
- **Last connection**—time of the last connection to the Central Node, SCN, or PCN server.
- **License key status**—For example, "OK".
- On the **Prevention rules** tab, you can see MD5 or SHA256 hashes for files that were prevented from running or opening on the host. The following information is displayed:
  - **Name**—Name of the file.
  - **State**—State of the prevention rule.
  - **Hash**—Hashing algorithm.

The **Prevention rules** tab is not displayed in the information for hosts with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux.

- On the **Tasks** tab, you can see which tasks were run on the host. The following information is displayed:
  - **Time created**—Task creation date and time.
  - **Name**—Task name.
  - **Details**—Full path to the file or data stream for which the task was created.
  - **State**—Task completion status.

Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Run the following tasks:
  - **Kill process**.
  - **Delete file**.
  - **Get file**.
  - **Get forensics.**
  - **Quarantine file**.
  - **Run application**.
- **New prevention rule**.
- **Isolate from network**.
- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

For hosts with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux, the list displayed by clicking the link with the host name includes only **Get file**, **Run application**, **Find events**, and **Find alerts**.

Clicking the link with the IP opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find alerts**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by host name

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by host name:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.
   This opens the table of hosts.
2. Click the **Host** link to open the filter configuration window.
3. If you want to display only isolated hosts, select the **Show isolated Endpoint Agents only** check box.
4. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:
   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**
5. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the host name.
6. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
7. If you want to delete the filter condition, click the button to the right of the field.
8. Click **Apply**.

   The filter configuration window closes.

   The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component that have been isolated from the network

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component that are isolated from the network:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.
   This opens the table of hosts.
2. Click the **Host** link to open the filter configuration window.

3. Select the **Show isolated Endpoint Agents only** check box.
4. Click **Apply**.

   The filter configuration window closes.

   The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by PCN and SCN server names

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can filter or find hosts with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component based on the names of PCN and SCN servers to which those hosts are connected.

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by the names of PCN and SCN servers:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of hosts.
2. Click the **Servers** link to open the filter configuration window.
3. Select check boxes next to names of servers by which you want to filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component.
4. Click **Apply**.

   The filter configuration window closes.

   The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by computer IP address

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by IP address of the computer on which the application is installed:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of hosts.
2. Click the **IP** link to open the filter configuration window.

3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:

   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**

4. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the computer IP address. You can enter the IP address or subnet mask in IPv4 format (for example, `192.0.0.1` or `192.0.0.0/16`).

5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.

6. If you want to delete the filter condition, click the button to the right of the field.

7. Click **Apply**.

   The filter configuration window closes.

   The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by operating system version on the computer

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by version of the operating system installed on the computer:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of hosts.

2. Click the **OS** link to open the filter settings window.

3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:

   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**

4. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the operating system version.

5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.

6. If you want to delete the filter condition, click the button to the right of the field.

7. Click **Apply**.

   The filter configuration window closes.

The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by component version

You can filter hosts by version of the application that is used in the role of the Endpoint Agent component.

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by component version:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.
   This opens the table of hosts.
2. Click the **Version** link to open the filter settings window.
3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:
   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**
4. In the entry field, specify one or more characters of the version of the application that is used as the Endpoint Agent component.
5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
6. If you want to delete the filter condition, click the button to the right of the field.
7. Click **Apply**.

   The filter configuration window closes.

   The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by their activity

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by their activity:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.
   This opens the table of hosts.

2. Click the **Activity** link to open the filter configuration window.

   Select check boxes next to one or multiple activity indicators:

   - **Normal activity**, if you want to find hosts from which the last data was recently received.
   - **Warning**, if you want to find hosts from which the last data was received a long time ago.
   - **Critical inactivity**, if you want to find hosts from which the last data was received an extremely long time ago.

3. Click **Apply**.

The filter configuration window closes.

The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Quickly creating a filter for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component

To quickly create a filter for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of hosts.

2. Do the following to quickly add filter conditions to the filter being created:

   a. Position the mouse cursor on the link containing the table column value that you want to add as a filter condition.

   b. Left-click it.

   This opens a list of actions to perform on the value.

   c. In the list that opens, select one of the following actions:

   - **Filter by this value**, if you want to include this value in the filter condition.
   - **Exclude from filter**, if you want to exclude the value from the filter condition.

3. If you want to add several filter conditions to the filter being created, perform the actions to quickly add each filter condition to the filter being created.

The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

Resetting the filter for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component

To clear the Endpoint Agent host filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click to the right of the header of the table column for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

   The selected filters are cleared.

   The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

Removing hosts with the Endpoint Agent component

To remove one or more hosts from the **Endpoint Agents** table:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Select check boxes next to one or more hosts that you want to remove. You can select all hosts by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.

   A control panel appears in the lower part of the window.
3. Click **Delete**.
4. This opens the action confirmation window; in that window, click **Yes**.

   The selected hosts are removed from the **Endpoint Agents** table.

When hosts are removed the following changes are made in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform:

- You cannot create a task, prevention rule, or network isolation rule for a removed host.
- If a prevention rule was previously created for a host, its name in the rule window (the **Prevent on** field) is hidden when the host is removed. The rule continues to apply.

  If this host reconnects to the Central Node server, the host name is restored in the **Prevent on** field and the prevention rule is applied to it again.

- If a network isolation rule was previously created for a host, it continues to apply until the time specified in the rule expires.

  When this host reconnects to the Central Node, the rule is reapplied to this host.

- If an object was quarantined by the **Quarantine file** task on one host only and that host was removed, the **Restore all** button in task window is inactive because the file cannot be restored on a removed host.

Event search by the name of the removed host remains available.

Configuring activity indicators of the Endpoint Agent component

Users with the **Local administrator** and **Administrator** roles can define what durations of inactivity of the application that is used as the Endpoint Agent component are to be considered normal, low, or very low activity, and can configure the activity indicators for the application. Users with the **Security auditor** role can only view the settings of application activity indicators. Users with the **Senior security officer** or **Security officer** role can see activity indicators that you configured for the Endpoint Agent component in the **Activity** field of the Endpoint Agent host table in the **Endpoint Agents** section of the application web interface.

To configure activity indicators for the Endpoint Agent component:

1. Sign in to the application web interface under the **Local administrator**, **Administrator** or **Senior security officer** account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Endpoint Agents** subsection.
3. In the fields under the section name, enter the number of days of inactivity of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component that you want to display as **Warning** and **Critical inactivity**.
4. Click **Apply**.

Activity indicators of the Endpoint Agent component are configured.

Supported interpreters and processes

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application monitors the execution of scripts by the following interpreters:

- cmd.exe
- reg.exe
- regedit.exe
- regedt32.exe
- cscript.exe
- wscript.exe
- mmc.exe
- msiexec.exe

- mshta.exe
- rundll32.exe
- runlegacycplelevated.exe
- control.exe
- explorer.exe
- regsvr32.exe
- wwahost.exe
- powershell.exe
- java.exe and javaw.exe (only if started with the –jar option)
- InstallUtil.exe
- msdt.exe
- python.exe
- ruby.exe
- rubyw.exe

Information about the processes monitored by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application is presented in the table below.

Processes and the file extensions that they open

Process	File extensions
winword.exe	rtf doc dot docm docx dotx dotm docb
excel.exe	xls xlt xlm xlsx xlsm xltx xltm xlsb xla xlam xll xlw

Process	File extensions
powerpnt.exe	ppt pot pps pptx pptm potx potm ppam ppsx ppsm sldx sldm
acrord32.exe	pdf
wordpad.exe	docx pdf
chrome.exe	pdf
MicrosoftEdge.exe	pdf

Network isolation of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component

When responding to threats, users with the **Senior security officer** role can isolate hosts with detected objects that require your attention during the incident investigation.

Network isolation is not a Threat Response action by itself. The security officer should take steps to investigate the incident on his own while the network isolation is active for the host. You can configure the duration of host network isolation when you create the network isolation rule.

If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows as the Endpoint Agent component, network isolation is available for hosts with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent application version 3.8 and later.

To ensure correct operation of an isolated host, it is recommended to meet the following conditions:

- Create a local administrator account on the host or save the domain account data to the cache before enabling the network isolation rule.
- Do not change the certificate and IP address of the server with the Central Node component while the network isolation rule is enabled.

Isolated hosts can access the following resources over the network:

- Server with the Central Node component.
- Source of application database updates (Kaspersky update server or custom source).

- Servers of the KSN service.
- Hosts added to network isolation rule exclusions.

In cases when the Endpoint Agent component is turned off on the host, and also for a certain period of time after turning on th component or restarting the computer with the component, network isolation of the host may be inactive.

Keep in mind several limitations when applying network isolation.

Creating a network isolation rule

To create a network isolation rule:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of hosts.

2. Select the host for which you want to enable or disable the network isolation rule.

   This opens a window containing information about the host.

3. Click **Isolate**.

4. In the **Disable isolation after** field, enter the time in hours (1 to 9999) during which network isolation of the host will be active.

5. In the **Exclusions for the host isolation rule** settings group, in the **Traffic direction** list, select the direction of network traffic that must not be blocked:

   - **Incoming/Outgoing**.
   - **Incoming**.
   - **Outgoing**.

6. In the **IP** field, enter the IP address whose network traffic must not be blocked.

   If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in the role of the Endpoint Agent component, you can use a proxy server for the connection of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. When you add this proxy server to exclusions, network resources that can be accessed through the proxy server are also added to exclusions. If network resources that are accessed through the proxy server are added to exclusions, but the proxy server itself is not, such exclusions do not work.

7. If you selected **Incoming** or **Outgoing**, in the **Ports** field, enter the connection ports.

8. If you want to add more than one exclusion, click **Add** and repeat the steps to fill in the **Traffic direction**, **IP** and **Ports** fields.

9. Click **Save**.

The host will be isolated from the network.

You can also create a network isolation rule by clicking the **Isolate <host name>** link in the event information and in the alert information.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot create network isolation rules.

The network isolation feature is not available for hosts where Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux are used as the Endpoint Agent component.

Adding an exclusion from a network isolation rule

To add an exclusion to a previously created network isolation rule:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of hosts.

2. Select the isolated host for which you want to create an exclusion from the network isolation rule.

   This opens a window containing information about the host.

3. Click the **Add to exclusions** link to expand the **Exclusions for the host isolation rule** settings group.

4. Select the direction of network traffic that must not be blocked:

   - **Incoming/Outgoing**.
   - **Incoming**.
   - **Outgoing**.

5. In the **IP** field, enter the IP address whose network traffic must not be blocked.

6. If you select **Incoming** or **Outgoing**, in the **Ports** field, enter the connection ports.

7. If you want to add more than one exclusion, click **Add** and repeat the steps to fill in the **Traffic direction**, **IP** and **Ports** fields. Click **Save**.

The network isolation rule exclusion will be added.

If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows in the role of the Endpoint Agent component, you can use a proxy server for the connection of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. When you add this proxy server to exclusions, network resources that can be accessed through the proxy server are also added to exclusions. If network resources that are accessed through the proxy server are added to exclusions, but the proxy server itself is not, such exclusions do not work.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot create exclusions from a network isolation rule.

Deleting a network isolation rule

To delete a network isolation rule:

1. Select the **Endpoint Agents** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of hosts.

2. Click the name of the host for which you want to delete a network isolation rule to open the action menu for the host.

3. Select the **Delete host isolation rule** action.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

4. Click **Yes**.

The network isolation rule for the host is deleted.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot remove network isolation rules.

Limitations that are relevant to network isolation

Some limitations apply when network isolation is used:

- When a network isolation rule is enabled on a host, all current connections are disconnected and a VPN connection becomes unavailable.
- If the application administrator replaces the certificate of the server with the Central Node component while a network isolation rule is enabled, you cannot disable the rule.
- The application blocks the connection of isolated hosts with an Active Directory server. If the operating system settings require a connection to Active Directory services for authorization, the user of an isolated host will not be able to log in to the system.

Automatically sending files from Kaspersky Endpoint Agent hosts to be scanned by the Sandbox component in accordance with Kaspersky TAA (IOA) rules

If this functionality is enabled, the application can automatically send files from hosts with the Endpoint Agent component for scanning with the Sandbox component in accordance with Kaspersky TAA (IOA) rules. Files are sent in accordance with the following principle:

1. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform checks the event database and marks events that match TAA (IOA) rules.
2. If relevant conditions are found in TAA (IOA) rules, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform sends files for scanning by the Sandbox component.

   Requests for scanning files by the Sandbox component are not displayed in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface.

3. Based on the results of the scan, the application can add alerts to the alert database.

   You can view alerts created in this way by filtering alerts by the **Details** – **Autosend to Sandbox** attribute.

If automatic sending of files to be scanned by the Sandbox component is enabled, the volume of traffic processed by the component can become very large. If the Sandbox component server cannot support the increased load, some of the objects from the processing request queue are replaced with requests for processing files that are automatically sent for scanning.

To avoid dropping objects from the processing request queue, you can:

- Deploy additional Sandbox servers.
- Disable automatically sending files to be scanned by the Sandbox component.
- Add to exclusions those TAA (IOA) rules that most frequently cause Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to send files for scanning by the Sandbox component.

  Information about rules that are most frequently used by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to send files for scanning by the Sandbox component is displayed in the **Sent to Sandbox by TAA rules** widget. You can add this widget to your current layout.

  When you add a file to exclusions, event marking and creation of alerts in accordance with this rule is also stopped.

Files that can be automatically sent for scanning by the Sandbox component are listed in the following table.

List of files that can be automatically sent for scanning by the Sandbox component

Event type	File type
Process started	File of the started process and file of its parent process.
Module loaded	File of the loaded module and file of its parent process.
Connection to remote host	File of the parent process.
Blocked application (prevention rule)	File of the application that was blocked from running, and file of its parent process.
Document blocked	File of the document that was blocked from running, and file of its parent process.
File changed	Created, deleted, or modified file and file of the parent process.
System event log	File of the process (only for Linux).
Registry modified	File of the parent process.
Port listened	File of the parent process.
Driver loaded	File of the loaded driver.
Scan: detect	Detected file and file of its parent process (if any).
Scan: detect processing result	Detected file and file of its parent process (if any).
AMSI scan	File of the process.
Process: interpreted file run	File that was started and file of its parent process.
Process: console interactive input	File of the parent process.

Information about files sent for scanning by the Sandbox component is not displayed in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface.

Enabling and disabling the automatic sending of files from hosts with the Endpoint Agent component to be scanned by the Sandbox component

To enable or disable automatically sending files to be scanned by the Sandbox component in accordance with Kaspersky TAA (IOA) rules:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Endpoint Agents** subsection.
2. Under **Send files to Sandbox automatically**:
   - Select the **Send files** check box if you want files to be sent automatically.

     This function is enabled by default.
   - Clear the **Send files** check box if you do not want files to be sent automatically.

     Disabling this functionality does not affect the functioning of TAA (IOA) rules; only automatic sending of files is disabled.
3. Click **Apply**.

Automatically sending files to be scanned by the Sandbox component in accordance with Kaspersky TAA (IOA) rules is enabled or disabled.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, settings for automatically sending files for scanning by the Sandbox component in accordance with Kaspersky TAA (IOA) rules configured on the PCN server are also applied on SCN servers connected to that PCN server. If necessary, you can enable or disable the automatic sending of files on each selected SCN server individually.

Selecting operating systems to use when scanning objects in Sandbox

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can select a set of operating systems used as the basis for creating tasks for scanning objects by the Sandbox component. The Sandbox server must have virtual machines installed that match the selected set.

You can view a list of Sandbox servers and virtual machines deployed on a server.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the list of Sandbox servers and settings for a set of operating systems. Users with the **Security officer** role cannot view this section.

Viewing the table of servers with the Sandbox component

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot view the table of servers with the Sandbox component.

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can view the table of servers with the Sandbox component.

To view the table of servers with the Sandbox component:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Sandbox servers** subsection.
2. Select the **Servers** tab.

   A table is displayed with a list of Sandbox servers.

The table contains the following information:

- **IP and name**—IP address or fully qualified domain name of the server with the Sandbox component.
- **Authorization**—Status of the request to connect to the Sandbox component.
- **Status**—Status of the connection to the Sandbox component.
- **Certificate fingerprint**—Certificate fingerprint of the server with the Sandbox component.
- **Virtual machines**—List of virtual machines created on the server.

Selecting operating systems to use when scanning objects in Sandbox

To select the set of operating systems:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Sandbox servers** subsection.
2. Go to the **Settings** tab.
3. Under **OS set**, select one of the following options:
   - **Windows XP, Windows 7, Windows 10**.
   - **CentOS 7.8, Windows XP, Windows 7, Windows 10**.
   - **Astra Linux 1.7, Windows XP, Windows 7, Windows 10**.
   - **Custom**.

4. If you selected **Custom**, under **Set composition**, select the check boxes next to the operating systems that you want to include in the set.

   Custom operating systems are displayed in the list if virtual machines with these operating systems are installed on the Sandbox server. Preset operating systems are always displayed in the list, but if virtual machines running these operating systems are not deployed, the **Unknown** status is displayed next to the name of the operating system.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will create tasks for scanning objects in Sandbox in accordance with the selected set.

If the set of operating systems installed on the Sandbox server does not match the set selected on the Central Node server, objects are not sent to be scanned by that Sandbox server. If multiple Sandbox servers are connected to the Central Node server, the application sends objects to those Sandbox servers whose installed operating systems match the set selected on Central Node.

You can change the set of operating systems in the course of using the application. In this case, you need to make sure that the configuration of the Sandbox server satisfies hardware requirements.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the settings of the operating system set configured on the PCN server are not applied to SCN servers connected to that PCN server. You can select the set of operating systems for each PCN and SCN server individually.

Managing tasks

In the web interface of the application, users with the **Senior security officer** role can manage files and applications on hosts by creating and removing tasks.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, **Kill process**, **Get forensics**, **Get registry key**, **Start YARA scan**, **Service management**, **Run application**, **Delete file**, **Restore file from quarantine**, **Quarantine file** tasks can have one of the following types:

- **Global**—Created on the PCN server. These tasks apply to hosts that are connected to this PCN server and to all SCN servers that are connected to this PCN server. Tasks belong to the tenant for which the user is managing the program using the web interface.

- **Local**—Created on the SCN server. These tasks apply only to hosts that are connected to this SCN server. Tasks belong to the tenant for which the user is managing the program using the web interface.

Get file, **Get process memory dump**, **Get NTFS metafiles**, **Get disk image**, **Get memory dump** tasks run only on the specified host, regardless of the application operating mode.

The maximum task execution time is 24 hours. If the task did not complete in this time, execution is paused.

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can manage all tasks for tenants to whose data they have access.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to tasks.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the task table and information about the selected task.

Viewing the task table

The tasks table contains a list of created tasks and is in the **Tasks** section of the application web interface window. You can view all tasks or only tasks created by you (current user).

You can show or hide tasks created by you using the **Only mine** toggle switch in the upper right corner of the window. The display of tasks created by the current user is enabled by default.

The tasks table contains the following information:

- **Time**—Task creation date and time.
- **Type** is the type of the task depending on the operating mode of the application and the server on which the task was created.

  Tasks may be one of the following types:

  - **Global**—Created on the PCN server. These tasks apply to hosts that are connected to this PCN server and to all SCN servers that are connected to this PCN server. Tasks belong to the tenant for which the user is managing the program using the web interface.
  - **Local**—Created on the SCN server. These tasks apply only to hosts that are connected to this SCN server. Tasks belong to the tenant for which the user is managing the program using the web interface.
- **Name**—Task name.

  Clicking the link with the name of the task type opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

  - **Filter by this value**.
  - **Exclude from filter**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.
- **Details**—full path to the file or data stream for which the task was created, or the path to a shared network resource.

  Clicking the link containing information about the path to the file or data stream opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

  - **Filter by this value**.
  - **Exclude from filter**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.
- **Servers**—Name of the server with the PCN or SCN role on which the task is being run.

  This field is displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
- **Hosts**—Name of the host on which the task is run.

  This field is displayed only if you are using a standalone Central Node server.

- **Created by**—Name of the user who created the task.

  If only tasks created by the current user are displayed, this column is not displayed.

- **State**—Task completion status.
  A task can have one of the following statuses:

  - **Pending**.
  - **In process**.
  - **Completed**.

Viewing information about a task

To view task details:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.
   This opens the task table.
2. Select the task for which you want to view information.

This opens a window containing information about the task.

The window can contain the following information depending on the task type:

- **State**—Task completion status.
- **Description**—Task description.
- **File path**—Path to the file or data stream.
- **Information type**—Type of the collected data.
- **Registry key**—Path to the registry key that you want to get.
- **Process ID**—Process identifier.
- **Mask**—Mask of files that are included in the data list.
- **Metafiles**—NTFS metafiles that you want to get.
- **Volume**—Name of the drive from which you want to receive metafiles, disk image, or memory dump.
- **Share path**—Path to a shared network resource.
- **Stored file**—link to the file received as a result of the task execution.
- **Maximum nesting level**—Maximum nesting level of folders which the application searches for files.
- **Exclusions**—Folders in which searching and scanning files is prohibited.

- **Scan scope**—Folders which are scanned by YARA rules.
- **Action**—Action that was performed for the service.

  The application supports the following operations with services:

  - **Start**.
  - **Stop**.
  - **Pause**.
  - **Resume**.
  - **Delete**.
  - **Modify startup type**.
- **Maximum scan duration**—Maximum task execution time, after which the scan is stopped.
- **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of the file that you want to receive.
- **Run as**—Option to run the application using the name of the local system.
- **Created by**—Name of the user who created the task.
- **Tenant**—Name of the tenant. Displayed only when you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
- **Time created**—Time when the task was created.
- **Time completed**—Task completion time.
- **Report**—Task result on selected hosts.

Creating a get file task

You can retrieve a file from selected hosts with the Endpoint Agent component. To do so, you must create a get file task.

The file to be downloaded must not exceed 100 MB. If the file exceeds 100 MB, the task finishes with an error.

To create a get file task:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the task table.
2. Click the **Add** button and select **File** in the **Get data** drop-down list.

   This opens the task creation window.

3. Configure the following settings:

   a. **File path**—Path to the file that you want to receive.

      If the requested file is linked to other NTFS data streams, running the task yields all files of NTFS data streams that the requested file is linked to.

      You can also specify the path to an alternate data stream of this file. In this case, you receive only the files of the specified stream.

      > When creating a task, the application does not check if the specified path to the file that you want to receive is valid.

   b. **MD5/SHA256**—MD5- or SHA256 hash of the file that you want to receive. This field is optional.

   c. If you do not want to scan the file, clear the **Send for scanning** check box.

      The check box is selected by default.

   d. **Description** is the task description. This field is optional.

   e. **Host** is the name or IP address of the host.

      You can specify only one host.

4. Click **Add**.

The get file task will be created. The task runs automatically after it is created.

A file received through this task will be placed in Storage. If the get file task completed successfully, you can download the received file to your local computer.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the archive is placed in Storage of the Central Node server to which the host specified in the **Host** field is connected.

You can also download the file from the task report window.

To download the file from the task report window:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the task table.

2. Open the get file task that you want to download.

3. In the **Report** section, click the name or IP address of the host.

   This opens a window containing information about the file.

4. Click **Download**.

The file will be saved to your local computer in the browser's downloads folder.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot create get file tasks.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to tasks.

Creating a forensic collection task

You can get lists of files, processes, and autorun points from selected Endpoint Agent hosts. To do so, you must create a forensic collection task.

To create a forensic collection task:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the task table.

2. Click the **Add** button and select **Forensics** in the **Get data** drop-down list.

   This opens the task creation window.

3. Configure the following settings:

   a. **Information type** is the type of collected data. Select the check box next to one, multiple, or all settings:

   - **Processes list** if you want to get a list of processes running on the host at the time of the task execution.
   - **Autorun points list** if you want to get a list of autorun points.

     The autorun points list includes information about applications added to the startup folder or registered in the Run keys of the registry, as well as applications that are automatically run at startup of a host with the Endpoint Agent component and when a user logs in to the operating system on the specified hosts.

     List of supported autorun points

     Kaspersky Endpoint Agent supports gathering data for the following autorun points:

     - Logon.
     - Run.
     - Explorer.
     - Shell.
     - Office.

- Internet Explorer®.
- Tasks.
- Services.
- Drivers.
- Telephony.
- Cryptography.
- Debuggers.
- COM.
- Session Manager.
- Network.
- LSA.
- Applications.
- Codecs.
- Shellex.
- WMI.
- Unspecified.

Kaspersky Endpoint Security supports collecting the aforementioned autorun points as well as the following:

- BootLog
- Browsers
- DriverLog
- EfiLoader
- GroupPolicy
- Logon
- OsLoader
- OsUpdate
- Printer

- Process
- Scheduler

- **File list** if you want to get a list of files stored in the selected folder or in all host folders at the time of the task execution.

b. If you have selected the **File list** check box, in the **Source type** group of settings, select one of the following options:

- **All local disks** if you want the list of files to include files stored in all folders on local disks at the time of the task execution.
- **Directory** if you want the file list to include files stored in the specified folder and its subfolders at the time when the task is run.

c. If you selected **Directory**, in the **Start directory** field, specify the path to the folder from which the file search should start.

You can use the following prefixes:

- System environment variables.
- User-defined environment variables.

  When using user-defined environment variables, the list of files includes information about files in folders of all users who have set the specified environment variables. If user-defined environment variables override system environment variables, the list of files includes information about files in folders based on the values of system environment variables.

d. In the **Hosts** field, enter the IP address or name of the host to which you want to assign the task.

You can specify multiple hosts.

> If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in the role of the Endpoint Agent component, the forensics collection task can be assigned only to hosts running Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows version 3.10 and later. Getting a list of autorun points is only supported on hosts with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows 3.12 and higher.

If necessary, you can specify the following search criteria for files in folders:

- **Mask** is the mask of files to be included in the list of files.
- **Alternative data streams** is the check box that enables recording information about alternate data streams in the file list.

  If the requested file is linked to other NTFS data streams, running the task yields all files of NTFS data streams that the requested file is linked to.

  The check box is selected by default.
- **Maximum nesting level** is the maximum nesting level of folders in which the application searches for files.
- **Exclusions** is the path to the folders in which you want to prohibit the search for information about files.
- **Description** is the task description.

4. Click **Add**.

The forensic collection task is created. The task runs automatically after it is created.

As a result of the task, the application places a ZIP archive in Storage; the archive contains a file with the selected data. If the task completed successfully, you can download the archive to your local computer.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot create forensic collection tasks.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to tasks.

Creating a registry key retrieval task

You can retrieve a registry key from selected hosts with the Endpoint Agent component. To do so, you must create a registry key retrieval task.

To create a registry key retrieval task:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.
   This opens the task table.
2. Click the **Add** button and select **Registry key** in the **Get data** drop-down list.
   This opens the task creation window.
3. Configure the following settings:
   a. **Registry key** is the registry key that you want to get.
      You can enter the registry key in one of the following formats:
      - Relative to the root key.
        For example, \REGISTRY\MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\WindowsUpdate\Orchestrator.
      - Relative with full name of the root key.
        For example, HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\WindowsUpdate\Orchestrator.
      - Relative with an abbreviation instead of the full name of the root key.
        For example, HKLM\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\WindowsUpdate\Orchestrator.

      If you want to get data from HKEY_CURRENT_USER, you must specify HKEY_USERS and the SID of the user: HKEY_USERS\<SID of the user>.

   b. **Description** is the task description. This field is optional.
   c. In the **Hosts** field, enter the name or IP address of the host to which you want to assign the task.
      You can specify multiple hosts.

If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in the role of the Endpoint Agent component, the registry key retrieval task can be assigned only to hosts running Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows version 3.13 and later.

4. Click **Add**.

The registry key retrieval task is created. The task runs automatically after it is created.

As a result of the task, the application places a ZIP archive in Storage; the archive contains a .reg file, which contains a list of all registry keys and values under the key that was specified when creating the task. You can download the archive to your local computer.

If the task results in an error, the archive file contains the description of the error.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot create this task.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to tasks.

Creating an NTFS metafile retrieval task

You can retrieve NTFS metafiles from selected hosts with the Endpoint Agent component. To do so, you must create an NTFS metafile retrieval task.

To create an NTFS metafile retrieval task:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the task table.

2. Click the **Add** button and select **NTFS metafiles** in the **Get data** drop-down list.

   This opens the task creation window.

3. Configure the following settings:

   a. **Metafiles** is the list of metafiles that you can get using the task. Select the relevant metafile by selecting the corresponding check box.

   You can select multiple metafiles.

   b. **Volume** is the name of the disk from which you want to get metafiles.

   By default, the system disk is specified. You can enter the path to a different disk in the `<drive letter>:` format.

   c. **Description** is the task description. This field is optional.

   d. **Host**is the name or IP address of the host to which you want to assign the task.

   You can specify only one host.

If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in the role of the Endpoint Agent component, the NTFS metafile retrieval task can be assigned only to hosts running Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows version 3.13 and later.

4. Click **Add**.

   The NTFS metafile creation task is created. The task runs automatically after it is created.

When the task finishes, the application places a ZIP archive containing the selected metafiles in Storage. You can download the archive to your local computer.

If the task results in an error, the archive file contains the description of the error.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the archive is placed in Storage of the Central Node server to which the host specified in the **Host** field is connected.

If downloading selected metafiles exhausts Storage capacity, objects in Storage will be rotated. If a metafile is larger than total Storage capacity, it is not downloaded

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot create this task. Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to tasks.

Creating a process memory dump retrieval task

You can retrieve a process memory dump from selected hosts with the Endpoint Agent component. To do so, you must create a process memory dump retrieval task.

To create a process memory dump retrieval task:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the task table.

2. Click the **Add** button and select **Process memory dump** in the **Get data** drop-down list.

   This opens the task creation window.

3. Configure the following settings:

   a. **Process ID** is the ID of the process for which you want to get a memory dump.

   b. **MD5/SHA256** is the MD5 or SHA256 hash of the file of the process of which you want to get a memory dump. This field is optional.

   c. **Description** is the task description. This field is optional.

   d. **Host**is the name or IP address of the host to which you want to assign the task.

      You can specify only one host.

If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in the role of the Endpoint Agent component, the process memory dump retrieval task can be assigned only to hosts running Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows version 3.13 and later.

4. Click **Add**.

   The process memory dump retrieval task is created. The task runs automatically after it is created.

The task creates a ZIP archive in Storage, which contains a file with information about the process and a process memory dump file. You can download the archive to your local computer.

If the task results in an error, the archive file contains the description of the error.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the archive is placed in Storage of the Central Node server to which the host specified in the **Host** field is connected.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot create this task.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to tasks.

Creating a disk image retrieval task

You can retrieve a disk image from selected Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows host. To do so, you must create an NTFS disk image retrieval task.

The resulting file can be saved only to a shared network resource.

To create a disk image retrieval task:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the task table.

2. Click the **Add** button and select **Disk image** in the **Get data** drop-down list.

   This opens the task creation window.

3. Configure the following settings:

   a. **Share path**—path to a shared network resource.

      You need to specify the path in the Universal Naming Convention (UNC) format: `\\server\share\path`.

      If the last folder with the specified name is absent, Kaspersky Endpoint Agent will create one. If creation is unsuccessful, an error will be displayed in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

   b. **User name**—user name of the account used to access the shared network resource.

   c. **Password**—password of the account used to access the shared network resource.

d. Under **Disk type**, select one of the following options:

- **Logical**.
- **Physical**.

e. If you selected **Logical**, enter a `% SystemDrive%` variable or a drive letter without the colon and slash in the **Volume** field.

f. If you selected **Physical**, enter the disk number in the **Physical drive** field.

g. Select the **Split file into parts** check box if you want the file to be divided into multiple parts when saved.

h. If you selected the check box, in the **Part size, GB** field, specify the minimum size of one part of the saved file.

The minimum part size must be more than one gigabyte.

i. **Description** is the task description. This field is optional.

j. **Host**—the IP address or name of the host to which you want to assign the task.

4. Click **Add**.

The disk image retrieval task will be created. The task runs automatically after it is created.

The application places an archive containing a file or files in the EWF or RAW format in a network share. You can convert files from the RAW format to the EWF format.

If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in the role of the Endpoint Agent component, the task can be assigned only to hosts running Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows version 3.14 and later.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot create tasks.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to tasks.

Converting a file from RAW to EWF format

Kaspersky Endpoint Security saves the disk image in the RAW format. Files can also be compressed into an archive. A special Python script allows converting files from the RAW format to the EWF format. The script constantly looks for RAW files in the specified folder. If such files are detected, the script automatically converts the files to the EWF format.

convert_to_ewf_monitor.py script

For the script to work, the following software must be installed on the computer:

- The libewf library for accessing Expert Witness Compression Format (EWF) files.

  The libewf library is open source software.

It is recommended to place the library files and the script file in the same folder.

- The Python interpreter.

To enable the conversion of disk image files:

1. Start the command line interpreter.
2. Change to the folder where the script is located.
3. Run the following command:

   ```
   py convert_to_ewf_monitor.py --source <full path to the source files folder>
   [additional settings]
   ```

   EWF conversion script parameters

Parameter	Description
`--source <full path to folder>`	The full path to the folder in which the script looks for source files. The script also looks for files in subfolders at the specified path. This is a mandatory parameter.
`--destination <full path to folder>`	The full path to the folder where the script saves converted files. The folder structure is preserved. By default, the script saves converted files in the folder specified in the `source` parameter.
`--delete`	Delete source files after successful conversion. If the conversion fails, the script skips deleting the source files and you can try again.
`--ewftool <full path to folder>`	The full path to the ewfacquirestream.exe file. The path must include the file name. By default, the script attempts to locate the ewfacquirestream.exe file in the folder where the script is located.
`--name_mask <regular expressions>`	Regular expressions to find source files to convert. You can use this option if you need to convert individual files. By default, the script looks for files using the `^diskdump_` regular expression.
`--convert_single_dump`	Find a single file to convert. After successful conversion of the single file, the script exits.
`--workers_num <number of files>`	The maximum number of source files that the script can convert at the same time. You can use this setting to optimize the performance of the script. By default, the script can convert up to four files at a time.
`--log_level <log level>`	Logging level. By default, the script uses the DEBUG logging level.
`--log_path <full path to folder>`	The full path for saving log files. The path must include the file name of the log file. By default, the script displays events on the interpreter console.

Example:

```
PS D:\Folder\Script\> py convert_to_ewf_monitor.py --source E:/Folder --destination E:/EWF --delete --log_path
E:/Folder/Logs.txt
```

Creating a RAM dump retrieval task

You can retrieve a RAM dump from a selected host with the Endpoint Agent component. To do so, you must create a memory dump retrieval task.

The resulting file can be saved only to a shared network resource.

To create a memory dump retrieval task:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the task table.

2. Click the **Add** button and select **Memory dump** in the **Get data** drop-down list.

   This opens the task creation window.

3. Configure the following settings:

   a. **Share path**—path to a shared network resource.

      You need to specify the path in the Universal Naming Convention (UNC) format: `\\server\share\path`.

      If the last folder with the specified name is absent, Kaspersky Endpoint Agent will create one. If creation is unsuccessful, an error will be displayed in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

   b. **User name**—user name of the account used to access the shared network resource.

   c. **Password**—password of the account used to access the shared network resource.

   d. **Description** is the task description. This field is optional.

   e. **Host**—the IP address or name of the host to which you want to assign the task.

4. Click **Add**.

The RAM dump retrieval task is created. The task runs automatically after it is created.

As a result, the application places a RAW file or an archive that contains a RAW file on the shared network resource.

If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in the role of the Endpoint Agent component, the task can be assigned only to hosts running Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows version 3.14 and later.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot create tasks.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to tasks.

Creating a process termination task

If you believe that a process running on the computer could threaten the security of the computer or the corporate LAN, you can terminate the process.

To create a process termination task:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the task table.

2. Click **Add** and select **Kill process**.

   This opens the task creation window.

3. Configure the following settings:

   a. **File path**—Path to the file of the process that you want to terminate.

      You can also specify the path to an alternate data stream of this file. In this case, only processes of the specified data stream will be terminated. The processes of the other streams of this file will be executed.

b. **MD5/SHA256**—MD5- or SHA256 hash of the file of the process that you want to terminate. This field is optional.

c. **Description** is the task description. This field is optional.

d. **Task for**—Task scope:

- If you want to run the task on all hosts of all servers, select the **All hosts** option.
- If you want to run the task on selected servers, select the **Specified servers** option and on the right of the **Servers** parameter name select the check boxes next to the names of the servers on which you want to run the task.

  This option is available only when distributed solution and multitenancy mode is enabled.
- If you want to run the task on selected hosts, select the **Specified hosts** option and list these hosts in the **Hosts** field.

4. Click **Add**.

The process termination task will be created. The task runs automatically after it is created.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot create process termination tasks.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to tasks.

Creating a task to scan hosts using YARA rules

You can scan hosts with the Endpoint Agent component using YARA rules. To do so, you must create a **Start YARA scan** task. You can create the task:

- In the **Tasks** section.

  In this case, when creating the task, you must select YARA rules that you want to use to scan hosts.
- In the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.

  In this case, a task is created to scan hosts using selected YARA rules.

*To create a task for scanning hosts with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component using YARA rules in the **Tasks** section:*

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the task table.
2. Click **Add** and select **Start YARA scan**.

   This opens the task creation window.

3. Configure the following settings:

a. **Select rules** is the name of the rule. You can enter the name of the rule or a sequence of characters from the name of the rule, then select the rule in the list.

You can add multiple rules.

b. **Scan** is the scan scope. Select one of the following options:

- **RAM** if you want to scan processes that are running at the time of the task execution.

  The application does not scan processes with a low priority.

- **Autorun points** if you want to scan autorun points obtained from the Get forensics task.

  If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Agent as the Endpoint Agent component, this function is available only when integrated with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.13 or later.

  To have autorun points scanned, you must specify hosts for which the **Get forensics** was previously run.

- **Specified directories** if you want to scan files that are located in a specified folder and all its nested folders at the time of the task execution.

- **All local disks** if you want to scan files stored in all folders on local disks at the time of the task execution.

  Scanning all local disks can cause high load on the host.

c. If you selected **RAM**, if necessary, do the following:

- In the **Processes** field, enter short names of processes or a mask of files that you want to scan.

  The application scans all processes with identical names that are running on the host.

  If the **Processes** field is left blank, the application scans all processes that were running at the time of the task execution, except processes with PID under 10 and processes listed in the **Exclusions** field.

- In the **Exclusions** field, enter short names of processes or a mask of files that you want to exclude from scanning.

  If multiple processes with identical names are running on the host, the application excludes all such processes from scanning.

d. If you selected **Autorun points**, in the **Scan type** field, select the scan type:

- **Quick**.

  In this case, all autorun points are scanned, except COM objects.

- **Full**.

  In this case, all autorun points are scanned, as well as files involved with them.

If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows as the Endpoint Agent component, a full scan is performed regardless of the selected setting.

e. If you selected **Specified directories**:

- In the **Specified directories** field, specify the path to the directory in the format C:\<directory name>*.
- In the **Exclusions** field, specify the path to the directory in the format C:\<directory name>*.

f. **Maximum scan duration** is the maximum scan duration.

When this time elapses, the scan is stopped even if some rules were not applied to scan the hosts. The task report contains results that are up-to-date at the moment when the scan was stopped.

g. **Description** is the task description. This field is optional.

h. **Task for**—Task scope:

- If you want to run the task on all hosts of all servers, select the **All hosts** option.
- If you want to run the task on selected servers, select the **Specified servers** option and on the right of the **Servers** parameter name select the check boxes next to the names of the servers on which you want to run the task.

  This option is available only when distributed solution and multitenancy mode is enabled.
- If you want to run the task on selected hosts, select the **Specified hosts** option and list these hosts in the **Hosts** field.

  If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in the role of the Endpoint Agent component, the task for scanning Kaspersky Endpoint Agent hosts using YARA rules can be assigned only to hosts running Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows version 3.12 and later. If you simultaneously assign a task to hosts with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.12 and earlier versions of the application, the task is executed only on hosts with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent 3.12.

*To create a task for scanning Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows hosts using YARA rules in the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection:*

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.
2. Select check boxes to the left of rules that you want to use when scanning the hosts.

   A control panel appears in the lower part of the window.
3. Click **Start YARA scan**.
4. Carry out step 3 of the instruction above.

Task creation is complete. The task runs automatically after it is created.

If the scan detects any threats, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform creates corresponding alerts.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot create a task for scanning hosts using YARA rules.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to tasks.

Creating a service management task

You can remotely start, stop, pause, or resume a service, as well as remove a service or change its start type on selected hosts with the Endpoint Agent component. To do so, you must create a service management task.

To create a service management task:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the task table.

2. Click **Add** and select **Service management**.

   This opens the task creation window.

3. Configure the following settings:

   a. In the **Service name** field, enter the name of the service.

   b. In the **MD5/SHA256** field, enter the MD5 or SHA256 hash of the service. This field is optional.

   If you enter the hash of a service that is loaded from a DLL, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform simultaneously compares the specified hash with the hash of the service DLL and the hash of the svchost process.

   c. In the **Action** field, select the operation that you want to perform on the service.

   The application supports the following operations with services:

   - **Start**.
   - **Stop**.
   - **Pause**.
   - **Resume**.
   - **Delete**.
   - **Modify startup type**.

   When you remove a service, processes that the service has started keep running until the system is restarted or the process is terminated.

   d. If you selected **Modify startup type**, in the **Startup type**, select the start type for the service.

e. **Description** is the task description. This field is optional.

f. **Task for**—Task scope:

- If you want to run the task on all hosts of all servers, select the **All hosts** option.
- If you want to run the task on selected servers, select the **Specified servers** option and on the right of the **Servers** parameter name select the check boxes next to the names of the servers on which you want to run the task.

  This option is available only when distributed solution and multitenancy mode is enabled.
- If you want to run the task on selected hosts, select the **Specified hosts** option and list these hosts in the **Hosts** field.

If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Agent as the Endpoint Agent component, the task can be assigned only to hosts running Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows version 3.12 and later. Host with earlier versions of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux hosts are displayed in the list of hosts but cannot be selected.

4. Click **Add**.

The service management task is created. The task runs automatically after it is created.

Stopping, pausing, deleting services or changing the start type of services that affect the functioning on the host is strongly discouraged.

List of services for which management is not recommended

- AVP*.
- BFE.
- CertPropSvc.
- CoreMessagingRegistrar.
- CryptSvc.
- DcomLaunch.
- Dhcp.
- DispBrokerDesktopSvc.
- EventLog.
- EventSystem.
- LanmanServer.
- LanmanWorkstation.
- LSM.
- mpssvc.
- Netlogon.
- Netman.
- PlugPlay.
- PolicyAgent.
- Power.
- ProfSvc.
- RasMan.
- RpcEptMapper.
- RpcSs.
- SamSs.
- SCardSvr.
- SecurityHealthService.
- SessionEnv.
- Spooler.
- SstpSvc.
- TermService.
- UmRdpService.
- UserManager.
- UsoSvc.
- VaultSvc.
- W32Time.
- WebClient.
- Winmgmt.
- WlanSvc.
- wscsvc.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot create service management tasks.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to tasks.

Creating an application execution task

You can create an application running task or command execution task.

If the standard output file or error output file reaches a size of 100 KB when the task is running, some of the data is deleted from the file. The file will not contain all the data.

To create a task for running an application or executing a command:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the task table.

2. Click **Add** and select **Run application**.

   This opens the task creation window.

3. Configure the following settings:

   a. In the **File path** and **Working directory** fields, enter values in one of the following ways:

   - In the **File path** field, enter the full path to the executable file (for example, `C:\Windows\System32\ipconfig.exe`). Leave the **Working directory** field empty.

     When creating a task, the application does not check if the specified path to the executable file is valid.

   - In the **File path** field, enter the name and extension of the executable file (for example, `ipconfig.exe`). In the **Working directory** field, enter the working directory (for example, `C:\Windows\System32\`).

   b. In the **Arguments** field, enter additional options for running the file or task (for example, the `/all` argument).

   c. In the **Description** field, enter the task description. This field is optional.

d. Configure the **Task for** setting, that is, the task scope:

- If you want to run the task on all hosts of all servers, select the **All hosts** option.
- If you want to run the task on selected servers, select the **Specified servers** option and on the right of the **Servers** parameter name select the check boxes next to the names of the servers on which you want to run the task.

  This option is available only when distributed solution and multitenancy mode is enabled.
- If you want to run the task on selected hosts, select the **Specified hosts** option and list these hosts in the **Hosts** field.

4. Click **Add**.

The application running task or command execution task is created. The task runs automatically after it is created.

Example:
To run the `ipconfig /all` command on the host with IP address `10.10.10.1`:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.
   This opens the task table.
2. Click **Add** and select **Run application**.
   This opens the task creation window.
3. Configure the following settings:
   a. In the **File path** and **Working directory** fields, enter values in one of the following ways:
      - In the **File path** field, enter `C:\Windows\System32\ipconfig.exe`. Leave the **Working directory** field empty.
      - In the **File path** field, enter `ipconfig.exe`. In the **Working directory** field, enter `C:\Windows\System32\`.

   b. In the **Arguments** field, enter `/all`.
   c. In the **Description** field, enter the task description.
   d. Select the **Specified hosts** task scope.
   e. In the **Hosts** field, start entering characters of the IP address `10.10.10.1`, and when this IP address is displayed in the drop-down list of search results below, select it.
4. Click **Add**.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot create application running tasks or command execution tasks.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to tasks.

Creating a file deletion task

To create a file deletion task:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the task table.

2. Click **Add** and select **Delete file**.

   This opens the task creation window.

3. Configure the following settings:

   a. **File path**—Path to the file that you want to delete.

   You can also specify the path to an alternate data stream of this file. In this case, only the specified data stream will be deleted. The other data streams of this file will be left unchanged.

   b. **MD5/SHA256**—MD5- or SHA256 hash of the file that you want to delete. This field is optional.

   c. **Description** is the task description. This field is optional.

   d. **Task for**—Task scope:

   - If you want to run the task on all hosts of all servers, select the **All hosts** option.
   - If you want to run the task on selected servers, select the **Specified servers** option and on the right of the **Servers** parameter name select the check boxes next to the names of the servers on which you want to run the task.

     This option is available only when distributed solution and multitenancy mode is enabled.

   - If you want to run the task on selected hosts, select the **Specified hosts** option and list these hosts in the **Hosts** field.

4. Click **Add**.

The file deletion task will be created. The task runs automatically after it is created.

If the file has been blocked by another process, the task will be displayed with the *Completed* status but the file will be deleted only after the host is restarted. It is recommended to check whether the file is successfully deleted after the host is restarted.

Deleting the file from a mapped network drive is not supported.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot create file deletion tasks.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to tasks.

Creating a file quarantine task

If you believe that an infected or probably infected file is on the computer with the Endpoint Agent component, you can isolate it by putting it into quarantine.

To create a file quarantine task:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the task table.

2. Click **Add** and select **Quarantine file**.

   This opens the task creation window.

3. Configure the following settings:

   a. In the **File path** field, enter the path to the file that you want to quarantine.

   b. In the **MD5/SHA256** field, enter the MD5 or SHA256 hash of the file that you want to quarantine. This field is optional.

   c. **Description** is the task description. This field is optional.

   d. In the **Hosts** field, enter the name or IP address of the host to which you want to assign the task.

      You can specify multiple hosts.

   e. Click **Add**.

The file quarantine task is created. The task runs automatically after it is created.

As a result of the task:

- The file is deleted from the folder of the computer where it is located and moved to the quarantine directory on the same computer, which was specified during configuration of the application that is used as the Endpoint Agent component.
- In the task list of the **Tasks** section of the application web interface, execution information about the task is displayed.
- In the file list in the **Storage** section, **Quarantine** subsection, information about the quarantined file is displayed.

If the file has been blocked by another process, the task is displayed with the *Completed* status but the file is placed in quarantine only after the host is restarted. It is recommended to check whether the task was successfully completed after the host is restarted.

The file quarantine task can finish with the **Access denied** error if you are trying to quarantine an executable file and it is currently running.

To solve this problem, create a process termination task for this file, and then try creating the file quarantine task again.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot create file quarantine tasks.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to tasks.

Creating a quarantined file recovery task

If you believe that a previously isolated file is safe, you can restore it from quarantine to the host.

To create a task for restoring a file from quarantine:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the task table.

2. Click **Add** and select **Restore file from quarantine**.

   This opens the task creation window.

3. Configure the following settings:

   a. **Description** is the task description. This field is optional.

   b. **File search**—Name of the file in quarantine.

4. Click **Add**.

The task for restoring a file from quarantine is created. The task runs automatically after it is created.

After restoring a file from quarantine to a host, metadata about the file remains in the table of objects placed in Storage.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, a file that is quarantined on an SCN server cannot be restored on the PCN server. You can restore the file on the SCN server on which the quarantine file task was created.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot create tasks to restore files from quarantine.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to tasks.

Creating a copy of a task

To copy the task:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.
   This opens the task table.
2. Open the task that you want to copy.
3. Click **Duplicate**.
   This opens the task creation window. All task settings will be copied.
4. If you want to modify task settings, edit one or more settings depending on the type of the task being copied.
5. Click **Add**.

A copy of the selected task will be created.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot copy tasks.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to tasks.

Deleting tasks

If you delete a task while it is running, the task results might not be saved.

If you delete a successfully completed file download task, the file is also deleted.

To delete a task:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.
   This opens the task table.
2. Open the task that you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**.
   This opens the action confirmation window.
4. Click **Yes**.

The task will be deleted.

To delete all or multiple tasks:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.
   This opens the task table.
2. Select check boxes next to the tasks that you want to delete.
   You can select all tasks by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.
3. In the pane that appears in the lower part of the window, click **Delete**.
   This opens the action confirmation window.
4. Click **Yes**.

The selected tasks are deleted.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot delete tasks.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to tasks.

Filtering tasks by creation time

To filter tasks by creation time:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.
   This opens the task table.
2. Click the **Time** link to open the task filtering menu.
3. Select one of the following task display periods:
   - **All** if you want the application to display all created tasks in the table.
   - **Last hour** if you want the application to display tasks that were created during the last hour in the table.
   - **Last day** if you want the application to display tasks that were created during the last day in the table.
   - **Custom range** if you want the application to display tasks that were created during a specified period in the table.
4. If you have selected the **Custom range** task display period:
   a. In the calendar that opens, specify the start and end dates of the task display period.
   b. Click **Apply**.

The calendar closes.

The tasks table displays only tasks matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering tasks by type

If you are using distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can filter tasks by their type.

To filter tasks by type:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the task table.

2. Click the **Type** link to open the task filtering menu.

3. Select one of the following task display options:

   - **All**, if you want to display all tasks regardless of their type.
   - **Global**, if you want to display only tasks that were created on the PCN server. These tasks apply to hosts that are connected to this PCN server and to all SCN servers that are connected to this PCN server. Tasks belong to the tenant for which the user is managing the program using the web interface.
   - **Local**, if you want to display only tasks that were created on a SCN server. These tasks apply only to hosts that are connected to this SCN server. Tasks belong to the tenant for which the user is managing the program using the web interface.

The tasks table displays only tasks matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering tasks by name

To filter tasks by name:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the task table.

2. Click the **Name** link to open the task filtering menu.

3. Select one or more check boxes:

   - **Kill process**
   - **Run application**
   - **Get forensics**
   - **Start YARA scan**
   - **Service management**
   - **Get file**
   - **Delete file**
   - **Quarantine file**
   - **Restore file**

4. Click **Apply**.

   The tasks table displays only tasks matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering tasks by file name and path

You can filter tasks based on the **Details** criterion—Name and path to the file or data stream.

To filter tasks by name and path to the file or data stream:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.
   This opens the task table.
2. Click the **Details** link to open the task filter configuration window.
3. In the drop-down list on the right, select **Details**.
4. In the drop-down list on the left, select one of the following task filtering operators:

   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**
   - **Equal to**
   - **Not equal to**

5. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the file name or path.

6. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
7. Click **Apply**.

The tasks table displays only tasks matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering tasks by description

You can filter tasks by the **Description** criterion, which is the task description that was added when the task was created.

To filter tasks by description:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the task table.
2. Click the **Details** link to open the task filter configuration window.
3. In the drop-down list on the left, select **Description**.
4. In the drop-down list on the right, select one of the following task filtering operators:
   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**
   - **Equal to**
   - **Not equal to**
5. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the file name or path.
6. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
7. Click **Apply**.

The tasks table displays only tasks matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering tasks by server name

If you are using distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can filter tasks based on the servers to which the tasks are applied.

To filter tasks by servers to which the tasks are applied:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the task table.

2. Click the **Servers** link to open the task filtering menu.

3. Select the check boxes next to the names of the servers whose tasks you want to display.

The tasks table displays only tasks matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering tasks based on the name of the user that created the task

To filter tasks based on the user name that created the task, all tasks must be displayed. If only tasks created by the current user are displayed, tasks cannot be filtered by user name.

To filter tasks by the name of the user that created the task:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the task table.

2. Click the **Created by** link to open the task filtering menu.

3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following task filtering operators:

   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**

4. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the user name.

5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.

6. Click **Apply**.

The tasks table displays only tasks matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering tasks by processing status

To filter tasks based on the status of their processing by the user:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.
   This opens the task table.
2. Click the **State** link to open the task filtering menu.
3. Select one or more check boxes:
   - **Pending**.
   - **In process**.
   - **Completed**.
4. Click **Apply**.

The tasks table displays only tasks matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Clearing a task filter

To clear the task filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. Select the **Tasks** section in the application web interface window.
   This opens the task table.
2. Click to the right of the header of the table column for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The tasks table displays only tasks matching the filter criteria you have set.

Managing policies (prevention rules)

When working in the application web interface, users with the **Senior security officer** role can manage prevention rules for files and processes on selected hosts. For example, you can prevent the running of applications that you consider unsafe to use on the selected host with the Endpoint Agent component. The application identifies files based on their hash by using the MD5 and SHA256 hashing algorithms. You can create, enable, disable, delete, and modify prevention rules. Additionally, you can click the link with the name of the hashing algorithm in the prevention rule table to find objects, events, or alerts that have triggered prevention rules, such as **Find events**, **Find alerts**, **Find on TIP**, or **Find on virustotal.com**.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, prevention rules can have the following types:

- **Global**—Created on the PCN. These prevention rules apply to hosts that are connected to this PCN server and to all SCN servers that are connected to this PCN server. Prevention rules belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the program web interface.

- **Local**—Created on the SCN server. These prevention rules apply only to hosts that are connected to this SCN server. Prevention rules belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the program web interface.

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can create, edit, delete, enable, disable, and import prevention rules for tenants to whose data they have access.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to policies.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the table of file run prevention rules and process run prevention rules, as well as information about the selected prevention rule, but they cannot edit the rules.

All changes to prevention rules are applied on hosts after an authorized connection is established with the selected hosts. If there is no connection with the hosts, the old prevention rules continue to be applied on the hosts. Changes to prevention rules do not affect processes that are already running.

Prevention rules can be created automatically based on preset politics (hereinafter also "presets") added by default. With presets turned on, a prevention rule is created based on a medium or high severity alert of the Sandbox component. The prevention rule thus created prevents running the file based on its MD5 hash. Users with the **Senior security officer** role can enable and disable presets.

Presets are not supported in distributed solution and multitenancy mode.

The same operations can be applied to automatically created or imported prevention rules as for manually created rules.

You can create only one prevention rule for each file hash.

The maximum supported number of prevention rules in the system is 50,000.

Prevention rules are enforced only if the Endpoint Agent component is running on the host. If an attempt to run a file is made before the component is started or after the component is shut down on a host, the file will not be blocked from running.

You can manage file and process running prevention rules on selected hosts using policies only if the Endpoint Agent component is integrated with the Central Node server; to do so, you must use the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows as the Endpoint Agent component, you must take into account that the application supports preventing from running office format files with certain extensions and certain script interpreters.

Viewing the prevention rule table

The table of prevention rules is in the **Prevention** section of the application web interface window.

The table contains the following information:

1. **Type** is the type of the rule depending on the operating mode of the application and the role of the server which generated the rule:

   - **Global**—Created on the PCN. These prevention rules apply to hosts that are connected to this PCN server and to all SCN servers that are connected to this PCN server. Prevention rules belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the program web interface.

   - **Local**—Created on the SCN server. These prevention rules apply only to hosts that are connected to this SCN server. Prevention rules belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the program web interface.

2. **Name** is the name of the prevention rule.

3. **Created by**—Name of the user whose account was used to create the rule.

4. **File hash**—Hashing algorithm applied to identify a file.

   A file can be identified based on one of the following hashing algorithms:

   - **MD5**.

   - **SHA256**.

   Clicking the link with the name of the hashing algorithm opens a list in which you can view the file hash and select one of the following actions:

   - **Filter by this value**.

   - **Exclude from filter**.

   - **Find on TIP**.

   - **Find on virustotal.com** (for SHA256).

- Find events.

  When this action is performed, the **Threat Hunting** section opens with events that are already filtered based on the hash you selected.

- Find alerts.

  When this action is performed, the **Alerts** section opens with alerts that are already filtered based on the hash you selected.

- Enable prevention rule.

- Disable prevention rule.

- Delete prevention rule.

- **Copy value to clipboard**.

5. **Servers** are names of servers with the PCN or SCN role to which the prevention rule applies.

   This field is displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.

6. **Hosts** is the name of the server with the Central Node component to whose hosts the prevention rule is applied.

   This field is displayed only when you are using a standalone Central Node server.

7. **State** is the current state of the prevention rule.

   A prevention rule can have one of the following states:

   - **Enabled**

   - **Disabled**

Configuring prevention rule table display

You can show or hide columns and change the order of columns in the prevention rule table.

To configure prevention rule table display:

1. Select the **Prevention** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the prevention rule table

2. In the heading part of the table, click .

   This opens the **Customize table** window.

3. If you want to show a column in the table, select the check box next to the name of the parameter that you want displayed in the table.

   If you want to hide a parameter in the table, clear the check box.

   At least one check box must be selected.

4. If you want to change the order of columns in the table, move the mouse cursor to the row with the relevant parameter, click and move the row to its new place.
5. If you want to restore default table display settings, click **Default**.
6. Click **Apply**.

The prevention rule table display is configured.

Viewing a prevention rule

To view a prevention rule:

1. Select the **Prevention** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the prevention rule table
2. Select the prevention rule that you want to view.

A prevention rule contains the following information:

- The **Events** link opens the **Threat Hunting** section with the search condition containing your selected prevention rule.
- **State** is the current state of the prevention rule.

  A prevention rule can have one of the following states:

  - **Enabled**
  - **Disabled**
- The **Details** tab contains the following information:
  - **MD5/SHA256** is the hash of the file prevented from running.

    Clicking the **MD5/SHA256** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

    - **Find on TIP**.
    - **Find events**.
    - **Find alerts**.
    - **Copy value to clipboard**.
  - **Name** is the name of the prevention rule or file prevented from running.

- **Type** is the type of the rule depending on the operating mode of the application and the role of the server which generated the rule:
  - **Global**—Created on the PCN. These prevention rules apply to hosts that are connected to this PCN server and to all SCN servers that are connected to this PCN server. Prevention rules belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the program web interface.
  - **Local**—Created on the SCN server. These prevention rules apply only to hosts that are connected to this SCN server. Prevention rules belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the program web interface.
- **Notification** is the state of the **Notify user about blocking file execution** setting.
- **Prevent on** is the list of hosts on which the prevention rule is applied.

  If the prevention is in effect on all hosts, the **All hosts** section is displayed.

- The **Change log** tab contains a list of changes made to the prevention: time of the change, name of the user that changed the prevention, and actions taken on the prevention.

Creating a prevention rule

To create a prevention rule:

1. Select the **Prevention** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the prevention rule table

2. Click **Add**.

3. Select **Create rule**.

   This opens the prevention rule creation window.

4. Configure the following settings:

   a. **State** is the state of the prevention rule:

   - If you want to enable the prevention rule, set the toggle switch to **On**.
   - If you want to disable the prevention rule, set the toggle switch to **Off**.

   b. **MD5/SHA256**—MD5- or SHA256 hash of the file or data stream that you want to prevent from starting.

   c. **Name** is the name of the prevention rule.

   d. If you want the application to display a notification about prevention rule triggering to the user of the computer on which the prevention is applied, select the **Notify user about blocking file execution** check box.

   If you selected the **Notify user about blocking file execution** check box and an attempt is made to execute a file prevented from running, the user is notified that an execution prevention rule was triggered by this file.

e. **Prevent on** is the prevention rule scope:

- If you want to apply the prevention rule on all hosts of all servers, select **All hosts**.
- If you want to apply the prevention rule on selected servers, select the **Specified servers** option and on the right of the **Servers** parameter name select the check boxes next to the names of the servers on which you want to apply the prevention rule.

  This option is available only when distributed solution and multitenancy mode is enabled.
- If you want to apply the prevention rule on selected hosts, select the **Specified hosts** option and list these hosts in the **Hosts** field.

If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux in the role of the Endpoint Agent component, the prevention rule creation functionality is not available. When creating a prevention rule, if you select a host with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux, Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux or all hosts as the scope of the rule, the rule is not applied or is only applied to hosts with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows.

5. Click **Add**.

The file startup prevention will be created.

You can also import prevention rules.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot create file launch prevention rules.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot access prevention rules.

Importing prevention rules

You can import a file with MD5 and SHA256 hashes for files that you want to prevent from running. For each hash, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform creates a separate prevention rule.

The maximum size of the imported file is 10 MB. Only one hash per line is allowed.

To import prevention rules:

1. Select the **Prevention** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the prevention rule table
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select **Import rules**.

   This opens the prevention rule import window.

4. Configure the following settings:

   a. **State** is the state of the prevention rule:

      - If you want to enable all imported prevention rules, set the toggle switch to **On**.
      - If you want to disable all imported prevention rules, set the toggle switch to **Off**.

   b. If you want the application to display a notification about prevention rules triggering to the user of the computer on which the prevention is applied, select the **Notify user about blocking file execution** check box.

   The **Prevent on** field cannot be edited. By default, prevention rules created on a PCN server are applied on all hosts connected to that PCN server and all SCN servers connected to that PCN server (if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode).

5. Click **Browse** to upload the file containing hashes of files for which you want to create prevention rules.

   This opens the file selection window.

6. Select the file that you want to upload and click **Open**.

   This closes the file selection window.

7. Click **Add**.

The rules are imported.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot import file launch prevention rules.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot access prevention rules.

Enabling and disabling a prevention rule

To enable or disable a prevention rule:

1. Select the **Prevention** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the prevention rule table

2. In the row containing the prevention rule that you want to enable or disable, in the **State** column, perform one of the following actions:

   - If you want to enable the prevention rule, set the toggle switch to **Enabled**.

     The prevention rule you selected will be enabled.

- If you want to disable the prevention rule, set the toggle switch to **Disabled**.

  The prevention rule you selected will be disabled.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot enable or disable prevention rules.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to the prevention rules for launching files and processes on selected hosts using policies.

Enabling and disabling presets

To enable or disable presets:

1. Select the **Prevention** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the prevention rule table

2. Select the **Presets** tab.

3. In the row of the preset that you want to enable or disable, in the **State** column, set the toggle switch to **Enabled** or **Disabled**.

The preset is enabled or disabled. When a preset is disabled, all prevention rules that were previously automatically created are not removed.

Deleting prevention rules

You can delete a single prevention rule or multiple prevention rules, or all prevention rules at the same time.

To delete a single prevention rule:

1. Select the **Prevention** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the prevention rule table

2. Click the prevention rule that you want to delete.

   This opens the prevention rule details window.

3. Click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

4. Click **Yes**.

The prevention rule will be deleted.

To delete all or multiple prevention rules:

1. Select the **Prevention** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the prevention rule table

2. Select check boxes next to prevention rules that you want to delete.

   You can select all prevention rules by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.

3. In the pane that appears in the lower part of the window, click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

4. Click **Yes**.

The selected prevention rules are deleted.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot delete prevention rules.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to the prevention rules for launching files and processes on selected hosts using policies.

Filtering prevention rules by name

To filter prevention rules by name:

1. Select the **Prevention** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the prevention rule table

2. Click the **Name** link to open the prevention filtering menu.

3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following prevention filtering operators:

   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**

4. In the text box, enter one or more characters of the prevention rule name.

5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.

6. Click **Apply**.

The prevention rules table displays only the prevention rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering prevention rules by type

If you are using distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can filter prevention rules by their type.

To filter prevention rules by type:

1. Select the **Prevention** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the prevention rule table

2. Click the **Type** link to open the prevention rule filtering menu.

3. Select one of the following options for displaying prevention rules:

   - **All**, if you want to display all prevention rules regardless of their type.
   - **Global**, if you want to display only the prevention rules that were created on the PCN. These prevention rules apply to hosts that are connected to this PCN server and to all SCN servers that are connected to this PCN server. Prevention rules belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the application web interface.
   - **Local**, if you want to display only prevention rules that were created on a SCN server. These prevention rules apply only to hosts that are connected to this SCN server. Prevention rules belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the application web interface.

The prevention rules table displays only the prevention rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering prevention rules by file hash

To filter prevention rules by file hash:

1. Select the **Prevention** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the prevention rule table

2. Click the **File hash** link to open the prevention rule filtering menu.

3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following prevention filtering operators:

   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**

4. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the file hash.

5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.

6. Click **Apply**.

The prevention rules table displays only the prevention rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering prevention rules by server name

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can filter prevention rules based on the servers to which the prevention rules apply.

To filter prevention rules by server name:

1. Select the **Prevention** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the prevention rule table

2. Click the **Servers** link to open the prevention rule filtering menu.

3. Select the check boxes next to those servers by which you want to filter the prevention rules.

4. Click **Apply**.

The prevention rules table displays only the prevention rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Clearing a prevention rule filter

To clear the prevention rule filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. Select the **Prevention** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the prevention rule table

2. Click to the right of the header of the column of the prevention rule table for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The prevention rules table displays only the prevention rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

Managing user-defined rules

You can configure additional security for the IT infrastructure of the company using TAA, IDS, IOC, and YARA rules.

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can work with custom **TAA**, **IDS**, **IOC**, and **YARA** rules: load and delete rule files, view lists of rules, and edit the selected rules.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the lists of custom **TAA**, **IDS**, **IOC**, and **YARA** rules and properties of selected rules without the possibility of editing.

Users with the **Security officer** role can view the lists of custom **TAA**, **IOC**, and **YARA** rules and properties of selected rules without the possibility of editing.

Using indicators of compromise (IOC) and attack (IOA) for Threat Hunting

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform uses two types of indicators for threat hunting: *IOC* (Indicator of Compromise) and *IOA* (Indicator of Attack).

An IOC is a set of data about a malicious object or malicious activity. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform uses IOC files conforming to the OpenIOC standard, which is an open standard for describing indicators of compromise. IOC files contain a set of indicators that are compared to the indicators of an event. If the compared indicators match, the application considers the event to be an alert. The likelihood of an alert may increase if a scan detects exact matches between the data of an object and several IOC files.

An IOA (also referred to as a "TAA (IOA) rule") is a rule containing the description of a suspicious activity in the system that could be a sign of a targeted attack. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform scans the Events database of the application and marks events that match behaviors described by TAA (IOA) rules. The *streaming scan* technology is used, which involves continuous real-time scanning of objects being downloaded from the network.

TAA (IOA) rules created by Kaspersky experts are used by the TAA (Targeted Attack Analyzer) technology and are updated alongside the application databases. They are not displayed in the interface of the application and cannot be edited.

You can add user-defined IOC and TAA (IOA) rules using IOC files in the OpenIOC format as well as create TAA (IOA) rules based on event database search conditions.

The following table contains a comparative analysis of indicators of compromise (IOC) and attack (IOA).

Comparison of IOC and IOA indicators

Characteristic	IOC in user-defined IOC rules	IOA in user-defined TAA (IOA) rules	IOA in TAA (IOA) rules created by Kaspersky experts
Scan scope	Computers with the Endpoint Agent component	Application events database	Application events database
Scanning mechanism	Periodical scan	Streaming scan	Streaming scan
Can be added to exclusions from scan	None.	Not needed. Users with the **Senior security officer** role can edit the text of the indicator in custom TAA (IOA) rules as necessary.	Yes.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, this section displays information for the selected tenant.

Managing user-defined IOC rules

You can use IOC files to search indicators of compromise in the event database and on computers with the Endpoint Agent component. For example, if you have received third-party information about a piece of malware currently spreading, you can:

1. Upload an IOC file containing indicators of compromise corresponding to the malware to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

2. Find events corresponding to the criteria of the selected IOC file.

   You can view such events, and if you want Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to generate alerts for selected events, you can create a TAA (IOA) rule.

3. Enable automatic use of the selected IOC file to search indicators of compromise on computers with the Endpoint Agent component.

   If while scanning the computers, the Endpoint Agent component detects indicators of compromise, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform generates an alert.

4. Configure the schedule for searching for indicators of compromise using IOC files on computers with the Endpoint Agent component.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, IOC files can have the following types:

- **Local**—IOC files uploaded to an SCN server. These IOC files are used to search for indicators of compromise on Kaspersky Endpoint Agent hosts connected to the SCN server.

- **Global**—IOC files uploaded to the PCN server. These IOC files are used to search for indicators of compromise on Kaspersky Endpoint Agent hosts connected to the PCN server and all SCN servers connected to the PCN server.

To view the list of supported OpenIOC indicators of compromise, you can download this file.

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can import, delete, download IOC files to their computer, enable or disable the search of indicators of compromise using IOC files, as well as configure the schedule for searching indicators of compromise on computers with the Endpoint Agent component.

Users with the **Security officer** and **Security auditor** roles can view the list of IOC files and information about the selected file, and export IOC files to their computer.

Viewing the table of IOC files

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

The table of IOC files contains information about IOC files used for scanning on computers with the Endpoint Agent component installed; you can find the table in the **Custom rules** section, **IOC** subsection of the application web interface window.

The table of IOC files contains the following information:

1. —Importance level that will be assigned to an alert generated using this IOC file.

   The importance level can have one of the following values:

   - – Low importance.
   - – Medium importance.
   - – High importance.

2. **Type**—Type of IOC file depending on the application operating mode and the server to which the IOC file was uploaded:

   - **Local**—IOC files uploaded to an SCN server. These IOC files are used to search for indicators of compromise on hosts with the Endpoint Agent component connected to the SCN server.
   - **Global**—IOC files uploaded to the PCN server. These IOC files are used to search for indicators of compromise on hosts with the Endpoint Agent component connected to the PCN server and all SCN servers connected to the PCN server.

3. **Name**—Name of the IOC file.

4. **Servers** are names of servers with the PCN or SCN role to which the rule applies.

   This column is displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.

5. **Autoscan**—The IOC file is used when automatically scanning hosts with the Endpoint Agent component.

   Host scanning using this IOC file can have one of the following statuses:

   - **Enabled**
   - **Disabled**

Viewing information about an IOC file

To view IOC file details:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **IOC** subsection.

   This opens the table of IOC files.

2. Select the IOC file for which you want to view information.

This opens a window containing information about the IOC file.

The window contains the following information:

- Clicking the **Find alerts** link opens the **Alerts** section with the filter condition populated with the name of your selected IOC file.
- Clicking the **Find events** link opens the **Threat Hunting** section with the search condition populated with indicators of compromise of your selected IOC file.

- Clicking the **Download** link opens the IOC file download window.
- **Autoscan**—The IOC file is used when automatically scanning hosts with the Endpoint Agent component.
- **Name**—Name of the IOC file.
- **Importance**—Importance level that will be assigned to an alert generated using this IOC file.

  The importance level can have one of the following values:

  - – Low importance.
  - – Medium importance.
  - – High importance.
- **Apply to**—Displays the name of the tenant and the names of servers associated with events scanned based on this IOC file (in distributed solution and multitenancy mode).
- **XML**—Displays the IOC file contents in XML format.

Uploading an IOC file

IOC files having UserItem properties for domain users are not supported.

To upload an IOC file:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **IOC** subsection.

   This opens the table of IOC files.
2. Click **Upload**.

   This opens the file selection window on your local computer.
3. Select the file that you want to upload and click **Open**.
4. Specify the following parameters:

   a. **Autoscan**—The IOC file is used when automatically scanning hosts with the Endpoint Agent component:

   - **Enabled**
   - **Disabled**

   b. **Name**—Name of the IOC file.

   c. **Importance**—Importance level that will be assigned to an alert generated using this IOC file:

   - **Low**.
   - **Medium**.
   - **High**.

d. **Apply to**—Name of the tenant and names of the servers which you want to scan using this IOC file (in distributed solution and multitenancy mode).

5. Click **Save**.

The IOC file will be uploaded in XML format.

Downloading an IOC file to a computer

You can download a previously uploaded IOC file to a computer.

To download an IOC file:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **IOC** subsection.

   This opens the table of IOC files.

2. Select the IOC file that you want to download.

   This opens a window containing information about the IOC file.

3. Depending on your browser settings, click the **Download** link to save the file to the default folder or specify a folder in which to save the file.

The IOC file will be saved to the computer in the browser's downloads folder.

Enabling and disabling the automatic use of an IOC file when scanning hosts

You can enable or disable the automatic use of an IOC file for searching for indicators of compromise on hosts with the Endpoint Agent component.

To enable or disable the automatic use of an IOC file for searching for indicators of compromise on hosts with the Endpoint Agent component:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **IOC** subsection.

   This opens the table of IOC files.

2. In the row containing the IOC file whose use you want to enable or disable, in the **State** column, set the toggle switch to one of the following positions:

   - **Enabled**
   - **Disabled**

Automatic use of an IOC file for searching for indicators of compromise on hosts with the Endpoint Agent component is enabled or disabled.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot enable or disable automatic application of an IOC file.

Deleting an IOC file

To delete an IOC file:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **IOC** subsection.
   This opens the table of IOC files.
2. Select the IOC file that you want to delete.
   This opens a window containing information about the IOC file.
3. Click **Delete**.

The IOC file will be deleted.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot delete IOC files.

Searching for alerts in IOC scan results

To find and view scan results for the selected IOC file:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **IOC** subsection.
   This opens the table of IOC files.
2. Select the IOC file for which you want to view scan results.
   This opens a window containing information about the IOC file.
3. Go to the alert database by clicking **Find alerts**.
   The alert table is opened in a new browser tab.

You can also view scan results for all IOC files by filtering alerts by technology name.

Searching for events using an IOC file

To view events found using an IOC file:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **IOC** subsection.
   This opens the table of IOC files.
2. Select the IOC file to use for searching for events in the event database.
   This opens a window containing information about the IOC file.

3. Go to the event database by clicking **Find events**.

   The event table is opened in a new browser tab.

Filtering and searching IOC files

To filter or search for IOC files by required criteria:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **IOC** subsection.
2. This opens the IOC file table. Do the following depending on the filtering criterion:

   - **By importance**

     a. Click the icon to open the filter configuration window for IOC files.

     b. Select one or several of the following importance levels:

     - **Low**.
     - **Medium**.
     - **High**.

     c. Click **Apply**.

   - **By file name**

     a. Click the **Name** link to open the IOC file filter configuration window.

     b. Enter one or several characters of the IOC file name.

     c. Click **Apply**.

   - **By the state of the automatic scan (enabled / disabled)**

     a. Click the **Autoscan** link to open the filter configuration window for IOC files.

     b. Select one of the following options:

     - **Enabled**
     - **Disabled**

   The table of IOC files will display only IOC files that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Clearing an IOC file filter

To clear the IOC file filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **IOC** subsection.
2. This opens the IOC file table. Click to the right of the header of the IOC file table column for which you want to clear the filtering conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The table of IOC files will display only IOC files that match the filter criteria you have set.

Configuring an IOC scan schedule

You can configure the schedule for searching for indicators of compromise using IOC files on hosts with the Endpoint Agent component.

Users with **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot configure the schedule for searching for indicators of compromise using IOC files.

To configure the schedule for searching for indicators of compromise using IOC files on hosts with the Endpoint Agent component:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Endpoint Agents** subsection, **IOC scanning schedule** group of settings.
2. In the **Start time** drop-down lists, select the start time of the indicator of compromise search.
3. In the **Maximum scan duration** drop-down list, select a time limit for completing the indicator of compromise search.
4. Click **Apply**.

The new schedule for searching for indicators of compromise using IOC files on hosts with the Endpoint Agent component becomes active immediately after changes are saved. Results of the indicator of compromise search are displayed in the alert table.

Managing the search for indicators of compromise using IOC files is limited to the functionality provided by the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. No alternative ways of managing the search for indicators of compromise are provided.

If you are using Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows in the role of the Endpoint Agent component, make sure that the IOC files comply with the requirements. You must also take into account that when adding the RegistryItem data type to the IOC search scope, the application analyzes only certain registry keys.

For more details on the requirements for IOC files and the scanned registry keys, refer to the Online Help for Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows:

- IOC scan scope in the registry (RegistryItem).
- IOC file requirements.

Managing user-defined TAA (IOA) rules

Custom TAA (IOA) rules are created based on event databased search criteria. For example, if you want Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to generate alerts for events when an application that you consider unsafe is started on computers with the Endpoint Agent component, you can:

1. Generate a search query for the event database.
2. Create a custom TAA (IOA) rule based on event search conditions.

   When Central Node server receives events matching the created TAA (IOA) rule, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform generates alerts.

You can also create a TAA (IOA) rule based on one or multiple event search criteria from the selected IOC file. To do so:

1. Upload an IOC file containing indicators of compromise corresponding to the malware to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
2. Find events corresponding to the criteria of the selected IOC file.
3. Create a TAA (IOA) rule based on one or more event search criteria from the selected IOC file.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, TAA (IOA) rules can have one of the following types:

- **Global**—Created on the PCN server. These rules are used to scan events on this PCN server and all SCN servers connected to this PCN server. Scanned events belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the program web interface.
- **Local**—Created on the SCN server. These rules are used to scan events on this SCN server. Scanned events belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the program web interface.

The differences between user rules and Kaspersky rules are summarized in the following table.

Comparison of TAA (IOA) rules

Characteristic	User-defined TAA (IOA) rules	Kaspersky TAA (IOA) rules
Recommendations on responding to the event	No	Yes You can view recommendations in alert information
Correspondence to technique in MITRE ATT&CK database	No	Yes You can view the description of the technique according to the MITRE database in alert information
Display in the TAA (IOA) rule table	Yes	No
Ability to disable database lookup for this rule	Disable rule	Add rule to TAA exclusions

Characteristic	User-defined TAA (IOA) rules	Kaspersky TAA (IOA) rules
Ability to delete or add the rule	You can delete or add a rule in the web interface of the application	Rules are updated together with application databases and cannot be deleted by the user
Searching for alerts and events in which TAA (IOA) rules were triggered	Using **Alerts** and **Events** links in the TAA (IOA) rule information window	Using **Alerts** and **Events** links in the alert information window

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can create, import, delete, enable or disable TAA (IOA) rules, and exclude Kaspersky TAA (IOA) rules from scanning. Users with the **Security officer** or **Security auditor** roles can use TAA (IOA) rules to search for signs of targeted attacks, infected and possibly infected objects in the database of events and alerts, and to view the TAA (IOA) rule table and TAA (IOA) rule information.

Viewing the TAA (IOA) rule table

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

The table of user-defined TAA (IOA) rules contains information about TAA (IOA) rules that are used to scan events and create alerts; the table is in the **Custom rules** section, **TAA** subsection of the application web interface window.

The table contains the following information:

1. —Importance level that is assigned to an alert generated using this TAA (IOA) rule.

   The importance level can have one of the following values:

   - – **Low**.
   - – **Medium**.
   - – **High**.

2. **Type** is the type of the rule depending on the operating mode of the application and the role of the server which generated the rule:

   - **Global**—Created on the PCN server. These rules are used to scan events on this PCN server and all SCN servers connected to this PCN server. Scanned events belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the program web interface.
   - **Local**—Created on the SCN server. These rules are used to scan events on this SCN server. Scanned events belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the program web interface.

3. **Confidence** – level of confidence depending on the likelihood of false alarms caused by the rule:

   - **High**.
   - **Medium**.
   - **Low**.

   The higher the confidence, the lower the likelihood of false alarms.

4. **Name** – name of the rule.

5. **Servers** are names of servers with the PCN or SCN role to which the rule applies.

   This column is displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.

6. **Generate alerts** – requirement to store information on alerts based on matching an event from the database with criteria of the rule.

   - **Enabled** – a record is created for the event in the alerts table with Targeted Attack Analyzer (TAA) technology specified.
   - **Disabled** – not displayed in the alert table.

7. **State** – usage status of the rule in event scans:

   - **Enabled** – the rule is being used.
   - **Disabled** – the rule is not being used.

Creating a TAA (IOA) rule based on event search conditions

To create a TAA (IOA) rule based on event search conditions:

1. Select the **Threat Hunting** section in the application web interface window.

   This opens the event search form.

2. Perform an event search in design mode or source code mode.

3. Click **Save as TAA (IOA) rule**.

   This opens the **New TAA (IOA) rule** window.

4. In the **Name** field, type the name of the rule.

5. Click **Save**.

The event search condition will be saved. In the TAA (IOA) rule table in the **Custom rules** section, **TAA** subsection of the web interface, the new rule is displayed with the specified name.

If you want to save event search conditions as a user-defined TAA (IOA) rule, avoid using the following fields:

- IOAId.
- IOATag.
- IOATechnique.
- IOATactics.
- IOAImportance.
- IOAConfidence.

At the time of saving the user-defined TAA (IOA) rule, the application may not have any events containing data for these fields. When events with this data turn up, the user-defined field that you have created earlier will be unable to mark events by these fields.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot create TAA (IOA) rules based on event search conditions.

Importing a TAA (IOA) rule

You can import an IOC format file and use it to scan events and create Targeted Attack Analyzer alerts.

It is highly recommended that you test custom TAA (IOA) rules in a test environment before you import them. Custom TAA (IOA) rules may cause performance issues, in which case stable performance of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is not guaranteed

To import a TAA (IOA) rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **TAA** subsection.

   This opens the TAA (IOA) rule table.

2. Click **Import**.

   This opens the file selection window on your local computer.

3. Select the file that you want to upload and click **Open**.

   This opens the **New TAA (IOA) rule** window.

4. Set the **State** toggle switch to **Enabled** if you want to enable the rule for scanning the event database.

5. On the **Details** tab, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the rule.

6. In the **Description** field, enter any additional information about the rule.

7. In the **Importance** drop-down list, select the importance level to be assigned to alerts generated using this TAA (IOA) rule.

   - **Low**.
   - **Medium**.
   - **High**.

8. In the **Confidence** drop-down list, select the level of confidence of this rule based on your estimate:

   - **Low**.
   - **Medium**.
   - **High**.

9. Under **Apply to**, select check boxes corresponding to servers on which you want to apply the rule.

10. On the **Query** tab, verify the defined search conditions. Make changes if necessary.

11. Click **Save**.

    The user-defined TAA (IOA) rule is imported into the application.

You can also add a TAA (IOA) rule by saving events database search conditions in the **Threat Hunting** section.

Viewing custom TAA (IOA) rule details

To display information about the TAA (IOA) rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **TAA** subsection.

   This opens the TAA (IOA) rule table.

2. Select the rule for which you want to view information.

   This opens a window containing information about the rule.

The window contains the following information:

- Click the **Alerts** link to display the alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology and the name of the TAA (IOA) rule that you are working on.
- Click the **Find events** link to display the events table in a new browser tab. The table is filtered by rule name.
- Click the **Run query** link to display the events table in a new browser tab. The table is filtered by rule name. The event search conditions are populated with information from the TAA (IOA) rule that you are working on. For example, `EventType=Process started AND FileName CONTAINS <name of the rule you are working on>`. You can edit the event search query.
- Click the **IOA ID** link to display the ID that the application assigns to each rule.

  IDs cannot be modified. You can copy the ID by clicking the **Copy value to clipboard** button.
- **State** is the use of the rule in events database scans.

The **Details** tab shows the following information:

- **Name** is the name of the rule that you specified when you added the rule.
- **Description** is any additional information about the rule that you specified.
- **Importance** is an estimate of the probable impact of the event on the security of computers or the corporate LAN as specified by the user when the rule was added.
- **Confidence** is the level of confidence depending on the likelihood of false alarms as defined by the user when the rule was added.

- **Type** is the type of the rule depending on the role of the server which generated it:
  - **Global**—Created on the PCN server. These rules are used to scan events on this PCN server and all SCN servers connected to this PCN server. Scanned events belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the program web interface.
  - **Local**—Created on the SCN server. These rules are used to scan events on this SCN server. Scanned events belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the program web interface.
- **Apply to**—Name of servers with the Central Node component on which the rule is applied.

The **Query** tab displays the source code of the query being checked. Click the **Run query** link in the upper part of the window to go to the **Threat Hunting** section and run an event search query.

Searching for alerts and events in which TAA (IOA) rules were triggered

To search and display alerts and events that were created by a user-defined TAA (IOA) rule triggering:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **TAA** subsection.

   This opens the TAA (IOA) rule table.

2. Select the rule for which you want to view the triggering result.

   This opens a window containing information about the rule.

3. Do one of the following:
   - If you want to view alerts generated by the TAA (IOA) rule triggering, click **Alerts** to go to the alerts database.

     The alert table is opened in a new browser tab.
   - If you want to view events generated by the TAA (IOA) rule triggering, click **Events** to go to the events database.

     The event table is opened in a new browser tab.

To search and display alerts and events that were created by a Kaspersky TAA (IOA) rule triggering:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click the link in the **Technologies** column to open the filter configuration window.

3. In the drop-down list on the left, select **Contain**.

4. In the drop-down list on the right, select the **(TAA) Targeted Attack Analyzer** technology.

5. Click **Apply**.

   The table displays alerts generated by the TAA technology based on TAA (IOA) rules.

6. Select an alert for which the **Detected** column displays the name of the relevant rule.

   This opens a window containing information about the alert.

7. Under **Scan results**, click the link with the name of the rule to open the rule information window.

8. Do one of the following:

- If you want to view alerts generated by the TAA (IOA) rule triggering, click **Alerts** to go to the alerts database.

  The alert table is opened in a new browser tab.

- If you want to view events generated by the TAA (IOA) rule triggering, click **Events** to go to the events database.

  The event table is opened in a new browser tab.

Filtering and searching TAA (IOA) rules

To filter or search for TAA (IOA) rules by required criteria:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **TAA** subsection.

   This opens the TAA (IOA) rule table.

2. Depending on the filtering criterion, do the following:

- **By importance**

  a. Click the icon to open the IOA rule filter configuration window.

  b. Select the check boxes next to the importance levels that you want to include in the filter criteria:

  - **Low**.
  - **Medium**.
  - **High**.

  c. Click **Apply**.

- **By rule type**

  a. Click the **Type** link to open the filter configuration window.

  b. Select one of the following options:

  - **All**—all rules.
  - **Global** – rules created on the PCN server. These rules are used to scan events on this PCN server and all SCN servers connected to this PCN server. Scanned events belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the program web interface.
  - **Local**—rules created on an SCN server. These rules are used to scan events on this SCN server. Scanned events belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the program web interface.

- **By confidence level**

  a. Click the **Confidence** link to open the filter configuration window.

  b. Select the check boxes opposite those confidence levels that you want to add to filter criteria.

  - **Low**.
  - **Medium**.
  - **High**.

  c. Click **Apply**.

- **By rule name**

  a. Click the **IOA tag** link to open the filter configuration window.

  b. Enter one or several characters of the IOA rule name.

  c. Click **Apply**.

- **By server name**

  a. Click the **Servers** link to open the filter configuration window.

  b. Select the check boxes next to the tenants or servers within the tenants that you want to include in the filter criteria.

  c. Click **Apply**.

- **By rule-based alert generation**

  a. Click the **Generate alerts** link to expand the filter settings list.

  b. Select one of the following options:

  - **All**
  - **Enabled**
  - **Disabled**

- **By rule state**

  a. Click **State** to expand the filter settings list.

  b. Select one of the following options:

  - **All**
  - **Enabled**
  - **Disabled**

The table displays only rules that match the specified criteria.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Resetting the TAA (IOA) rule filter

To clear a TAA (IOA) rule filter based on one or multiple filter conditions:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **TAA** subsection.
   This opens the TAA (IOA) rule table.
2. Click to the right of that column heading of the rule table for which you want to clear filtering criteria.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The table displays only rules that match the specified criteria.

Enabling and disabling TAA (IOA) rules

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can enable or disable one or several rules, as well as all rules at once.

To enable or disable the use of a TAA (IOA) rule when scanning events:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **TAA** subsection.
   This opens the TAA (IOA) rule table.
2. In the row with the relevant rule, select or clear the check box in the **State** column.

The use of the rule when scanning events is enabled or disabled.

To enable or disable the use of all or multiple TAA (IOA) rules when scanning events:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **TAA** subsection.
   This opens the TAA (IOA) rule table.
2. Select the check boxes on the left of the rules whose use you want to enable or disable.
   You can select all rules by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.

A control panel appears in the lower part of the window.

3. Click **Enable** or **Disable** to enable or disable all rules.

The use of the selected rules when scanning events is enabled or disabled.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can manage only global TAA (IOA) rules on the PCN server. You can manage local TAA (IOA) rules on SCN servers of tenants to which you have access.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot enable or disable TAA (IOA) rules.

Modifying a TAA (IOA) rule

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can modify custom TAA (IOA) rules. Rules created by Kaspersky cannot be edited.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can edit only those TAA (IOA) rules that were created on the current server. Consequently, in the web interface of the PCN, you can edit only the rules that were created on the PCN. In the web interface of an SCN, you can edit only the rules that were created on the SCN.

To edit a TAA (IOA) rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **TAA** subsection.

   This opens the TAA (IOA) rule table.

2. Select the rule that you want to modify.

   This opens a window containing information about the rule.

3. Make the relevant changes.

4. Click **Save**.

The rule settings are modified.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot modify TAA (IOA) rules based on event search conditions.

Deleting TAA (IOA) rules

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can delete one or more TAA (IOA) rules, or all rules at the same time.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can delete only those TAA (IOA) rules that were created on the current server. Consequently, in the web interface of the PCN, you can delete only the rules that were created on the PCN. In the web interface of an SCN, you can delete only the rules that were created on the SCN.

To delete a custom TAA (IOA) rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **TAA** subsection.

   This opens the TAA (IOA) rule table.

2. Select the rule that you want to delete.

   This opens a window containing information about the rule.

3. Click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

4. Click **Yes**.

The rule is deleted.

To delete all or multiple custom TAA (IOA) rules:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **TAA** subsection.

   This opens the TAA (IOA) rule table.

2. Select the check boxes on the left of the rules that you want to delete.

   You can select all rules by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.

   A control panel appears in the lower part of the window.

3. Click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

4. Click **Yes**.

The selected rules will be deleted.

You cannot delete TAA (IOA) rules defined by Kaspersky. If you do not want to use a Kaspersky TAA (IOA) rule for scanning, add it to exclusions.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot modify TAA (IOA) rules based on event search conditions.

Managing user-defined IDS rules

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, custom IDS rules can have one of the following types:

- **Global**—Created on the PCN server. These rules are used to scan events on this PCN server and all SCN servers connected to this PCN server. Scanned events belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the program web interface.
- **Local**—Created on the SCN server. These rules are used to scan events on this SCN server. Scanned events belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the program web interface.

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can import, replace, and delete user-defined IDS rules, as well as add Kaspersky-defined IDS rules to exclusions from scanning. Users with the **Senior security officer** or **Security auditor** roles can use IDS rules to search for signs of targeted attacks, infected and possibly infected objects in the alert database, and to view the IDS rule information.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot gain access to user-defined IDS rules.

Importing a user-defined IDS rule

You can import a Snort® or Suricata file and use it to scan events and create Intrusion Detection System alerts.

It is highly recommended that you test custom IDS rules in a test environment before you import them. Custom IDS rules may cause performance issues, in which case stable performance of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is not guaranteed

For example, loading user-defined rules can cause the following errors:

- The application may create too many IDS alerts.
- If the application cannot record all IDS alerts in time, some network traffic objects may remain unscanned.
- Regular expressions in user-defined rules may impact performance or cause faulty operation of the application.
- Even formally correct user-defined rules may impact performance or cause faulty operation of the application.

IDs and attributes of custom rules may be modified when they are uploaded. Reject and Drop actions are changed to Alert. Rules with the Pass action are deleted

To import a custom IDS rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **IDS** subsection.

   This opens the user-defined IDS rule window.

2. Click **Import**.

   This opens the file selection window on your local computer.

3. Select the file that you want to upload and click **Open**.

The user-defined IDS rule is imported into the application.

Viewing the information of a user-defined IDS rule

To view the information of a user-defined IDS rule,

In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **IDS** subsection.

The web interface displays the following information about the IDS rule:

- **State**—Usage status of the rule in event scans.
- **File size**—Size of the rule file.
- **Last update**—Time when the rule was imported.
- **Created by**—Name of the user whose account was used to import the rule.
- **Importance**—Importance level that is assigned to an alert generated using this IDS rule.

Enabling and disabling the use of an IDS rule when scanning events

To enable or disable an IDS rule when scanning events:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **IDS** subsection.
2. This opens the user-defined IDS rule window.
3. Move the **State** switch to one of the following positions:
   - **Enabled**
   - **Disabled**

The use of the IDS rule when scanning events is enabled or disabled.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot enable or disable IDS rules.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot gain access to user-defined IDS rules.

Configuring the importance of alerts generated by the user-defined IDS rule

To configure the importance level that is assigned to alerts generated using the IDS rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **IDS** subsection.
2. This opens the user-defined IDS rule window. In the **Importance** drop-down list, select the importance level to be assigned to alerts generated using this IDS rule.
   - **Low**.
   - **Medium**.
   - **High**.
3. If necessary, use the **State** switch to enable this IDS rule.

The importance of alerts generated using this IDS rule is configured.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot configure IDS rules.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot gain access to user-defined IDS rules.

Replacing a user-defined IDS rule

You can replace a previously imported Snort or Suricata file and use it to scan events and create Intrusion Detection System alerts.

It is highly recommended that you test custom IDS rules in a test environment before you import them. Custom IDS rules may cause performance issues, in which case stable performance of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is not guaranteed

IDs and attributes of custom rules may be modified when they are uploaded. Reject and Drop actions are changed to Alert. Rules with the Pass action are deleted

To replace a custom IDS rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **IDS** subsection.
2. This opens the user-defined IDS rule window. Under the rule information, click **Replace**.
   This opens the file selection window on your local computer.
3. Select the file that you want to upload and click **Open**.

The user-defined IDS rule is imported into the application, replacing the previously imported rule.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot replace user-defined IDS rules.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot gain access to user-defined IDS rules.

Exporting a user-defined IDS rule file to the computer

You can export a previously imported IDS rule file.

To export a user-defined IDS rule file:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **IDS** subsection.
   This opens the user-defined IDS rule window.
2. Below the rule information, click **Download**.

The file will be saved to your local computer in the browser's downloads folder.

Deleting a user-defined IDS rule

When working in distributed solution mode, users with the **Senior security officer** role can delete only a user-defined IDS rule that was imported into the current server. It means that in the PCN web interface, you can only delete a rule that was created on the PCN. In the SCN web interface, you can only delete a rule that was created on the SCN.

To delete a custom IDS rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **IDS** subsection.
2. This opens the user-defined IDS rule window. Click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.
3. Click **Yes**.

The rule is deleted.

You cannot delete IDS rules defined by Kaspersky. If you do not want to use a Kaspersky IDS rule for scanning, add it to exclusions.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot delete user-defined IDS rules.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot gain access to user-defined IDS rules.

Managing user-defined YARA rules

You can use YARA rules as YARA module databases to scan files and objects received at the Central Node and to scan hosts with the Endpoint Agent component.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, custom YARA rules can have one of the following types:

- **Global**—Created on the PCN server. These rules are used to scan files and objects received at the PCN server and all SCN servers connected to that PCN server. Scanned files and objects belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the application web interface.
- **Local**—Created on the SCN server. These rules are used to scan files and objects received at the SCN server. Scanned files and objects belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the application web interface.

When managing the application web interface, users with the **Senior security officer** role can import a YARA rule file into Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform using the application web interface.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles can only view YARA rules.

Viewing the YARA rule table

The table of user-defined YARA rules contains information about YARA rules that are used to scan events and create alerts; the table is displayed in the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection of the application web interface window.

The table contains the following information:

- **Created** is the rule creation time.
- —Alert importance for the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user depending on the impact this alert may have on computer or corporate LAN security based on Kaspersky experience.

  By default, alerts generated by uploaded YARA rules are assigned a high level of importance.
- **Type** is the type of the rule depending on the operating mode of the application and the role of the server which generated the rule:
  - **Global**—Created on the PCN server. These rules are used to scan files and objects received at the PCN server and all SCN servers connected to that PCN server. Scanned files and objects belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the application web interface.
  - **Local**—Created on the SCN server. These rules are used to scan files and objects received at the SCN server. Scanned files and objects belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the application web interface.
- **Name** – name of the rule.
- **File name** is the name of the file from which the rule was imported.
- **Created by** is the name of the user whose account was used to import the rule.
- **Servers** is the name of the server with the PCN or SCN role to which the rule applies.

  This column is displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
- **Traffic scan** is the usage status of the rule when stream scanning files and objects arriving at the Central Node:
  - **Enabled** – the rule is being used.
  - **Disabled** – the rule is not being used.

Configuring YARA rule table display

You can show or hide columns and change the order of columns in the table.

To configure the table display:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.

   This opens the YARA rule table.
2. In the heading part of the table, click .

   This opens the **Customize table** window.
3. If you want to show a column in the table, select the check box next to the name of the parameter that you want displayed in the table.

   If you want to hide a parameter in the table, clear the check box.

   At least one check box must be selected.

4. If you want to change the order of columns in the table, move the mouse cursor to the row with the relevant parameter, click and move the row to its new place.
5. If you want to restore default table display settings, click **Default**.
6. Click **Apply**.

The table display is configured.

Importing YARA rules

To import YARA rules:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.
2. Click **Upload**.

   This opens the file selection window.
3. Select the YARA rules file that you want to upload and click the **Open** button.

   This closes the file selection window and opens the **Import YARA rules** window.

   > The maximum allowed size of an uploaded file is 20 MB.

   A report is displayed in the lower part of the window. The report contains the following information:

   - The number of rules that can be successfully imported.
   - The number of rules that will not be imported (if any).

     For each rule that cannot be imported, its name is listed.
4. Select the **Traffic scan** check box if you want to use imported rules for streaming scans of objects and data received at the Central Node.
5. If necessary, enter any additional information in the **Description** field.

   > The **Importance** field cannot be edited. By default, alerts generated by uploaded YARA rules are assigned a high level of importance.
6. Under **Apply to**, select check boxes corresponding to servers on which you want to apply the rules.

   This field is displayed only when you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
7. Click **Save**.

Imported rules are displayed in the table of YARA rules.

Viewing YARA rule details

To view YARA rule details:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.

   This opens the YARA rule table.

2. Select the rule for which you want to view information.

This opens a window containing information about the rule.

The window contains the following information:

- Click the **Alerts** link to display the alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology and the name of the TAA (IOA) rule that you are working on.
- The **Start YARA scan** link opens the task creation window.
- The **Download** link lets you download a file with YARA rules.
- **Rule name** is the name of the rule specified in the file.
- **Traffic scan** is the usage status of the rule when stream scanning files and objects arriving at the Central Node:
- **Type** is the type of the rule depending on the role of the server which generated it:
  - **Global**—Created on the PCN server. These rules are used to scan files and objects received at the PCN server and all SCN servers connected to that PCN server. Scanned files and objects belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the application web interface.
  - **Local**—Created on the SCN server. These rules are used to scan files and objects received at the SCN server. Scanned files and objects belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the application web interface.
- **Importance**—Importance level that is assigned to an alert generated using this rule.

  By default, alerts generated by uploaded YARA rules are assigned a high level of importance.
- **Description** is any additional information about the rule that you specified.
- **Apply to** – name of servers with the Central Node component on which the rule is applied.

Filtering and searching YARA rules

To filter or search for YARA rules by required criteria:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.

   This opens the YARA rule table.

2. Depending on the filtering criterion, do the following:

- **By creation time**

  a. Click the **Created** link to open the filter settings window.

  b. Select one of the following options:

  - **Any time** if you want the table to display rules created at any time.
  - **Last hour** if you want the application to display the rules that were created during the last hour in the table.
  - **Last day** if you want the application to display the rules that were created during the last day in the table.
  - **Custom range** if you want the application to display the rules that were created during the period you specify in the table.

  c. If you selected **Custom range**, select the start and end dates for the period and click **Apply**.

- **By rule name**

  a. Click the **Rule name** link to open the filtering menu.

  b. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:

  - **Contain**
  - **Not contain**

  c. In the text box, type the name of the rule or a sequence of characters from the name of the rule.

  d. Click **Apply**.

- **By file name**

  a. Click the **File name** link to open the filtering menu.

  b. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:

  - **Contain**
  - **Not contain**

  c. In the entry field, type the name of the file or a sequence of characters from the name of the file.

  d. Click **Apply**.

- **By the name of the user who uploaded the rules file**

  a. Click the **Created by** link to open the filtering menu.

  b. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:

  - **Contain**
  - **Not contain**

  c. In the text box, type the user name or a sequence of characters from the user name.

  d. Click **Apply**.

- **By rule state**

  a. Click the **Traffic scan** link to expand the filter settings list.

  b. Select one of the following options:

  - **All**
  - **Enabled**
  - **Disabled**

The table displays only rules that match the specified criteria.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Clearing a YARA rule filter

To clear the YARA rule filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.
   This opens the YARA rule table.
2. Click to the right of that column heading of the rule table for which you want to clear filtering criteria.
   If you want to clear multiple filter conditions, take steps to clear each filter condition individually.

The selected filters are cleared.

The table displays only rules that match the specified criteria.

Enabling and disabling YARA rules

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can enable or disable one or several rules, as well as all rules at once.

When working in distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can enable or disable only those YARA rules that were created on the current server. It means that in the web interface of the PCN, you can enable or disable only the rules that were created on the PCN server. In the web interface of an SCN, you can enable or disable only the rules that were created on the SCN server.

If YARA rules with identical names are enabled on the PCN and SCN servers, the PCN rule takes precedence over the SCN rule when scanning files and objects.

To enable or disable a YARA rule for stream scanning files and objects arriving at the Central Node:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.
   This opens the YARA rule table.
2. In the row with the relevant rule, select or clear the check box in the **Traffic scan** column.

The rule is enabled or disabled for stream scanning files and objects arriving at the Central Node.

To enable or disable all or multiple YARA rules for stream scanning files and objects arriving at the Central Node:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.
2. Select the check boxes on the left of the rules whose use you want to enable or disable.
   You can select all rules by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.
   A control panel appears in the lower part of the window.
3. Click **Enable** or **Disable** to enable or disable all rules.

Selected rules are enabled or disabled for stream scanning files and objects arriving at the Central Node.

Deleting YARA rules

To delete a YARA rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.
   This opens the YARA rule table.
2. Select the rule that you want to delete.
   This opens a window containing information about the rule.

3. Click **Delete**.
4. This opens the action confirmation window; in that window, click **Yes**.

The rule is deleted.

To delete all or multiple YARA rules:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.

   This opens the YARA rule table.
2. Select the check boxes on the left of the rules that you want to delete.

   You can select all rules by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.

   A control panel appears in the lower part of the window.
3. Click **Delete**.
4. This opens the action confirmation window; in that window, click **Yes**.

The selected rules will be deleted.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot delete YARA rules.

Managing objects in Storage and quarantine

Storage is used for storing files that must be sent for scanning as well as files obtained as a result of running tasks: **Get file**, **Restore file from quarantine**, **Get forensics**, **Get NTFS metafiles**, **Get registry key**, **Get process memory dump**.

Storage is located on the Central Node server.

You can manage objects in Storage as follows: delete, download, upload, and send objects to be scanned, and filter lists of objects.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform displays the objects in Storage as a table of objects.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, Storage is located on PCN and SCN servers. The web interface of the PCN server displays information about Storage of all connected SCNs for those tenants to which the user has access.

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can place copies of objects into Storage using tasks or by uploading the object to Storage using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface on the PCN or SCN server that is used for managing tenants to which the user has access.

Users with the **Security officer** role can only work with files received as part of tasks that the same user created on the PCN or SCN server which is used to manage tenants to which the user has access.

If you consider a file threatening, you can quarantine it on the computer with the Endpoint Agent component. Metadata of the quarantined file are displayed in the **Storage** section, **Quarantine** subsection of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface.

Quarantine on a Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server is an area of Storage of the server part of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform solution, which is used for storing metadata of objects quarantined on Endpoint Agent computer, in the **Storage** section, **Quarantine** subsection of the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

You can manage quarantined objects: restore objects from quarantine and upload copies of objects quarantined on Endpoint Agent computers to Storage of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform displays the information about quarantined objects as a table.

The maximum capacity of Storage is determined when configuring the sizing of the application. As soon as this threshold value is exceeded, the application starts to remove the oldest copies of objects from Storage. When the amount of occupied space is again below the threshold value, the application stops removing copies of objects from Storage.

> The actual size of the object can be greater than the apparent size of the object due to the metadata required to restore the object from quarantine. When an object is quarantined, its actual size is considered. Encrypted files may be sent in decrypted form (depending on encryption settings), compressed files are sent as-is.

Viewing the table of objects that were placed in Storage

The table of objects placed in Storage is in the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection of the application web interface window.

The table of objects placed in Storage contains the following information:

1. **Type** is the method by which the object was placed in Storage.

   The following methods are possible:

   - – The object was placed in Storage in one of the following ways:
     - The **Get file** task was run.
     - A copy was received of an object that was quarantined on hosts with the Endpoint Agent component (in the **Storage** section, **Quarantine** subsection, **Get file from quarantine** action was selected in the menu for the link with the directory of the object).
   - – The object was placed in Storage in one of the following ways:
     - The **Get forensics** task was run.
     - The **Get process memory dump** task was run.
     - The **Get registry key** task was run.
     - The **Get NTFS metafiles** task was run.
   - – The object was manually downloaded by the user in the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

2. **Object**—Information about the object. For example, the file name or file path.

3. **Scan results**—Object scan result.

   The scan result is displayed as one of the following values:

   - **Not detected**—As a result of a scan, the application did not detect signs of a targeted attack, probably infected objects, or suspicious activity.
   - **Error**—Object scan ended with an error.
   - **In process**—Object scan has not yet completed.
   - **Not scanned**—Object was not sent to be scanned.
   - **Detected**—As a result of a scan, the application detected signs of a targeted attack, a probably infected object, or suspicious activity.

4. **Servers** is the name of the server with the PCN or SCN role. The host from which the object was received is connected to this server.

   This column is displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.

5. **Source**—IP address or name of the host from which the object was received, or the name of the user account that uploaded the object.

6. **Record time**—Date and time when the object was placed in Storage.

7. **Actions**—Actions that can be performed with the object. The following actions are available:

   - — delete an object from Storage.
   - — send the object in Storage for scanning by the Anti-Malware Engine, YARA, and Sandbox technologies.
   - — download the object from Storage to your computer.

Clicking the link with the file name or file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Filter by this value**.
- **Exclude from filter**.
- **Download**.
- **Send file for scanning**.
- **Find events**:
  - **File path**
  - **MD5**
  - **SHA256**

- **Find alerts**:
  - **File path**
  - **MD5**
  - **SHA256**
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Filter by this value**.
- **Exclude from filter**.
- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Viewing information about an object manually placed in Storage using the web interface

To view information about an object manually placed in Storage:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.
   This opens the object table.
2. In the table, select the object with the icon for which you want to view information.
   This opens the object details window.

The window contains the following information:

- **File name**—Name of the file.
- **Size**—Size of the file.
- **MD5**—MD5 hash of a file.
- **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of a file.
- **Time uploaded**—Time of upload for objects that were manually uploaded by a user.
- **User name**—Name of the user account that manually uploaded the object to Storage.
- **Scan results**—Result of object scan by the application.

The **Find on TIP** button allows to find a file on the Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal.

Click **Create prevention rule** to prevent the file from running.

You can click **Download** to download the file to your computer's hard drive.

Clicking the link with the file name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with **MD5** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find on TIP.
- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with **SHA256** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find on TIP.
- **Find on virustotal.com**.
- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Create prevention rule.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Viewing information about an object placed in Storage by a get file task

*To view information about an object placed in Storage by a **Get file** or **Get file from quarantine** task:*

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.
   This opens the object table.
2. In the table, select the object with the icon for which you want to view information.
   This opens the object details window.

The window contains the following information:

- Recommendations group. The following recommendations can be displayed:
  - The **Task** link opens the **Tasks** section; this is the task that has placed the object in Storage.
  - The **Alert** link opens the **Alerts** section; this is the alert containing the object that was placed in Storage.
  - The **Quarantined object** link opens the **Storage** section, **Quarantine** subsection; this is the metadata of the quarantined object.
- **Object**—File name or path.
- **Size**—Size of the file.
- **MD5**—MD5 hash of a file.
- **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of a file.
- **Record time**—Time when the object was placed in Storage.
- **Tenant** —Name of the tenant to which the Central Node, PCN, or SCN server belongs.
- **Server**—Name of the Central Node, PCN, or SCN server. The host from which the object was received is connected to this server.
- **Host**—Name of the host from which the object was received.
- **Scan results**—Result of object scan by the application.

You can click **Sandbox detect** to open a window with detailed information about the results of file behavior analysis.

The **Find on TIP** button allows to find a file on the Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal.

Click **Create prevention rule** to prevent the file from running.

You can click **Download** to download the file to your computer's hard drive.

Clicking the link with the file name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with **MD5** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find on TIP**.
- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.

- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with **SHA256** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find on TIP.
- **Find on virustotal.com**.
- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Create prevention rule.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Viewing information about an object placed in Storage by a get data task

*To view information about an object placed in Storage by **Get forensics**, **Get process memory dump**, **Get registry key**, **Get NTFS metafiles** tasks:*

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.
   This opens the object table.
2. In the table, select the object with the icon for which you want to view information.
   This opens the object details window.

The window contains the following information:

- **Object** is the file name or path.
- **Size**—Size of the file.
- **MD5**—MD5 hash of a file.
- **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of a file.
- **Record time**—Time when the object was placed in Storage.
- **Host**—Name of the host from which the object was received.

You can click **Download** to download the file to your computer's hard drive.

Clicking the link with the file name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with **MD5** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find on TIP.
- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with **SHA256** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find on TIP.
- **Find on virustotal.com**.
- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- Create prevention rule.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Downloading objects from Storage

If you consider an object in Storage to be safe, you can download it to a local computer.

Downloading infected objects could pose a threat to the security of your local computer.

To download an object from Storage:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. In the right part of the line with the name of the object that you want to download, click .

   The object will be saved to your local computer in the browser's downloads folder. The file is downloaded as a ZIP archive protected with the password "infected".

Uploading objects to Storage

If you need to scan a specific object, you can upload this object to Storage and send it to be scanned.

To upload an object to Storage:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.
   This opens the object table.
2. In the upper-right corner of the window, click the **Upload** button.
   This opens the file selection window.
3. Select the object that you want to upload to Storage.
4. If you want to upload a file with the .Lnk extension to Storage:
   a. In the **File name** field, enter *.Lnk and press **Enter**.
   b. Select the object.
5. Click **Open**.

The object will be uploaded to Storage and will be displayed in the table of objects.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot upload objects to Storage.

Sending objects in Storage for scanning

You can scan Storage objects with the Central Node component using the Anti-Malware Engine and YARA technologies, and with the Sandbox component.

It is recommended to send objects from Storage to be scanned in the following cases:

- Scanning of objects when placed in Storage had been disabled.
- Application databases have been updated.
- An object was manually uploaded to Storage.

To send an object from Storage for scanning:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.
   This opens the object table.
2. Click the object that you want to scan.
   This opens the object details window.

3. Click **Scan**.

   The object scan will start.

   After the object scan is complete, its status will be displayed in the object table.

You can also send an object in Storage for scanning by clicking in the right part of the object information row in the table of objects placed in Storage.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot scan objects in Storage.

Deleting objects from Storage

To delete an object from Storage:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. Click the object that you want to delete.

   This opens the object details window.

3. Click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

4. Click **Yes**.

The object will be deleted from Storage.

You can also delete an object in Storage by clicking in the right part of the object information row in the table of objects placed in Storage.

To delete all or multiple objects from Storage:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. Select check boxes next to objects that you want to delete from Storage.

   You can select all objects by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.

3. In the pane that appears in the lower part of the window, click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

4. Click **Yes**.

The selected objects are removed from Storage.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot delete objects in Storage.

Filtering objects in Storage by object type

To filter objects in Storage by type:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. Click the **Type** link to open the object filtering menu.

3. Select one or more check boxes:

   - **Uploaded by a Get file task** if you want the table to display objects that were placed in Storage by **Get file** and **Restore file from quarantine** tasks.
   - **Uploaded through the web interface** if you want the table to display objects uploaded by the user using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface.
   - **Uploaded by a get data task** if you want the table to display objects placed in Storage by **Get forensics**, **Get NTFS metafiles**, **Get registry key**, **Get process memory dump** tasks.

4. Click **Apply**.

The objects table will display only objects matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering objects in Storage by object description

To filter objects in Storage by object description:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. Click the **Object** link to open the object filtering menu.

3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following options:

   - **File path**
   - **MD5**
   - **SHA256**

4. In the drop-down list, select one of the following object filtering operators:

   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**

- **Equal to**
- **Not equal to**
- **Matches**
- **Not matches**

5. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the object description.
6. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
7. Click **Apply**.

The objects table will display only objects matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering objects in Storage based on scan results

To filter objects in Storage by scan results for these objects:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.
   This opens the object table.
2. Click the **Scan results** link to open the object filtering menu.
3. Select one or more check boxes:
   - **Not detected**
   - **Error**
   - **In process**
   - **Not scanned**
   - **Detected**
4. Click **Apply**.

The objects table will display only objects matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering objects in Storage based on the name of Central Node, PCN, or SCN server

To filter objects in Storage by the name of Central Node, PCN, or SCN server:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.
   This opens the object table.
2. Click the **Servers** link to open the object filtering menu.
3. Select one or multiple check boxes opposite those servers by which you want to filter objects in Storage.
4. Click **Apply**.

The objects table will display only objects matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering objects in Storage by object source

To filter objects in Storage by the source from which they were received:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.
   This opens the object table.
2. Click the **Source** link to open the object filtering menu.
3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following object filtering operators:
   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**
4. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the IP address, host name or name of the user account that manually uploaded the object.
5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
6. Click **Apply**.

The objects table will display only objects matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering objects based on the time they were placed in Storage

To filter objects by the time when they were placed in Storage:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. Click the **Record time** link to open the object filtering menu.

3. Select one of the following object display periods:

   - **All** if you want the table to display all objects that were placed in Storage.
   - **Last hour** if you want the table to display objects that were placed in Storage during the last hour.
   - **Last day** if you want the table to display objects that were placed in Storage during the last day.
   - **Custom range** if you want the table to display objects that were placed in Storage during the period you specify.

4. If you have selected the **Custom range** object display period:

   a. In the calendar that opens, specify the start and end dates of the object display period.

   b. Click **Apply**.

The objects table will display only objects matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Clearing a Storage objects filter

To clear the Storage objects filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. Click the button on the right of the header of the Storage objects table column for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The objects table will display only objects matching the filter criteria you have set.

Viewing the table of objects quarantined on computers with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component

The table of objects quarantined on computers with the Endpoint Agent component can be found in the **Storage** section, **Quarantine** subsection of the application web interface.

The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server stores metadata of objects quarantined on computers with the Endpoint Agent component. The objects themselves are kept in special storage on each computer where the threatening object was detected.

The table of objects quarantined on computers with the Endpoint Agent component contains the following information:

1. **Object**—Information about the object. For example, the file name or file path.
2. **Source**—IP address or host name of the computers with the Endpoint Agent component where the object is quarantined.
3. **Record time**—Date and time when the object was quarantined.
4. **State**—State of the object.

The right part of the object information row contains buttons:

- You can click to delete the metadata of the object on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server.
- You can click to restore the object from quarantine on a computer the Endpoint Agent component.
- You can click to copy the object from quarantine on the computer with the Endpoint Agent component to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server.

Clicking the link with the file name or file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Filter by this value**.
- **Exclude from filter**.
- **Download**.
- **Send file for scanning**.
- **Find events**:
  - **File path**
  - **MD5**
  - **SHA256**

- **Find alerts**:
  - **File path**
  - **MD5**
  - **SHA256**
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Filter by this value**.
- **Exclude from filter**.
- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Viewing information about a quarantined object

To view information about an object quarantined on a computer with the Endpoint Agent component:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Quarantine** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. In the table, select the object whose information you want to view.

   This opens the object details window.

The window contains the following information:

- Recommendations group. The **Task** recommendation can be displayed, which is a link that opens the **Tasks** section; this is the task that has quarantined the object.
- **Type** is the type of the quarantined object.

  The following types of objects are available:

  - — file.
  - — process memory dump.
- **Object** is the file name or path.
- **State** is the state of the file (whether the file can be restored from quarantine).
- **Source** is the name of the computer with the Endpoint Agent component on which the object is quarantined.
- **Record time** is the date and time when the object was quarantined.
- **Actions** is the state of the file (whether the file can be restored from quarantine).

The following actions are available:

- — delete the file from quarantine.
- — obtain a copy of the file on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server.

Clicking the link with the file name or file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find events.
- Find alerts.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Restoring an object from quarantine

To restore the object from quarantine on a computer the Endpoint Agent component:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Quarantine** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. In the table, select the object that you want to restore from quarantine on the computer with the Endpoint Agent component.

   This opens the object details window.

3. Click **Restore** in the lower part of the window.

   This opens the **Tasks** section and the **Restore file from quarantine** task.

4. In the **Description** field, enter the task description.

5. Click **Add**.

The file is restored from quarantine.

You can also run the task to restore the file from quarantine by clicking in the right part of the row with object information of the table of objects quarantined on computers with the Endpoint Agent component.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, a file that is quarantined on an SCN server cannot be restored on the PCN server. You can restore the file on the SCN server on which the quarantine file task was created.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot restore objects from quarantine.

Obtaining a copy of a quarantined object on a Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server

The object that you want to download a copy of must not exceed 100 MB. If the object exceeds 100 MB, the task finishes with an error.

To copy an object quarantined on a computer with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component to a Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Quarantine** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. In the table, select the object that you want to restore from quarantine on the computer with the Endpoint Agent component.

   This opens the object details window.

3. Click **Get file** in the lower part of the window.

   This creates a task for getting a copy of an object that was quarantined on a computer with the Endpoint Agent component. If the task completes successfully, the copy of the object is uploaded to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server. The object is displayed in the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection of the application web interface in the table of objects placed in Storage.

   Information about the created task is displayed in the **Tasks** section of the web interface.

You can also copy an object from quarantine on a computer with the Endpoint Agent component to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server by clicking in the right part of the object information row in the table of objects quarantined on computers with the Endpoint Agent component.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot get copies of objects from quarantine.

Removing information about the quarantined object from the table

To delete the information of an object quarantined on a computer with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component from the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform table:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Quarantine** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. Click the object for which you want to delete information from the table.

   This opens the object details window.

3. Click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

4. Click **Yes**.

The information about the object quarantined on the computer with the Endpoint Agent component is deleted from the table.

You can also delete the information of an object quarantined on a computer with the Endpoint Agent component from the table by clicking in the right part of the object information row in the table of quarantined objects.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot delete information about a quarantined object from the table.

Filtering information about quarantined objects by object type

To filter quarantined object details by object type:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Quarantine** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. Click the **Type** link to open the object filtering menu.
3. Select one or more check boxes:

   - **File** if you want the table to display metadata of quarantined objects.
   - **Process memory dump** if you want the table to display metadata of quarantined dumps.

4. Click **Apply**.

The objects table will display only objects matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering information about quarantined objects by object description

To filter quarantined object details by object description:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Quarantine** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. Click the **Object** link to open the object filtering menu.

3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following object filtering operators:
   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**
4. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the object description.
5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
6. Click **Apply**.

   The objects table will display only objects matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering information about quarantined objects by host name

To filter quarantined object details by the name of the host where they were quarantined:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Quarantine** subsection.
   This opens the object table.
2. Click the **Source** link to open the object filtering menu.
3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following object filtering operators:
   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**
4. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the host name.
5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
6. Click **Apply**.

   The objects table will display only objects matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering information about quarantined objects by time

To filter quarantined object details by the time when they were quarantined:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Quarantine** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. Click the **Record time** link to open the object filtering menu.

3. Select one of the following object display periods:

   - **All** if you want the table to display all objects.
   - **Last hour** if you want the table to display objects that were quarantined during the last hour.
   - **Last day** if you want the table to display objects that were quarantined during the last day.
   - **Custom range** if you want the table to display objects that were quarantined during the period you specify.

4. If you have selected the **Custom range** object display period:

   a. In the calendar that opens, specify the start and end dates of the object display period.

   b. Click **Apply**.

The objects table will display only objects matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Resetting the filter for information about quarantined objects

To clear the filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Quarantine** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. Click to the right of the header of the column of the quarantined objects table for which you want to reset the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The objects table will display only objects matching the filter criteria you have set.

Managing reports

When managing the application web interface, users with the **Senior security officer** role can manage reports about application alerts: create report templates, create reports based on a template, view, and delete reports and report templates.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view reports and report templates and create reports from templates.

A report is generated based on a selection of alerts for a specified period. If you are using distributed solution and multitenancy mode, data is also selected based on the tenant and servers of that tenant.

You can manage report templates and reports in all operating modes of the application in accordance with the license.

Perform the report creation steps in the following order:

1. **Create a report template.**
2. **Create a report based on the template.**

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to reports.

Viewing the table of templates and reports

Templates and reports are displayed in the **Reports** section of the application web interface window.

The **Generated Reports** subsection contains a report table. The table contains the following information:

- **Time created**—Date and time of report creation.
- **Report name**—Name of the report created based on the template.
- **Period**—Period for which the report was generated.
- **Servers** is the name of the server with the PCN or SCN role to which the rule applies.
  This column is displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
- **Created by**—Name of the user that created report.
- **State**—Report state (whether the file can be downloaded).

The **Templates** subsection displays the table of templates. The table contains the following information:

- **Time created**—Date and time when the template was created.
- **Time updated**—Date and time of last modification of the template.
- **Report name**—Name of the template.
- **Created by**—Name of the user that created the template.

Creating a template

When creating a report template, you need to specify all the information that you want to display in the report: report name, its description, availability of a table, graph or image. You can also select the data that you want to display in the report and define the position of report elements.

When creating a report in the **Reports** section, **Generated Reports** subsection of the interface, you can only select the template for creating the report and the data display period.

A new report template is created for each data sample.

To create a template:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Reports** section, **Templates** tab.

   This opens the table of templates.

2. Click **Add**.

   This opens the template creation window. This window contains the body of the report and the report builder in a floating window. You can move the report builder over the workspace of the web interface window.

3. In the **Template name** field in the upper-right corner of the window, type the name that you want to assign to reports that are created from this template. For example, **Alerts by technology**.

   This name is displayed in the table in the **Reports** section, **Generated Reports** subsection when creating all reports in this template.

4. In place of the **Report title** text, type the report name that will be displayed in a report after the report is created. If you do not want to add a report name, you can delete the **Report title** text and leave this report section blank.

   You can format text using the buttons in the **Text** section in the template designer.

5. In place of the **Report description** text, type the report description that will be displayed in a report after the report is created. If you do not want to add a report description, you can delete the **Report description** text and leave this report section blank.

   You can format text using the buttons in the **Text** section in the template designer.

6. Using the report builder, add one or more report elements:

   - **Table**.
   - **Pie chart**.
   - **Image**.

7. If you chose to add an image, the **Image** window opens. Do the following:

   a. Click **Upload**.

   b. Upload the image. For example, you can upload your company logo.

   c. In the list on the right of the upload button, select the alignment of the image on the report page: **Left**, **Right** or **Center**.

   d. Click **Apply**.

8. If you chose to add a pie chart, the **Pie chart on alert attributes** window opens. Do the following:

   a. In the **Name** field, type the name of the pie chart. For example, **Top 5 alerts by technology**. You can also leave the field blank.

   b. In the **Data source** list, select the alert property for which you want to create a pie chart. For example, **Technologies**.

   c. In the **Number of slices** field, specify the maximum number of sectors of the pie chart. When a report is created, the application selects the most frequently encountered data. For example, if you specified 5 sectors and want to create a pie chart by technology, the application will show a pie chart for the 5 technologies that generated the highest number of alerts. The technologies that generated the lowest number of alerts are not displayed on the pie chart.

      Click **Apply**.

9. If you chose to add a table, the **Alerts table** window opens. Do the following:

   a. In the **Available columns** field, double-click to select the alert properties that you want to add to the report table.

      The selected properties are moved to the **Selected columns** field. You can drag the names of columns between the **Available columns** and **Selected columns** fields, and change the order of columns in the report table.

      For example, if you moved the **Technologies, Detected** and **Time created** properties to the **Selected columns** field, the table of the created report will show the technologies that generated alerts, a list of detected objects, and the time when the alerts were generated.

   b. If you want to filter alerts by the **State** property, select the check boxes next to the processing statuses of alerts whose data you want to display in the report.

   c. If you want to filter alerts by the **Technologies** property, select the check boxes next to the names of application modules and components whose data you want to display in the report.

   d. If you want to filter alerts by the **Importance** property, select the check boxes next to the importance levels of alerts whose data you want to display in the report.

   e. If you want to filter alerts by the **VIP status**, select **VIP** in the list. Only alerts with the VIP status are displayed in the report.

   f. Click **Apply**.

10. Click the **Save** button in the upper-right corner of the window.

A new template will be created.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot create report templates.

Creating a report based on a template

To create a report based on a template:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Reports** section, **Generated Reports** subsection.

   This opens the table of reports.

2. Click **Add**.

   This opens the **New report** window.

3. Do the following:

   a. In the **Template** drop-down list, select one of the templates for creating a report.

   b. In the **Period** settings group, select one of the following options:

   - **Last hour** if you want the report to contain information about application operation during the last hour.
   - **Last day** if you want the report to contain information about application operation during the last day.
   - **Last 7 days** if you want the report to contain information about application operation during the last week.
   - **Last 30 days**, if you want the report to contain information about system operation during the last month.
   - **Custom**, if you want the report to contain information about system operation during the period you specify.

4. If you have selected the **Custom** display period for information about application operation:

   a. In the calendar that opens, specify the start and end dates of the period for which the report will be generated.

   b. Click **Apply**.

5. If you are using distributed solution and multitenancy mode, in the **Servers** settings group, select the check boxes next to the tenants and servers whose data you want to include in the report.

6. Click **Create**.

The created report is displayed in the table of reports. You can download the report for viewing on your computer.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot create report templates.

Viewing a report

To view a report:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Reports** section, **Generated Reports** subsection.
   This opens the table of reports.
2. Select the report that you want to view.

The report opens in a new tab in your browser.

Downloading a report to a local computer

To download a report to your computer:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Reports** section, **Generated Reports** subsection.
   This opens the table of reports.
2. In the line containing the report that you want to view, click the icon.
   The report will be saved in HTML format to your local computer in the browser's downloads folder.
   To view a report, you can use any application that lets you view HTML files (for example, a browser).

Editing a template

To edit a template:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Reports** section, **Templates** tab.
2. This opens the table of templates. Select the template that you want to edit.
   This opens the template editing window.
3. You can edit the following settings:

   - **Template name** – report name that is displayed in the table in the **Reports** section, **Generated Reports** subsection when creating all reports based on this template.
   - **Report title** – report name that is displayed in a report after the report is created.
     You can format text using the buttons in the **Text** section in the template designer.
   - **Report description** – report description that is displayed in a report after the report is created.
     You can format text using the buttons in the **Text** section in the template designer.
   - **Image**. You can upload or delete an image.

- **Pie chart**. You can change the following pie chart settings:
  - **Name**.
  - **Data source**.
  - **Number of slices**.

  Click **Apply**.
- **Table**. You can change the following table settings:
  - **Selected columns**. You can drag the names of columns between the **Available columns** and **Selected columns** fields, and change the order of columns in the report table.
  - **State**.
  - **Technologies**.
  - **Importance**.
  - **VIP status**.

4. Select one of the following methods to save the template:
   - If you want to apply changes to the current template, click the **Save** button.

     The template will be changed.
   - If you want to create a new template, enter a name for the template and click **Save as**.

     > The name of the new template must not be the same as the name of an already existing template.

     The new template will be saved.

> Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot edit templates.

Filtering templates by name

To filter templates by name:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Reports** section, **Templates** tab.
2. This opens the table of templates. Click the **Report name** link to open the template filtering menu.
3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following template filtering operators:
   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**

4. Enter one or several characters of the template name.

5. If you want to add a filtering criterion to the filter, click the + button under the list of filtering operators and repeat the sequence for specifying filtering criteria.

6. Click **Apply**.

The table of templates will display only templates that match the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering templates based on the name of the user that created the template

To filter templates by the name of the user that created the template:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Reports** section, **Templates** tab.

2. This opens the table of templates. Click the **Created by** link to open the menu for filtering templates.

3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following template filtering operators:

   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**

4. Enter one or several characters of the user name.

5. If you want to add a filtering criterion to the filter, click the + button under the list of filtering operators and repeat the sequence for specifying filtering criteria.

6. Click **Apply**.

The table of templates will display only templates that match the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering templates by creation time

To filter report templates by creation time:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Reports** section, **Templates** tab.

2. This opens the table of templates. Click the **Time created** link to open the menu for filtering templates.

3. Select one of the following template display periods:

   - **All** if you want the application to display all created templates in the table.
   - **Last hour** if you want the application to display the templates that were created during the last hour in the table.

- **Last day** if you want the application to display the templates that were created during the last day in the table.
- **Custom range** if you want the application to display templates that were created during the period you specify in the table.

4. If you have selected the **Custom range** template display period:
   a. In the calendar that opens, specify the start and end dates of the template display period.
   b. Click **Apply**.

The table of templates will display only templates that match the filter criteria you have set.

Clearing a template filter

To clear the template filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Reports** section, **Templates** tab.
2. This opens the table of templates. Click to the right of the header of the column of the template table for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The table of templates will display only templates that match the filter criteria you have set.

Deleting a template

To delete a template:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Reports** section, **Templates** tab.
2. This opens the table of templates. Select the check box in the line containing the template that you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**.
   This opens the action confirmation window.
4. Click **Yes**.

The template that you selected will be deleted.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot delete templates.

Filtering reports by creation time

To filter reports by creation time:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Reports** section, **Generated Reports** subsection.

   This opens the table of reports.

2. Click the **Time created** link to open the report filtering menu.

3. Select one of the following report display periods:

   - **All** if you want the application to display all created reports in the table.
   - **Last hour** if you want the application to display the reports that were created during the last hour in the table.
   - **Last day** if you want the application to display the reports that were created during the last day in the table.
   - **Custom range** if you want the application to display reports that were created during the period you specify in the table.

4. If you have selected the **Custom range** report display period:

   a. In the calendar that opens, specify the start and end dates of the report display period.

   b. Click **Apply**.

The table of reports will display only reports that match the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering reports by name

To filter reports by name:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Reports** section, **Generated Reports** subsection.

   This opens the table of reports.

2. Click the **Report name** link to open the report filtering menu.

3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following report filtering operators:

   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**

4. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the report name.

5. If you want to add a filtering criterion to the filter, click the + button under the list of filtering operators and repeat the sequence for specifying filtering criteria.
6. Click **Apply**.

The table of reports will display only reports that match the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering reports by the name of the server with the Central Node component

To filter reports by the name of the server with the Central Node component:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Reports** section, **Generated Reports** subsection.
   This opens the table of reports.
2. Click the **Servers** link to open the report filtering menu.
3. Select the check boxes opposite those servers by which you want to filter reports.
4. Click **Apply**.

The table of reports will display only reports that match the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering reports based on the name of the user that created the report

To filter reports by the name of the user that created the report:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Reports** section, **Generated Reports** subsection.
   This opens the table of reports.
2. Click the **Created by** link to open the report filtering menu.
3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following report filtering operators:
   - **Contain**
   - **Not contain**
4. Enter one or several characters of the user name.
5. If you want to add a filtering criterion to the filter, click the + button under the list of filtering operators and repeat the sequence for specifying filtering criteria.

The table of reports will display only reports that match the filter criteria you have set.

Clearing a report filter

To clear the report filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Reports** section, **Generated Reports** subsection.

   This opens the table of reports.

2. Click to the right of the header of the column of the reports table for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The table of reports will display only reports that match the filter criteria you have set.

Deleting a report

To delete an application operation report:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Reports** section, **Generated Reports** subsection.

   This opens the table of reports.

2. Select the check box in the line containing the report that you want to delete.

3. Click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

4. Click **Yes**.

The selected report will be deleted.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot delete reports.

Managing rules for assigning the VIP status to alerts

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can create, delete, modify, import and export a list of rules for assigning the VIP status to alerts.

You can create the following types of rules:

- **IP**. The VIP status will be assigned to new alerts associated with this IP address of the computer.
- **Host name**. The VIP status will be assigned to new alerts associated with this host name.
- **Email**. The VIP status will be assigned to new alerts associated with this email address.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view, import and export a list of rules for assigning the VIP status to alerts.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot view the list of rules for assigning VIP status to alerts.

Viewing the table of VIP status assignment rules

The table of rules for assigning the VIP status is located in the **Settings** section, **VIP status** subsection of the web interface of the application.

The table contains the following information:

- **Criteria**—Criterion for adding an entry to the list of rules.
- **Value**—Value of the criterion.
- **Description**—Additional information specified when creating the rule.

Creating a VIP status assignment rule

To add a rule for assigning the VIP status to alerts:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** tab, **VIP status** section.
2. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, click **Add**.

   The window for adding a rule opens.
3. In the **Criteria** drop-down list, select one of the following rule types:
   - **IP**, if you want to add a rule for a computer IP address.
   - **Host**, if you want to add a rule for a host name.
   - **Email**, if you want to add a rule for an email address.
4. Enter the necessary value in the **Value** field.

   For example, if under **Criteria**, you selected **Email**, enter the email address that you want to add in the **Value** field.

5. In the **Description** field, enter additional information if necessary.

6. Click **Add**.

The rule is added. The VIP status will be assigned to new alerts associated with the added IP address, host name, or email address.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot create VIP status assignment rules.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot view the list of rules for assigning VIP status to alerts.

Deleting a VIP status assignment rule

To delete a rule for assigning the VIP status to alerts:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** tab, **VIP status** section.

2. Select the check box to the left of each rule that you want to remove from the list.

3. If you want to delete all rules, select the check box above the list.

4. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, click **Delete**.
   The action confirmation window is displayed.

5. Click **Yes**.

The selected rules will be deleted.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot delete VIP status assignment rules.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot view the list of rules for assigning VIP status to alerts.

Modifying a VIP status assignment rule

To modify a rule for assigning the VIP status to alerts:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** tab, **VIP status** section.

2. Select the rule that you want to modify.
   This opens the rule editing window.

3. Make the necessary changes to the **Criteria**, **Value** and **Description** fields.
4. Click **Save**.

The rule is modified.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot modify VIP status assignment rules.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot view the list of rules for assigning VIP status to alerts.

Importing a list of VIP status assignment rules

To import a list of rules for assigning VIP status to alerts:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** tab, **VIP status** section.
2. Click **Import**.

   You will be prompted for confirmation of the list import.

   The imported list of rules for assigning the VIP status to alerts will replace the current list of VIP status alert assignment rules.
3. Click **Yes**.

   This opens the file selection window.
4. Select a JSON file containing the list of rules that you want to import and click **Open**.

   This closes the file selection window.

The list will be imported.

Exporting the list of data excluded from the scan

To export the scan exclusion list:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **Scan exclusions** tab.
3. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, click **Export**.

The JSON file containing the exported list of scan exclusions is saved in the browser's downloads folder on your computer.

Filtering and searching by type of VIP status assignment rule

To filter or search for VIP status assignment rules by rule type:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** tab, **VIP status** section.
2. Click the **Criteria** link to open the filter configuration window.
3. Select one or several check boxes next to the types of rules:
   - **IP**.
   - **Host**.
   - **Email**.
4. Click **Apply**.

   The filter configuration window closes.

   The table will display only the rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching by value of VIP status assignment rule

To filter or search for VIP status assignment rules by rule value:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** tab, **VIP status** section.
2. Click the **Value** link to open the filter configuration window.
3. Enter one or several characters of the rule value.
4. Click **Apply**.

   The filter configuration window closes.

   The table will display only the rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching by description of VIP status assignment rule

To filter or search for VIP status assignment rules by description:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** tab, **VIP status** section.
2. Click the **Description** link to open the filter configuration window.
3. Enter one or several characters of the description.
4. Click **Apply**.

   The filter configuration window closes.

   The table will display only the rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Clearing a VIP status assignment rule filter

To clear the VIP status assignment rule filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** tab, **VIP status** section.
2. Click to the right of the header of the table column for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

   The selected filters are cleared.

   The table will display only the rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

Managing the list of scan exclusions

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can create, import and export the list of *scan exclusions*, that is, the list of data that Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform treats as safe and does not display in the alerts table. You can create scan exclusion rules for the following data:

- **MD5**
- **Format**
- **URL mask**
- **Email recipient**
- **Email sender**
- **Source IP or subnet**
- **Destination IP or subnet**
- **User Agent**

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles can view the list of scan exclusion rules as well as export it.

Viewing the table of data excluded from the scan

To view the table with data excluded from the scan:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **Scan exclusions** tab.

   This opens the table with a list of data that Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will treat as safe and will not create alerts for. You can filter the rules by clicking links in column headers.

The table contains the following information:

- **Criteria**—Criterion for adding an entry to the list of allowed objects.
- **Value**—Value of the criterion.

Adding a scan exclusion rule

To add to scan exclusions:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **Scan exclusions** tab.
3. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, click **Add**.

   This opens the **New rule** window.
4. In the **Criteria** drop-down list, select one of the following criteria for adding a rule to the list of scan exclusions:

   - **MD5**
   - **Format**
   - **URL mask**
   - **Email recipient**
   - **Email sender**
   - **Source IP or subnet**
   - **Destination IP or subnet**
   - **User Agent**
5. If you selected **Format**, select the file format that you want to add from the **Value** drop-down list.

   For example, you can select the **MSOfficeDoc** format.
6. If you selected **MD5**, **URL mask**, **Email recipient**, **Email sender**, **Source IP or subnet**, **Destination IP or subnet**, or **User Agent**, in the **Value** field, enter the value of the relevant criterion that you want to add to the list of scan exclusions:

   - If you selected **MD5**, enter the MD5 hash of the file in the **Value** field.
   - If you selected **URL mask**, enter the URL mask in the **Value** field.

     You can use the following special characters in the mask:

     * – any sequence of characters.

     Example:
     If you enter `*abc*` as the mask, the application considers as safe any URL that contains the sequence `abc`. For example, `www.example.com/download_virusabc`

     ? – any single character.

     Example:
     If you enter `example_123?.com` as the mask, the application considers as safe any URL that contains the given character sequence and any character following `3`. For example, `example_1234.com`

     If the `*` or `?` characters are part of the full URL that you want to add to the list of scan exclusions, use the `\` character when entering the URL to escape a single `*`, `?`, or `\` character that follows it.

Example:
You need to add the following URL as a trusted address: `www.example.com/download_virus/virus.dll?virus_name=`
You do not want the application to treat `?` as a special mask character so you put a `\` character before the `?` character.
The URL added to the list of scan exclusions looks as follows: `www.example.com/download_virus/virus.dll\?virus_name=`

- If you selected **Email recipient** or **Email sender**, enter the email address in the **Value** field.
- If you selected **User Agent**, enter the **User agent header of HTTP requests** containing browser information in the **Value** field.
- If you selected **Source IP or subnet** or **Destination IP or subnet**, enter the address or subnet (for example, 255.255.255.0) in the **Value** field.

In the **URL mask**, **Email recipient**, and **Email sender** field, you can enter domain names containing Cyrillic characters. In this case, the address is converted to Punycode and processed in accordance with application settings.

7. Click **Add**.

The rule is added to the scan exclusion list.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot add a scan exclusion rule.

Deleting a scan exclusion rule

To remove one or multiple rules from scan exclusions:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **Scan exclusions** tab.
3. Select the check box to the left of each rule that you want to remove from the list of scan exclusions.
   If you want to delete all rules, select the check box above the list.
4. In the lower part of the window, click **Delete**.
   The action confirmation window is displayed.
5. Click **Yes**.

The selected rules are removed from the list of scan exclusions.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot remove entries from the list of scan exclusions.

Editing a rule added to scan exclusions

To edit a rule in the scan exclusion list:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **Scan exclusions** tab.
3. Select the rule that you want to modify.

   This opens the **Edit rule** window.
4. Make the necessary changes to the **Criteria** and **Value** fields.
5. Click **Save**.

The rule is modified.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot edit rules in the list of scan exclusions.

Exporting the list of data excluded from the scan

To export the scan exclusion list:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **Scan exclusions** tab.
3. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, click **Export**.

The JSON file containing the exported list of scan exclusions is saved in the browser's downloads folder on your computer.

Filtering rules in the scan exclusion list by criterion

To filter scan exclusion list entries by rule type:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **Scan exclusions** tab.
3. Click the **Criteria** link to open the filter configuration window.

4. Select one or more check boxes next to criteria by which you want to filter the rules:
   - **MD5**
   - **Format**
   - **URL mask**
   - **Email recipient**
   - **Email sender**
   - **Source IP or subnet**
   - **Destination IP or subnet**
   - **User Agent**
5. Click **Apply**.

   The filter configuration window closes.

   The list of scan exclusions displays only those rules that match your criteria.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Searching rules in the scan exclusion list by value

To search rules in the scan exclusion list by value:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **Scan exclusions** tab.
3. Click the **Value** link to open the filter configuration window.
4. Enter value characters.
5. Click **Apply**.

   The list of scan exclusions displays only those rules that match your criteria.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Resetting the rule filter in the scan exclusion list

To clear an exclusion list record filter by one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **Scan exclusions** tab.
3. Click ✕ to the right of the header of the column in the table of scan exclusion list entries for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The list of scan exclusions displays only those rules that match your criteria.

Managing IDS exclusions

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can add Kaspersky IDS rules to scan exclusions. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not create alerts for excluded IDS rules.

You can add to exclusions only IDS rules defined by Kaspersky. If you do not want to apply a user-defined IDS rule when scanning, you can disable this rule or delete it.

If you want to configure a singular exclusion, for example, for a specific source address, you can:

1. Add Kaspersky IDS rules to scan exclusions.
2. Add a new rule based on the excluded Kaspersky rule to the list of user-defined IDS rules in one of the following ways:
   - If the system already has user-defined IDS rules, export a file with the rules and add a new rule to this file with conditions that narrow down the rule using the Suricata syntax.
   - If no user-defined IDS rules exist in the system yet, create a text file and add to it a rule with qualifying conditions using the Suricata syntax.
3. Import a file with the added rule.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the list of IDS rules added to exclusions, and view the properties of a selected rule.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot view the list of IDS rules added to exclusions.

Viewing the table of IDS rules added to exclusions

To view the table of IDS rules added to exclusions:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **IDS exclusions** tab.

   The table of excluded IDS rules is displayed. You can filter the rules by clicking links in column headers.

The table contains the following information:

- **Time created**—Date and time when the IDS rule was added to exclusions.
- **Rule name**—Name of the IDS rule.
- **Rule ID**—ID of the IDS rule. sid (signature ID) in Suricata format.
- **Description**—Description of the IDS rule.
- **Created by**—Name of the user whose account was used to add the IDS rule to exclusions.

Adding an IDS rule to exclusions

You can exclude Kaspersky IDS rules with medium or high importance alerts from event scanning.

> You can add to exclusions only IDS rules defined by Kaspersky. If you do not want to apply a user-defined IDS rule for event scanning, you can disable that rule or delete it.

To add an IDS rule to exclusions:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.
   This opens the table of alerts.
2. Click the link in the **Technologies** column to open the filter configuration window.
3. In the drop-down list on the left, select **Contain**.
4. In the drop-down list on the right, select the **(IDS) Intrusion Detection System** technology.
5. Click **Apply**.
6. If you want to filter detections, click to expand the list of filtering parameters and select the required filter.
7. Select an alert for which the **Detected** column displays the name of the relevant IDS rule.
   This opens a window containing information about the alert.

8. In the right part of the window, in the **Recommendations** section, **Qualifying** subsection, click **Add to exclusions**.

   This opens the **Add IDS rule to exclusions** window.

9. In the **Description** field, enter a description for the IDS rule.

10. Click **Add**.

    The IDS rule is added to exclusions and is displayed in the exclusion list in the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection on the **IDS exclusions** tab in the application web interface. This rule is no longer used for creating alerts.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot modify entries in the list of allowed objects.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to the list of IDS rules added to exclusions.

Editing the description of an IDS rule added to exclusions

*To edit the description of an excluded IDS rule, in the **Alerts** section:*

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click the link in the **Technologies** column to open the filter configuration window.

3. In the drop-down list on the left, select **Contain**.

4. In the drop-down list on the right, select the **(IDS) Intrusion Detection System** technology.

5. Click **Apply**.

6. If you want to filter detections, click to expand the list of filtering parameters and select the required filter.

7. Select an alert for which the **Detected** column displays the name of the relevant IDS rule.

   This opens a window containing information about the alert.

8. In the right part of the window, in the **Recommendations** section, **Qualifying** subsection, click **Edit IDS exclusion**.

   This opens the **Edit IDS exclusion** window.

   In the **Description** field, edit the description of the rule.

Click **Save**.

The description of the excluded IDS rule is changed. This rule is no longer used for creating alerts.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot edit IDS rule descriptions.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to the list of IDS rules added to exclusions.

Removing an IDS rule from exclusions

You can remove from exclusions a single IDS rule, multiple rules, or all rules at the same time.

To remove an IDS rule from exclusions:

1. In the program web interface window, select the **Settings** → **Exclusions** section and go to the **IDS exclusions** tab.
2. A list of excluded IDS rules is displayed.
3. Select the rule that you want to remove from exclusions.

   This opens a window containing information about the rule.
4. Click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.
5. Click **Yes**.

The rule is removed from exclusions. The rule is no longer used for creating alerts.

To remove all or multiple IDS rules from exclusions:

1. In the program web interface window, select the **Settings** → **Exclusions** section and go to the **IDS exclusions** tab.
2. A list of excluded IDS rules is displayed.
3. Select check boxes next to rules that you want to remove from exclusions.

   You can select all rules by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.

4. In the pane that appears in the lower part of the window, click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

5. Click **Yes**.

The selected rules are removed from exclusions. The rules are no longer used for creating alerts.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot remove IDS rules from exclusions.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to the IDS exclusion list.

Managing TAA exclusions

TAA (IOA) rules created by Kaspersky experts contain indicators of suspicious behavior of an object in the corporate IT infrastructure. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform scans the events database of the application and creates alerts for events that match behaviors described by TAA (IOA) rules. If you do not want the application to create alerts for events generated as part of host activity that is normal for your organization, you can add a TAA (IOA) rule to exclusions.

TAA (IOA) rule modes added to exclusions can work in the following modes:

- The rule is always excluded.

  In this case, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not mark events as matching the TAA (IOA) rule and does not create alerts based on that rule.

- The rule is supplemented by a condition.

  In this case, the TAA (IOA) rule is supplemented by conditions in the form of a search query. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not mark events that match specified conditions as matching the TAA (IOA) rules. For events that match the TAA (IOA) rule, but do not satisfy the conditions of the applied exclusion, the application marks the events and creates alerts.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, TAA exclusions can have the following types:

- **Local**—Created on the SCN server. These exclusions apply only to hosts that are connected to this SCN server. Exclusions belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the application web interface.

- **Global**—Created on the PCN server. Exclusions apply to hosts that are connected to this PCN server and to all SCN servers that are connected to this PCN server. Exclusions belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the application web interface.

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can create, edit, and delete exclusions for tenants to whose data they have access.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles can only view the list of TAA exclusions and the properties of a selected exclusion.

For each TAA (IOA) rule, you can create only one local or global exclusion.

If one TAA (IOA) rule has exclusions created both on an SCN server and the PCN server, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform processes events in accordance with exclusion settings on the PCN server.

Viewing the table of TAA (IOA) rules added to exclusions

To view the table of TAA (IOA) rules added to exclusions:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Click the **TAA exclusions** tab.

   The table of excluded TAA (IOA) rules is displayed. You can filter the rules by clicking links in column headers.

The table contains the following information:

- —Importance level that is assigned to an alert generated using this TAA (IOA) rule.

  The importance level can have one of the following values:

  - – **Low**.
  - – **Medium**.
  - – **High**.
- **Type** is the type of the rule depending on the role of the server which generated it:
  - **Local**—Created on the SCN server. These exclusions apply only to hosts that are connected to this SCN server. Exclusions belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the application web interface.
  - **Global**—Created on the PCN server. Exclusions apply to hosts that are connected to this PCN server and to all SCN servers that are connected to this PCN server. Exclusions belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the application web interface.
- **Confidence** – level of confidence depending on the likelihood of false alarms caused by the rule:
  - **High**.
  - **Medium**.
  - **Low**.

  The higher the confidence level, the lower the likelihood of false alarms.

- **Exclude rule** is the operating mode of the rule that is added to exclusions.
  - **Always** means the rule is always excluded. In this case, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not mark events as matching the TAA (IOA) rule and does not create alerts based on that rule.
  - **Based on conditions** means the rule is excluded if a condition is added. In this case, the TAA (IOA) rule is supplemented by conditions in the form of a search query. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not mark events that match specified conditions as matching the TAA (IOA) rules. For events that match the TAA (IOA) rule, but do not satisfy the conditions of the applied exclusion, the program marks the events and creates alerts.
- **Name** is the name of the rule.

Adding a TAA (IOA) rule to exclusions

You can add to exclusions only TAA (IOA) rules made by Kaspersky. If you do not want to apply a custom TAA (IOA) rule for scanning events, you can disable that rule or delete it.

*To add a TAA (IOA) rule to exclusions from the **Alerts** section:*

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.
   This opens the table of alerts.
2. Click the link in the **Technologies** column to open the filter configuration window.
3. In the drop-down list on the left, select **Contain**.
4. In the drop-down list on the right, select the **(TAA) Targeted Attack Analyzer** technology.
5. Click **Apply**.
   The table displays alerts generated by the TAA technology based on TAA (IOA) rules.
6. Select an alert for which the **Detected** column displays the name of the relevant rule.
   This opens a window containing information about the alert.
7. Under **Scan results**, click the link with the name of the rule to open the rule information window.
8. To the right of the **TAA exclusions** setting name, click **Add to exclusions**.
   This opens a window that allows you to add the TAA (IOA) rule to exclusions.
9. In the **Exclude rule** field, select the exclusion operating mode:
   - **Always** if you do not want the application to create alerts for events that match the selected TAA (IOA) rule.
   - **Based on conditions** if you do not want the application to create events only for events that match specified conditions. Alerts are created for events that match the TAA (IOA) rule with the configured exclusion conditions taken into account.

If you selected **Based on conditions**:

a. Click **Configure additional conditions** to open the event search form.

b. If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode and want to enable the display of events for all tenants, turn on the **Search in all tenants** toggle switch.

c. Perform an event search in design mode.

A table is displayed of events that match the TAA (IOA) rule given the specified exclusion criteria.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, found events are grouped in tiers: Server – Tenant names – Server names.

d. Click the name of the server for which you want to view events.

The host table of the selected server is displayed. Event grouping levels are displayed above the table.

> If necessary, you can change event search conditions.

e. Click **Add exclusion**.

10. If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, in the **Apply to servers*** field, select check boxes for tenants and servers to which the rule must be applied.

11. Click **Add**.

The TAA (IOA) rule is added to exclusions and is displayed in the exclusion list in the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection on the **TAA exclusions** tab in the application web interface. This rule is no longer used for creating alerts.

*To add a TAA (IOA) rule to exclusions from the **Threat Hunting** section:*

1. Select the **Threat Hunting** section in the application web interface window.

This opens the event search form.

2. Define the search conditions and click the **Search** button. For example, you can select event search criteria in the **TAA properties** group in design mode.

The table of events that satisfy the search criteria is displayed.

3. Select an event.

4. To the right of the **IOA tags** setting, click the name of the rule.

This opens a window containing information about the rule.

5. To the right of the **TAA exclusions** setting name, click **Add to exclusions**.

This opens a window that allows you to add the TAA (IOA) rule to exclusions.

6. In the **Exclude rule** field, select the exclusion operating mode:

   - **Always** if you do not want the application to create alerts for events that match the selected TAA (IOA) rule.

   - **Based on conditions** if you do not want the application to create events only for events that match specified conditions. Alerts are created for events that match the TAA (IOA) rule with the configured exclusion conditions taken into account.

     If you selected **Based on conditions**:

     a. Click **Configure additional conditions** to open the event search form.

     b. If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode and want to enable the display of events for all tenants, turn on the **Search in all tenants** toggle switch.

     c. Perform an event search in design mode.

        A table is displayed of events that match the TAA (IOA) rule given the specified exclusion criteria.

        If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, found events are grouped in tiers: Server – Tenant names – Server names.

     d. Click the name of the server for which you want to view events.

        The host table of the selected server is displayed. Event grouping levels are displayed above the table.

        > If necessary, you can change event search conditions.

     e. Click **Add exclusion**.

7. Click **Add**.

   The TAA (IOA) rule is added to exclusions and is displayed in the exclusion list in the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection on the **TAA exclusions** tab in the application web interface. This rule is no longer applied when scanning events.

   When creating a search query to be saved as an exclusion criterion, avoid using the following fields:

- IOAId.
- IOATag.
- IOATechnique.
- IOATactics.
- IOAImportance.
- IOAConfidence.

These fields are only displayed after Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform marks events as matching TAA (IOA) rules.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot add TAA (IOA) rules to exclusions.

Viewing a TAA (IOA) rule added to exclusions

To view a TAA (IOA) rule added to exclusions:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection and go to the **TAA exclusions** tab.

   The table of excluded TAA (IOA) rules is displayed.

2. Select the rule that you want to view.

This opens a window containing information about the rule.

The window contains the following information:

- **TAA (IOA) rule**: click this link to open a window containing a description of the MITRE technique corresponding to this rule, recommendations on responding to the event, and information about the likelihood of false alarms.
- **ID** is the ID that the application assigns to each rule.
- **Name** is the name of the rule that you specified when you added the rule.
- **Importance** is an estimate of the probable impact of the event on the security of computers or the corporate LAN as assessed by Kaspersky experts.
- **Confidence** is the level of confidence depending on the probability of false positives as estimated by Kaspersky experts.
- **Exclude rule** is the operating mode of the rule that is added to exclusions.
  - **Always** means the rule is always excluded. In this case, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not mark events as matching the TAA (IOA) rule and does not create alerts based on that rule.
  - **Based on conditions** means the rule is excluded if a condition is added. In this case, the TAA (IOA) rule is supplemented by conditions in the form of a search query. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not mark events that match specified conditions as matching the TAA (IOA) rules. For events that match the TAA (IOA) rule, but do not satisfy the conditions of the applied exclusion, the program marks the events and creates alerts.
- **Configure additional conditions**: click this link to open the event search form with search conditions.

  The field is displayed if, when adding the TAA (IOA) rule to exclusions, you have selected the **Based on conditions** mode, and configured some search criteria.
- The search criteria are configured in the `<IOA ID> AND NOT <search criteria>` format.

  Search criteria are displayed if, when adding the TAA (IOA) rule to exclusions, you have selected the **Based on conditions** mode, and configured some search criteria.

- **Apply to servers*** are hosts to which the exclusion applies.

  This field is displayed in distributed solution and multitenancy mode.

Removing a TAA (IOA) rule from exclusions

You can remove from exclusions a single TAA (IOA) rule, multiple rules, or all rules at the same time.

To remove a TAA (IOA) rule from exclusions:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection and go to the **TAA exclusions** tab.

   The table of excluded TAA (IOA) rules is displayed.

2. Select the rule that you want to remove from exclusions.

   This opens a window containing information about the rule.

3. Click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

4. Click **Yes**.

The rule is removed from exclusions. The rule is applied when creating alerts or scanning events.

To remove all or multiple TAA (IOA) rules from exclusions:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection and go to the **TAA exclusions** tab.

2. The table of excluded TAA (IOA) rules is displayed.

3. Select check boxes next to rules that you want to remove from exclusions.

   You can select all rules by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.

4. In the pane that appears in the lower part of the window, click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

5. Click **Yes**.

The selected rules are removed from exclusions. The rules are applied when creating alerts or scanning events.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot remove TAA (IOA) rules from exclusions.

Creating a list of passwords for archives

The application does not scan password-protected archives. You can create a list of the most frequently encountered passwords for archives that are used when exchanging files within your organization. If you do so, the application will try passwords from the list when scanning an archive. If one of the passwords match, the archive will be unlocked and scanned.

The list of passwords set in application settings is also transmitted to the server with the Sandbox component.

To create a list of archive passwords:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Passwords for archives** subsection.
2. In the **Passwords for archives** field, enter the passwords that the application will use for password-protected archives.

   Enter each password on a new line. You can enter up to 50 passwords.
3. Click **Apply**.

The list of passwords for archives will be created. When scanning PDF files and files of Microsoft Word, Excel®, and PowerPoint® that are password protected, the application will use the passwords from the defined list.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the list of passwords for archives, but cannot edit it.

Viewing server settings

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view Central Node server and PCN settings in distributed solution and multitenancy mode.

The server settings are located in the **Settings** section of the web interface window. In this section, you can view the following information:

- **Users**—List of user accounts of application web interface users.
- **General settings**—General settings of the server.
  - **Database update**—Database update.
  - **Monitoring**—Maximum allowed hard disk space usage for Central Node and Sensor servers.
  - **SNMP**—SNMP connection settings.
  - **Server management**—server management.

- **Certificates**—Status of server certificates and computers with the Endpoint Agent component.
- **Date and time**—Server date and time settings.
- **Endpoint Agents**—Program functionality available when integrating with the Endpoint Agent component.
  - **IOC scanning schedule**—Settings for the IOC scan schedule.
  - **Send files to Sandbox automatically**—Automatically send files to be scanned by the Sandbox component.
  - **Activity indicators**—Activity indicators of the Endpoint Agent component.
- **KSN/KPSN and MDR**—Settings for participation in Kaspersky Security Network and Kaspersky Private Security Network.
- **KPSN reputation database**—Settings for using the KPSN reputation database.
- **SIEM system**—Settings for integration with a SIEM system.
- **Notifications**—Settings for sending notifications.
- **VIP status**—List of rules for assigning the VIP status to alerts.
- **Exclusions**—List of allowed objects and lists of exclusions from TAA and IDS rules.
- **Network settings**—Settings for the network interface parameters.
- **Passwords for archives**—List of passwords for archives.
- **License**—State of the license key.
- **Activity log**—Settings for the activity log.

Viewing the table of servers with the Sandbox component

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the table of servers with the Sandbox component.

The table of servers with the Sandbox component is located in the **Sandbox servers** section, on the **Servers** tab of the application web interface window.

The **Certificate fingerprint** field displays the fingerprint of the TLS certificate of the Central Node server.

The **Server list** table contains the following information:

- **IP and name**—IP address or fully qualified domain name of the server with the Sandbox component.
- **Certificate fingerprint**—Certificate fingerprint of the server with the Sandbox component.

- **Authorization**—Status of the request to connect to the Sandbox component.
- **Status**—Status of the connection to the Sandbox component.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot view the table of servers with the Sandbox component.

Viewing the settings of the set of operating systems used for scanning objects in Sandbox

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the settings of a set of operating systems used as the basis for creating tasks for scanning objects by the Sandbox component. The Sandbox server must have virtual machines installed that match the selected set.

Information about the settings of the set of operating systems for scanning objects in Sandbox is located in the **Sandbox servers** section, on the **Settings** tab of the application web interface window.

Sets of operating systems on which the Sandbox component can scan objects are displayed under **OS set**.

Operating systems that are part of the selected set are displayed under **Set composition**.

Viewing the table of servers with the Sensor component

The table of servers with the Sensor component is located in the **Sensor servers** section of the application web interface window.

The **Certificate fingerprint** field displays the fingerprint of the TLS certificate of the Central Node server.

The **Server list** table contains the following information:

- **IP/name**—IP address or domain name of the server with the Sensor component.
- **Type**—Type of Sensor component. Possible values:
  - **Central Node**—The Sensor component is installed on the same server as the Central Node component.
  - **Remote**—The Sensor component is installed on a different server or a mail sensor is used as the Sensor component.
- **Certificate fingerprint**—Fingerprint of the TLS certificate used to establish an encrypted connection between servers with the Sensor and Central Node components.
- **KSN/KPSN**—Status of the connection to the KSN/KPSN reputation databases.
- **SPAN**—Status of SPAN traffic processing.
- **SMTP**—Status of integration with a mail server via SMTP.
- **ICAP**—Status of integration with a proxy server via ICAP.

- **POP3**—Status of integration with a mail server via POP3.
- **State**—Status of the connection request.

Viewing the table of external systems

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the table of external systems.

The table of external systems is in the **External systems** section of the application web interface window.

The **Certificate fingerprint** field displays the fingerprint of the TLS certificate of the Central Node server.

The **Server list** table contains the following information:

- **Sensor**—IP address or domain name of the external system server.
- **Type**—Type of external system (mail sensor or other system).
- **Name**—Name of the integrated external system that is not a mail sensor.

  A dash is displayed in this column for a mail sensor.
- **ID**—ID of the external system.
- **Certificate fingerprint**—Fingerprint of the TLS certificate of the server with the external system used to establish an encrypted connection with the Central Node server.

  The certificate fingerprint of the server with the Central Node component is displayed in the upper part of the window in the **Certificate fingerprint** field.
- **State**—State of the integration request.

Users with the **Senior security officer** and **Security officer** roles cannot view the table of external systems.

Managing user-defined Sandbox rules

Users with the **Senior security officer** and **Administrator** roles can create rules for scanning files and URLs in their user environments. If no rules are added, objects are not sent for scanning.

You can create, edit, delete, enable, or disable rules. File scanning rules can also be imported and exported.

> You do not need to create rules to send objects for scanning in preset images: by default, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform sends objects for scanning.

In distributed solution mode, you must create rules for scanning files in custom environments on each PCN and SCN server from which you want to send files for scanning.

> Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the list of rules. Users with the **Security officer** role cannot view this section.

Viewing the table of user-defined Sandbox rules

To view the table of user-defined Sandbox rules:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Go to the **Files** or **URLs** tab.

   The table of user-defined Sandbox rules for file or URL scanning is displayed.

The table of user-defined rules for file scanning contains the following information:

- **Created** is the rule creation time.
- **Virtual machine** is the name of the virtual machine to which files are sent for scanning.
- **Mask** is the mask of files sent for scanning.
- **Mask exclusion** is the mask of files that are excluded from scanning.
- **File category** are categories of files sent for scanning.
- **State** is the state of the rule. It can have the values **Enabled** and **Disabled**.

The table of user-defined URL scanning rules contains the following information:

- **Created** is the rule creation time.
- **Virtual machine** is the name of the virtual machine to which files are sent for scanning.
- **State** is the state of the rule. It can have the values **Enabled** and **Disabled**.

Configuring the Sandbox rule table display

You can show or hide columns and change the order of columns in the table.

To configure the table display:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Go to the **Files** or **URLs** tab.

   The table of user-defined Sandbox rules for file or URL scanning is displayed.
3. In the heading part of the table, click .

   This opens the **Customize table** window.
4. If you want to show a column in the table, select the check box next to the name of the parameter that you want displayed in the table.

   If you want to hide a parameter in the table, clear the check box.

   > At least one check box must be selected.
5. If you want to change the order of columns in the table, move the mouse cursor to the row with the relevant parameter, click and move the row to its new place.
6. If you want to restore default table display settings, click **Default**.
7. Click **Apply**.

The rule table display is configured.

Filtering and searching Sandbox rules

To filter or search for Sandbox rules by required criteria:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Go to the **Files** and **URLs** tabs.

3. Depending on the filtering criterion, do the following:

   - **By creation time**

     a. Click the **Created** link to open the filter settings window.

     b. Select one of the following options:

     - **Any time** if you want the table to display rules created at any time.
     - **Last hour** if you want the application to display the rules that were created during the last hour in the table.
     - **Last day** if you want the application to display the rules that were created during the last day in the table.
     - **Custom range** if you want the application to display the rules that were created during the period you specify in the table.

     c. If you selected **Custom range**, select the start and end dates for the period and click **Apply**.

   - **By virtual machine name**

     a. Click **Virtual machine** to open the filtering settings window.

     b. Enter one or more characters of the virtual machine name.

     c. Click **Apply**.

   The table displays only rules that match the specified criteria.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Clearing a Sandbox rule filter

To clear the Sandbox rule filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Go to the **Files** and **URLs** tabs.
3. Click to the right of that column heading of the rule table for which you want to clear filtering criteria.

   If you want to clear multiple filter conditions, take steps to clear each filter condition individually.

   The selected filters are cleared.

   The table displays only rules that match the specified criteria.

Viewing the information of a user-defined Sandbox rule

To view the information of a user-defined Sandbox rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Go to the **Files** and **URLs** tabs.
3. Select the rule for which you want to view information.

   This opens a window containing information about the rule.

The window with information about the user-defined file scanning rule contains the following information:

- **State** is the state of the prevention rule.
- **Virtual machine** is the virtual machine on which files are scanned in accordance with this rule.
- **Mask** is the mask of files sent for scanning.
- **Mask exclusion** is the mask of files that are excluded from scanning.
- **File category** are categories of files that are sent for scanning.
- **File size** is the size of the files being scanned.

The window with information about the user-defined URL scanning rule contains the following information:

- **Virtual machine** is the virtual machine on which URLs are scanned.
- **State** is the state of the prevention rule.

Creating a user-defined Sandbox rule for scanning files

To add a user-defined Sandbox rule for file scanning:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Go to the **Files** tab.
3. Click **Add**.
4. Select **Create rule**.
   This opens the rule creation window.

5. Configure the following settings:

   a. **State** is the state of the prevention rule. Select the check box if you want to enable the rule.

   b. **Virtual machine** is the virtual machine on which files will be scanned in accordance with this rule.

      Only virtual machines with custom operating system images can be selected. These virtual machines must belong to the set of operating systems selected on the Central Node.

   c. Specify at least one of the values: mask or file category. If you fill in all the fields, the rule is triggered for files that match the category and size conditions or mask and size conditions, and are not exclusions.

      - **Mask** is the mask of files that you want to send for scanning. You can specify multiple values.

        To specify a mask, you can use the * and ? wildcard characters. Other wildcard characters are not supported.

      - **Mask exclusion** is the mask of files that must be excluded from scanning. You can specify multiple values.

        To specify an exclusion mask, you can use the * and ? wildcard characters. Other wildcard characters are not supported.

      - **File category** are categories of files that you want to send for scanning. You can specify multiple categories.

        You can view the full list of extensions for each category in the List of extensions for file categories section.

      - **File size** is the size of the files being scanned.

      - If you want to set multiple ranges, click **Add file size**.

6. Click **Add**.

The rule is created.

If you want to send an archive for scanning, you must take into account the special considerations involved in scanning archives.

Archives are scanned as follows:

1. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform unpacks the archive.
2. Files from the archive that match the rule are sent for scanning.

Files with the MSI extension are scanned in the same way as archives.

Creating a user-defined Sandbox rule for URL scanning

To add a user-defined Sandbox rule for URL scanning:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Go to the **URLs** tab.
3. Click **Add**.
4. Select **Create rule**.

   This opens the rule creation window.
5. Configure the following settings:

   a. **Virtual machine** is the virtual machine on which URLs will be scanned.

   Only virtual machines with custom operating system images can be selected. These virtual machines must belong to the set of operating systems selected on the Central Node.

   b. **State** is the state of the prevention rule. Select the check box if you want to enable the rule.
6. Click **Add**.

The rule is created.

Copying a user-defined Sandbox rule

To copy a user-defined Sandbox rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Go to the **Files** or **URLs** tab.
3. Select the relevant rule.
4. In the rule window, click **Duplicate**.

The rule is copied with all settings. You can change the values of settings if necessary.

Importing user-defined Sandbox rules for file scanning

To import user-defined Sandbox rules for file scanning:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Go to the **Files** tab.

3. Click **Add**.
4. Select **Import rules**.
5. This opens the file upload window.
6. Select the file that you want to import.
7. Click **Open**.

The file is imported.

Editing a user-defined Sandbox rule

To edit a user-defined Sandbox rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Go to the **Files** or **URLs** tab.

   The table of user-defined Sandbox rules for file or URL scanning is displayed.
3. Select a rule.

This opens the rule editing window.

You can edit the following fields:

- In the user-defined Sandbox rules for scanning files:
  - **State** is the state of the prevention rule. Select the check box if you want to enable the rule.
  - **Virtual machine** is the virtual machine on which files will be scanned in accordance with this rule.

    Only virtual machines with custom operating system images can be selected. These virtual machines must belong to the set of operating systems selected on the Central Node.
  - Specify at least one of the values: mask or file category. If you fill in all the fields, the rule is triggered for files that match the category and size conditions or mask and size conditions, and are not exclusions.
    - **Mask** is the mask of files that you want to send for scanning. You can specify multiple values.

      To specify a mask, you can use the * and ? wildcard characters. Other wildcard characters are not supported.
    - **Mask exclusion** is the mask of files that must be excluded from scanning. You can specify multiple values.

      To specify an exclusion mask, you can use the * and ? wildcard characters. Other wildcard characters are not supported.
    - **File category** are categories of files that you want to send for scanning. You can specify multiple categories.

      You can view the full list of extensions for each category in the List of extensions for file categories section.

- **File size** is the size of the files being scanned.

  If you want to set multiple ranges, click **Add file size**.

- In the user-defined Sandbox rules for scanning URLs:

  - **Virtual machine** is the virtual machine on which URLs will be scanned.

    Only virtual machines with custom operating system images can be selected. These virtual machines must belong to the set of operating systems selected on the Central Node.

  - **State** is the state of the prevention rule. Select the check box if you want to enable the rule.

Enabling or disabling user-disabling Sandbox rules

To enable or disable a Sandbox rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Go to the **Files** or **URLs** tab.

   The table of user-defined Sandbox rules for file or URL scanning is displayed.
3. In the row with the relevant rule, select or clear the check box in the **State** column.

The rule is enabled or disabled.

To enable or disable the use of all or multiple Sandbox rules:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Go to the **Files** or **URLs** tab.

   The table of user-defined Sandbox rules for file or URL scanning is displayed.
3. Select the check boxes on the left of the rules whose use you want to enable or disable.

   You can select all rules by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.

   A control panel appears in the lower part of the window.
4. Click **Enable** or **Disable** to enable or disable selected rules.

Selected rules are enabled or disabled.

Exporting user-defined Sandbox rules for file scanning

To export user-defined Sandbox rules for object scanning:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Go to the **Files** tab.
3. Click **Export**.

The rules file is saved to your local computer. The file is downloaded in the JSON format.

Deleting user-defined Sandbox rules

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can delete one or more user-defined Sandbox rules, or all rules at the same time.

To delete a user-defined Sandbox rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Go to the **Files** or **URLs** tab.
   The table of user-defined Sandbox rules for file or URL scanning is displayed.
3. Select the rule that you want to delete.
   This opens a window containing information about the rule.
4. Click **Delete**.
   This opens the action confirmation window.
5. Click **Yes**.

The rule is deleted.

To delete all or multiple user-defined Sandbox rules:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Go to the **Files** or **URLs** tab.
   The table of user-defined Sandbox rules for file or URL scanning is displayed.
3. Select the check boxes on the left of the rules that you want to delete.
   You can select all rules by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.
   A control panel appears in the lower part of the window.

4. Click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

5. Click **Yes**.

   The selected rules will be deleted.

List of extensions for file categories

Extensions for file categories are listed in the table below.

Extensions for file categories

Category	Extensions
1C	.epf, .ert, .erf, .cf, .dt, .deb, .bsl, .os, .ertx, .xls, .xml, .html, .txt, .cfu, .rptdesign, .xdt, .xslt, .wsdl
Adobe Flash Player	.swf, .fla, .flv, .f4v, .f4p, .f4a, .f4b, .mxml, .as, .asc, .ascs, .asv, .fxp, .fxpl, .xfl, .swc, .cfx, .spl, .dcr, .dir, .dxr, .aam, .swz
Java	.jar, .class, .war, .ear, .jad, .jnlp, .ser, .jsp, .jspx, .properties, .policy
Html	.html, .htm, .shtml, .xhtml, .xml, .svg, .mathml, .rss, .atom, .json, .mht, .mhtml, .webarchive
Network packet	.pcap, .pcapng, .cap, .netcap, .etl, .erf, .pkts, .pkt, .tcpdump, .snoop, .ngc, .dump, .cat, .smb, .vpcap, .dmp, .shb, .npl, .nfcapd, .wcap, .arpd, .pc, .tr1, .tr2, .trace
SAP	.abap, .adt, .bak, .cct, .cdp, .cpf, .dsc, .erd, .glo, .grc, .lis, .log, .lsa, .msg, .olap, .pgm, .prd, .sap, .sd, .se, .so, .spf, .tpz, .trc, .trex, .ttx, .wri, .xlf
XML	.xml, .xsl, .xslt, .rdf, .rss, .opf, .svg, .wsdl, .xhtml, .xjb, .xmi, .xpl, .xsl-fo, .xquery, .xsd, .dtd, .xht, .atom, .mathml, .mml, .plist, .xul, .fodt, .fo, .mxf, .xspf, .gpx, .unity, .ac, .ad, .aw, .ccxml, .csd, .dms, .epub, .fxml, .glb, .glTF, .glTF-Binary, .gml, .iif, .imdi, .jelly, .kml, .mrc, .msh, .mshxml, .mtl, .nib, .nws, .nzb, .osdx, .owl, .pbix, .plistxml, .ptx, .qti, .rdfxml, .rl, .rng, .ros, .rpj, .scml, .scxml, .shex, .sketch, .soap, .srdf, .srx
Archive	.snb, .apk, .mht, .crx, .dd, .r01, .mpkg, .pup, .tbz, .ace, .arj, .bin, .cab, .cbr, .deb, .exe, .gzip, .one, .pak, .pkg, .ppt, .rpm, .sh, .sib, .sis, .sisx, .sit, .sitx, .spl, .tar-gz, .xar, .zipx, .zip, .rar, .7z, .tar, .gz, .bz2, .xz, .tgz, .tbz2, .txz, .z, .jar, .war, .ear, .iso, .img
Audio	.a52, .adt, .dct, .dss, .dvf, .iklax, .ivs, .rm, .rmvb, .8svx, .amb, .avr, .cdda, .cvs, .cvsd, .cvu, .dts, .dvms, .fap, .fssd, .gsrt, .hcom, .htk, .ima, .ircam, .maud, .nist, .paf, .prc, .pvf, .sd2, .smp, .snd, .sndr, .sndt, .sou, .sph, .spx, .tta, .txw, .vms, .voc, .vox, .w64, .wv, .wve, .ac3, .aob, .asf, .aud, .bin, .bwg, .cdr, .gpx, .ics, .m, .m3u, .mod, .mpp, .msc, .msv, .mts, .nkc, .ps, .sdf, .sib, .sln, .spl, .srt, .temp, .vb, .wave, .wm, .wpd, .xsb, .xwb, .mpc, .aac, .flac, .m4a, .mmf, .mp3, .ogg, .wav, .wma, .mid, .amr, .ape, .au, .caf, .gsm, .oma, .qcp, .vqf, .ra, .aif, .mp2, .m4p, .awb, .m4r, .ram, .asx, .mpga, .aiff, .koz, .m4b, .kar, .iff, .midi, .3ga, .opus, .aup, .xspf, .aifc, .rta, .cda, .m3u8, .mpa, .aa, .aax, .oga, .nfa, .adpcm, .cdo, .flp, .aimppl, .4mp, .mui
Video	.drc, .f4a, .f4b, .f4p, .gifv, .mng, .mp2, .mpe, .mpv, .nsv, .roq, .svi, .3gp2, .3gpp2, .asx, .bin, .dat, .drv, .gtp, .moov, .spl, .stl, .vcd, .vid, .wm, .yuv, .hevc, .m2v, .mjpeg, .wtv, .avi, .mpeg, .m4v, .mov, .mp4, .wmv, .mpg, .swf, .3gp, .3g2, .mkv, .ogv, .webm, .asf, .ts, .mxf, .rm, .thp, .mts, .rmvb, .f4v, .mod, .vob, .h264, .flv, .3gpp, .divx, .qt, .amv, .dvsd, .m2ts, .ifo, .mswmm, .srt, .cpi, .wlmp, .vpj, .ced, .vep, .veg, .264, .dav, .pds, .dir, .arf, .mepx, .xesc, .bik, .nfv, .tvs, .imoviemobile, .rcproject, .esp3, .vproj, .aep, .camproj, .camrec, .cmproj, .cmrec, .modd, .mproj, .osp, .trec, .g64, .vro, .braw, .mse, .pz
Document	.sxi, .odg, .svg, .vsd, .eps, .cwk, .wp, .ott, .asp, .cdd, .cpp, .dotm, .gpx, .indd, .kdc, .kml, .mdb, .mdf, .mso, .one, .pkg, .pl, .pot, .potm, .potx, .ppsm, .ps, .sdf, .sgml, .sldm, .xar, .xlt, .xltm, .xltx, .pdf, .txt, .doc, .odt, .xps, .chm, .rtf, .sxw, .docx, .wpd, .wps, .docm, .hwp, .pub, .xml, .log, .oxps, .vnt, .dot, .pages, .m3u, .dotx, .shs, .msg, .odm, .pmd, .vmg, .eml, .tex, .wp5, .csk, .fdxt, .adoc, .afpub, .tcr, .acsm, .opf, .mbp, .apnx, .cbt, .vbk, .kfx, .lrf, .snb, .odp, .ppt, .pptx, .pps, .ppsx, .pptm, .key, .flipchart, .epub, .mobi, .azw, .azw3, .fb2, .djvu, .cbz, .cbr, .ibooks, .lit, .pdb, .prc, .tr2, .tr3, .ods, .xls, .xlsx, .csv, .wks, .xlsm, .xlsb, .xlr, .wk3, .numbers
Image	.dib, .pdf, .mrw, .icns, .wdp, .fig, .epsf, .cur, .erf, .fts, .heif, .jfif, .jpe, .jps, .mng, .pam, .pbm, .pes, .pfm, .picon, .pnm, .ppm, .ras, .rw2, .sgi, .x3f, .xbm, .xpm, .xwd, .art, .arw, .bmp, .cr2, .crw, .dcm, .dds, .djvu, .dng, .exr, .fpx, .gif, .ico, .jpg, .jp2, .jpeg, .nef, .orf, .pcd, .pcx, .pef, .pgm, .pict, .png, .psd, .raf, .sfw, .tga, .tiff, .wbmp, .xcf, .yuv, .kdc, .pct, .sr2, .tif, .hdr, .webp, .nrw, .plist, .ithmb, .thm, .pspimage, .mac, .heic, .rwl, .flif, .avif, .raw, .pictclipping, .jxr, .emf, .eps, .svg, .wpg, .ai, .svgz, .wmf, .odg, .cdr, .vsd, .std, .pd, .emz, .mix, .otg, .cvs, .gvdesign
Android executable file	.apk, .aab, .dex, .so, .jar, .aar, .class, .obb, .odex, .vdex, .vmx, .vmem, .img
Windows executable file	.cgi, .ds, .air, .cpp, .gadget, .hta, .jar, .msu, .paf.exe, .pwz, .thm, .vbs, .exe, .msi, .bat, .cmd, .com, .pif, .scr, .vb, .vbe, .js, .jse, .ws, .wsf, .wsh, .ps1, .psm1, .psd1, .ps1xml, .psc1, .scf, .lnk

Category	Extensions
Executable file	.rc, .p, .d, .asc, .bas, .cbl, .vbp, .iwb, .pb, .yml, .pika, .s19, .xt, .suo, .fsproj, .pbj, .pbxuser, .pyw, .xq, .cd, .sb, .sb2, .ise, .kv, .cod, .nib, .pwn, .b, .hpp, .apa, .bet, .bluej, .erb, .fxc, .m4, .owl, .sma, .trx, .vc, .def, .xap, .o, .pas, .qpr, .resources, .vbproj, .vbx, .xib, .md, .ccc, .wwp, .ss, .asf, .asm, .asp, .cfm, .dot, .dtd, .fla, .ged, .gv, .icl, .jse, .lua, .m, .mb, .mdf, .mod, .msp, .obj, .pkg, .po, .pot, .pub, .rss, .sln, .so, .vbe, .vbs, .vc4, .vcproj, .vcxproj, .wsc, .xcodeproj, .xsd, .c, .class, .cpp, .cs, .css, .go, .h, .htaccess, .html, .java, .json, .kml, .sql, .swift, .vb, .yaml, .sh, .bat, .cmd, .ps1, .py, .pl, .rb, .js, .ts, .php, .jsp, .aspx, .cgi, .jar
Disk image	.img, .cue, .dsk, .vmdk, .vhd, .vhdx, .tc, .crypt, .dmgpart, .sparsebundle, .xva, .cif, .pqi, .udf, .fvd, .arc, .fcd, .gi, .giz, .ima, .udif, .vdi, .vim, .wim, .b5t, .b6t, .bin, .bwi, .bwt, .ccd, .cdi, .cdr, .dmg, .i00, .i01, .i02, .iso, .isz, .md0, .md1, .md2, .mdf, .mds, .nrg, .pdi, .po, .rom, .sub, .tib, .toast, .vc4, .vcd
Windows event log	.evt, .evtx, .log, .txt, .xml
Windows registry file	.reg, .dat, .pol, .hiv, .srd
Font	.bin, .ps, .sfd, .fnt, .afm, .ttf, .otf, .woff, .woff2, .eot, .svg, .dfont, .pfa, .pfb, .pfm, .fon, .suit, .bdf, .pcf, .snf, .ufo, .lib, .cff
Database file	.bup, .csv, .json, .xml, .myi, .sqlplan, .abs, .abx, .ac, .accdb, .accdc, .accde, .accdr, .accdt, .accdw, .accft, .adb, .ade, .adf, .adn, .adp, .alf, .anb, .approj, .aq, .ask, .bacpac, .bak, .btr, .caf, .cat, .cdb, .chck, .ckp, .cma, .cpd, .crypt, .dab, .dacpac, .dad, .daschema, .db, .db-journal, .db-shm, .db-wal, .db2, .db3, .dbc, .dbf, .dbs, .dbt, .dbv, .dbx, .dcb, .dct, .dcx, .ddl, .dlis, .dp1, .dqy, .dsk, .dsn, .dtsx, .dxl, .eco, .ecx, .edb, .epim, .erx, .exb, .fcd, .fdb, .fic, .frm, .ftb, .gdb, .grdb, .gwi, .hdb, .his, .ib, .ibd, .icdb, .idb, .ihx, .ipj, .itdb, .itw, .jet, .jtx, .kdb, .lgc, .lwx, .maf, .maq, .mar, .marshal, .mas, .mav, .maw, .mdb, .mdbhtml, .mdf, .mdn, .mdt, .mfd, .mpd, .mrg, .mud, .mwb, .myd, .ndf, .nnt, .ns2, .ns3, .ns4, .nsf, .nv2, .nwdb, .nyf, .odb, .odl, .oqy, .ora, .orx, .owc, .pan, .pdb, .pdm, .pnz, .pqa, .pvoc, .qry, .qvd, .rbf, .rctd, .realm, .rod, .rsd, .sbf, .scx, .sdb, .sdc, .sdf, .sis, .spq, .sql, .sqlite, .sqlite3, .sqlitedb, .te, .temx, .tmd, .tps, .trc, .trm, .tvdb, .udb, .udl, .vis, .vvv, .wdb, .wmdb, .wrk, .xdb, .xld, .xmlff

Sending notifications

Users with the **Administrator**, **Senior security officer**, or **Security officer** role can configure forwarding of notifications to one or multiple email addresses.

You can create notifications about alerts and system health.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the list of rules for sending notifications, the properties of a selected rule, and the mail server connection settings, but cannot edit them.

> For notifications to be sent to an email address correctly, you must first configure the connection to the mail server. The connection must be configured by the **Administrator**.

Viewing the table of rules for sending notifications

Rules for sending notifications are displayed in the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection of the application web interface window.

The table of rules for sending notifications contains the following information:

- **Type** is the type of rule for sending notifications.

  The following types of rules are possible:

  - **Alerts** is a rule for sending a notification about alerts.
  - **Application operation** is a rule for sending a notification about the operation of application components.
- **Subject**—Subject of the message containing the notification.
- **To**—Email addresses to which the notifications are sent.
- **State**—Status of the rule for sending a notification.

Creating a rule for sending notifications about alerts

To create a rule for sending notifications about alerts:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.
2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.
3. Click **Add**.

   This opens the **New rule** window.

4. In the **To** field, enter one or multiple email addresses to which you want to send notifications.

   You can enter several email addresses if you separate them with commas.

5. In the **Subject** field, enter the subject of the notification message.

6. If you want the application to insert the alert importance into the message subject, add the `%importance%` macro to the **Subject** field.

7. In the **Notification type** field, select **Alerts**.

8. In the **Alert importance** drop-down list, select the minimum alert importance for which you want notifications to be sent.

   For example, you can configure forwarding of notifications for only alerts that have high importance, or for only those that have medium or high importance.

9. In the **Source or destination** field, enter an IP address and network mask if you want to send notifications about alerts associated with a specific source or destination IP address or subnet address.

10. In the **Email** field, enter an email address if you want to send notifications about alerts associated with a specific email sender or recipient address.

11. Under **Components**, select check boxes next to the names of one or multiple technologies if you want to send notifications about alerts generated by specific technologies.

12. Click **Add**.

The rule for sending notifications about alerts will be added to the list of rules. To send notifications to the specified email address, you must enable the notification rule. Notifications are sent once to each of the email addresses configured for this rule.

Users with the **Administrator** and **Security auditor** roles cannot create rules for sending alert notifications.

In distributed solution mode, you must create notifications separately for each subordinate server (*Secondary Central Node*, *SCN*).

Creating a rule for sending notifications about the operation of application components

To create a rule for sending notifications about the operation of application components:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.

2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.

3. Click **Add**.

   This opens the **New rule** window.

4. In the **To** field, enter one or multiple email addresses to which you want to send notifications.

   You can enter several email addresses if you separate them with commas.

5. In the **Subject** field, enter the subject of the notification message.

6. If you want the application to insert the alert importance into the message subject, add the `%importance%` macro to the **Subject** field.

7. In the **Notification type** field, select **Application operation**.

8. Under **Components**, select check boxes next to the names of the application's functional areas for which you want to receive notifications.

9. Click **Add**.

The rule for sending notifications about the operation of application components is added to the list of rules. To send notifications to the specified email address, you must enable the notification rule. Notifications are sent once to each of the email addresses configured for this rule.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot create rules for sending notifications about application operation.

In distributed solution mode, notifications are configured separately for each subordinate server (*Secondary Central Node*, *SCN*).

Enabling and disabling a rule for sending notifications

To enable or disable a rule for sending notifications about alerts:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.

2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.

3. In the **State** column, enable or disable the rule for sending notifications using the toggle switch next to the rule.

   The state of the rule for sending notifications about alerts will be modified.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot enable or disable notification rules.

Modifying a rule for sending notifications

To modify a rule for sending notifications:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.
2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.
3. In the list of rules for sending notifications, select the rule that you want to modify.
   This opens the **Edit rule** window.
4. Make the relevant changes.
5. Click **Save**.

The rule for sending notifications will be modified.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot modify rules for sending notifications.

Deleting a rule for sending notifications

To delete a rule for sending notifications:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.
2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.
3. Select the check box to the left of the name of each rule that you want to delete.
   If you want to delete all rules, select the check box above the list.
4. Click **Delete** in the lower part of the window.
5. In the confirmation window, click **Yes**.

The selected rules will be deleted.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot delete rules for sending notifications.

Filtering and searching notification forwarding rules by rule type

To filter or search notification rules by rule type:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.
2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.
3. Click the ⬚ icon in the table of rules for sending notifications.
   This opens the filter configuration window.
4. Select one of the following options:
   - **All**
   - **Alerts**
   - **Application operation**

The table of notification forwarding rules will display only rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching notification forwarding rules based on the notification subject

To filter or search for notification rules by notification subject:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.
2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.
3. Click the **Subject** link to open the filter configuration window.
4. Enter one or several characters of the notification subject.
5. Click **Apply**.

The filter configuration window closes.

The table of notification forwarding rules will display only rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching notification forwarding rules by email address

To filter or search for notification rules by destination email address:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.
2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.
3. Click the **To** link to open the filter configuration window.
4. Enter one or several characters of the email address.
5. Click **Apply**.

The table of notification forwarding rules will display only rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching notification forwarding rules based on their status

To filter or search for notification rules by status:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.
2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.
3. Click the **State** link to open the filter configuration window.
4. Select one or several check boxes next to the values of statuses:
   - **Enabled**
   - **Disabled**
5. Click **Apply**.

The filter configuration window closes.

The table of notification forwarding rules will display only rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Clearing a notification forwarding rule filter

To clear the notification rule filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.
2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.
3. Click to the right of the header of the column in the notification forwarding rules table for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The table of notification forwarding rules will display only rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

Managing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent is an application that is installed on individual devices in the corporate IT infrastructure. The application continuously monitors processes running on those devices, active network connections, and files that are being modified.

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent enables the interaction of the protected device with other Kaspersky solutions for detection of complex threats, such as targeted attacks.

When the integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is configured, the application runs tasks, applies parameters coming from Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, and sends telemetry from the protected device to the KATA Central Node server. For more details about what Kaspersky Endpoint Agent can do when integrated with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, see the *Operating principle of the application* section.

For details about managing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent, see the Online Help of the application:

- Application activation
- Installing and removing the application.
- Managing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent settings using the Kaspersky Security Center Administration Console and the Kaspersky Security Center Web Console:
  - Managing policies
  - Managing tasks
  - Opening the settings window
  - Configuring security settings
  - Configuring the connection of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent with a proxy server
  - Configuring Kaspersky Security Center as a proxy server to activate Kaspersky Endpoint Agent
  - Configuring KSN usage in Kaspersky Endpoint Agent
  - Configuring storage settings in Kaspersky Endpoint Agent
  - Configuring failure diagnostics
- Managing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using the command line interface:
  - Activation management
  - Authentication management
  - Configuring tracing
  - Configuring the creation of dumps of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent processes

- Viewing information about quarantine settings and quarantined objects
- Actions for quarantined objects
- Running Kaspersky Endpoint Agent database and module updates
- Starting, stopping and viewing the current application status
- Password protection of the application
- Protecting application services with the PPL technology
- Managing self-defense settings
- Managing Standard IOC Scan tasks
- Managing file and process scanning in accordance with YARA rules
- Creating a memory dump
- Creating a disk dump

Managing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux

This section provides information about Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux. For information about Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows, see a separate section.

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux is installed on individual devices running one of the supported Linux operating systems within the corporate IT infrastructure. The application continuously monitors processes running on those devices, active network connections, and files that are being modified.

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux enables the interaction of the protected device with other Kaspersky solutions for complex threat detection (such as targeted attacks).

When the integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is configured, the application runs tasks, applies settings coming from Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, and sends telemetry from the protected device to the KATA Central Node server. For more details about what Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux can do when integrated with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, see the *Operating principle of the application section*.

You can remotely manage Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux using the Kaspersky Security Center Web Console, the Kaspersky Security Center Administration Console, or the command line.

Installing and removing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux

This section provides information about installing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux on a device, updating the previous version of the application, restoring and removing the application from the device.

Preparing to install Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux

Before installing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux on a device or upgrading an older version of the application, you must verify that the device satisfies the hardware and software requirements.

Installing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux using Kaspersky Security Center Administration Console

This section describes the remote installation of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent on a local device using Kaspersky Security Center Administration Console.

Installing the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux administration plug-in

You can manage Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in the Kaspersky Security Console by using the administration plug-in. Therefore, to gain access to the application management interface, the administration plug-in must be installed on the administrator's workstation.

To install the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent administration plug-in,

copy the klcfginst.msi file from the distribution kit to the device where Kaspersky Security Center Administration Console is installed and run the file.

The Setup Wizard starts.

Adding devices for installing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux

To install the application remotely using Kaspersky Security Center, you must add the devices on which you are installing the application to the managed devices group.

To add devices for installing the application:

1. Install the Kaspersky Security Center Network Agent on the device.

   The procedure for preparing a Linux-running device for remote installation of Network Agent is described in the *Kaspersky Security Center Help*.

2. In the command line, run the following command: `/opt/kaspersky/klnagent/bin/klmover --address <IP address of the Kaspersky Security Center server>`.

   The device becomes available for management using Kaspersky Security Center.

   > If Network Agent was previously installed on the device, the first two steps of these instructions are not necessary.

3. Open the Kaspersky Security Center Administration Console.

4. In the console tree, select the **Managed devices** folder.

   > If Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux is installed on a device, the device is added to the group in which the Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux policy is active. You do not need to move the device.

5. In the workspace of the folder, select the **Devices** tab.

6. Click **Move devices to group**.

   This opens the move devices wizard.

7. Click **Select devices discovered on the network by the Administration Server**.

8. In the next window of the wizard, in the list of devices, select the check box next to the device where you need to install the application.

9. Click **Next**.

   The device is moved to the managed devices group.

10. Click **Finish** to complete the wizard.

The device becomes available for remote installation of the application.

Creating an installation package for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux

To remotely install the application using Kaspersky Security Center, you must create an installation package for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent from the Kaspersky repository or from a file.

> Before creating the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent installation package, make sure that the administration plug-in is installed on the administrator workstation.

To create an installation package for the application from the Kaspersky application repository:

1. Open the Kaspersky Security Center Administration Console.
2. In the console tree, in the **Administration Server** → **Advanced** → **Remote installation** folder, select the **Installation packages** subfolder.
3. Click **Create an installation package** to start the installation package creation wizard.
4. In the **Select installation package type** window of the wizard, click **Create an installation package for a Kaspersky application**.

   When creating an installation package for an application, you will be prompted to read the End User License Agreement for that application and the Privacy Policy of that application. Carefully read the End User License Agreement between you and Kaspersky Lab, as well as the Privacy Policy. If you agree with all the terms of the License Agreement and the Privacy Policy, select the following check boxes in the **I confirm that I have fully read, understand, and accept** section:

   - **The terms and conditions of this End User License Agreement**
   - **Privacy Policy describing the handling of data**
5. In the next window of the wizard, enter the name for the new installation package.
6. In the next window of the wizard, select the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent installation file with the "kud" extension.
7. In the next window of the wizard, select Kaspersky Endpoint Agent components that you need to install, the installation directory and the installation mode of the application.

After the wizard finishes, the created installation package appears in the workspace of the **Installation packages** folder in the console tree.

To create an installation package for the application from a file:

1. Open the Kaspersky Security Center Administration Console.
2. In the console tree, in the **Administration Server** → **Advanced** → **Remote installation** folder, select the **Installation packages** subfolder.

3. Click **Create an installation package** to start the installation package creation wizard.

4. In the **Select installation package type** window of the wizard, click **Create an installation package for the specified executable file**.

   When creating an installation package for an application, you will be prompted to read the End User License Agreement for that application and the Privacy Policy of that application. Carefully read the End User License Agreement between you and Kaspersky Lab, as well as the Privacy Policy. If you agree with all the terms of the License Agreement and the Privacy Policy, select the following check boxes in the **I confirm that I have fully read, understand, and accept** section:

   - **The terms and conditions of this End User License Agreement**
   - **Privacy Policy describing the handling of data**

5. In the next window of the wizard, enter a name for the installation package.

6. In the next window of the wizard, select the installation file of the application and complete the creation of the installation package by following the directions of the wizard.

After the wizard finishes, the created installation package appears in the workspace of the **Installation packages** folder in the console tree.

Remote installation of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux on selected devices

Kaspersky Security Center allows you to install applications on devices remotely using remote installation tasks.

To create and run the task to remotely install Kaspersky Endpoint Agent on selected devices:

1. Open the Kaspersky Security Center Administration Console.

2. In the console tree, in the **Remote installation** folder, select the **Installation packages** subfolder.

3. In the workspace of the folder, select the installation package of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent.

4. In the context menu of the installation package, select **Install program**.

5. The Remote Installation Wizard starts.

6. In the **Select devices for installation** window, you can create a list of devices to install the application on.

7. In the **Configure the remote installation task**, configure the remote installation of the application.

8. In the **Select operating system reboot option** window, select whether the devices will be restarted if a system restart is required during installation.

9. In the **Select accounts for access to devices** window, you can add accounts that will be used to start the remote installation task.

10. In the **Start installation** window, click **Next** to create and start the remote installation task on selected devices.

    If in the **Start installation** window, the **Do not start the task after the remote installation wizard finishes** check box is selected, the remote installation task is not started. You can start this task manually later. The name of the task corresponds to the name of the installation package for installing the application: **Install <name of the installation package>**.

Installing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux using Kaspersky Security Center Web Console

This section describes the remote installation of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux on a local device using Kaspersky Security Center Web Console.

Installing the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent web administration plug-in

You can manage Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux using Kaspersky Security Center Web Console with the web administration plug-in. Therefore to gain access to application management, you must install the web administration plug-in on the administrator workstation (see information on installing and updating the web administration plug-in in the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows Help).

Before installing, familiarize yourself with the information about compatible versions of the web administration plug-in.

Adding devices for installing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux

To install the application remotely using Kaspersky Security Center, you must add the devices that you are installing the application on to the managed devices group.

To add devices for installing the application:

1. Install the Kaspersky Security Center Network Agent on the device.

   The procedure for preparing a Linux-running device for remote installation of Network Agent is described in the *Kaspersky Security Center Help*.

2. In the command line, run the following command: `/opt/kaspersky/klnagent/bin/klmover --address <IP address of the Kaspersky Security Center server>`.

   The device becomes available for management using Kaspersky Security Center.

   > If Network Agent was previously installed on the device, the first two steps of these instructions are not necessary.

3. Log in to the Kaspersky Security Center Web Console.

4. In the main window of the web console, select **Device discovery** -> **Unassigned devices**.

   > If Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux is installed on a device, the device is added to the group in which the Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux policy is active. You do not need to move the device.

5. In the list of devices, select the check box next to the device where you want to install the application.

6. Click **Move to group**.

7. This opens a menu on the right side; in the menu, select the check box next to the **Managed devices** group.

8. Click **Move**.

The device becomes available for remote installation of the application.

Creating an installation package for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux

To remotely install the application using Kaspersky Security Center Web Console, you must create an installation package for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux from the Kaspersky application repository or from a file.

To create an installation package for the application:

1. Log in to the Kaspersky Security Center Web Console.

2. On the **Discovery & Deployment** tab, select **Deployment & Assignment** → **Installation packages**.

3. Click **Add**.

   This starts the New Package Wizard. To continue with the wizard, click **Next**.

4. At the first step of the wizard, you can select how you want to create the installation package: from the Kaspersky application repository or from a file.

   - If you select **Create an installation package for a Kaspersky application**, a list of installation packages available on Kaspersky web servers is displayed. To make finding the necessary installation package easier, click **Filter**, and in the menu that opens in the **Property** window, select **Operating system** and the **Linux** option.

   - If you select **Create an installation package from a file**, you are prompted to enter the path to a local folder containing the archive with the installation package of the application.

5. Select the necessary Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux installation package.

   This opens a window containing information about the installation package.

6. Read the information and click **Download and create installation package**.

   The installation package begins downloading to the Administration Server.

7. While the download is in progress, the **Accept** button is displayed. Do the following:

   a. Click **Accept** to read the text of the License Agreement and the Privacy Policy.

   b. If you agree with all the terms of the License Agreement and the Privacy Policy, select the following check boxes in the **I confirm that I have fully read, understand, and accept** section:

      - **the terms and conditions of this End User License Agreement**

      - **Privacy Policy describing the handling of data**

c. Click **Accept**.

The download of the installation package resumes after both check boxes are selected. If you click **Decline**, the download is canceled.

8. After the download is complete, click **Close** to close the installation package information window.

The downloaded installation package is located in the Packages subfolder within the shared folder of the Administration Server. The downloaded installation package is displayed in the list of installation packages.

Remote installation of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux on selected devices

Kaspersky Security Center Web Console allows you to install applications on devices remotely, using remote installation tasks.

To create and run the task to remotely install Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux on selected devices:

1. Log in to the Kaspersky Security Center Web Console.
2. On the **Devices** tab, select **Tasks**.
3. Click **Add**.

   The New Task Wizard starts. Follow the instructions of the wizard.
4. At the first step of the wizard:

   a. In the **Application** window, select **Kaspersky Security Center 12**.

   b. In the **Task type** window, select **Install application remotely** as the task type.

   c. If necessary, enter a name for the task in the **Task name** window.

   d. In the **Select devices to which the task will be assigned** section, select **Device group**.
5. Click **Next**.

   This opens the next screen of the New Task Wizard.
6. Select the check box next to the **Managed devices** group or check boxes next to individual devices in that group.
7. Click **Next**.

   This opens the next screen of the New Task Wizard.
8. In the **Selecting installation package** window, select the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux that you created earlier.

   Do not modify any other options at this step or the subsequent steps.
9. Click **Next**.

   This opens the final step of the New Task Wizard.
10. At the final step of the Wizard, click **Finish**.

11. Select the check box next to the created task in the task list.
12. Click **Start**.
13. Wait until the installation of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux on selected devices is complete.

    The status of the task changes to **Completed**.

Local installation of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux

This section contains information about installing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent on a local device from DEB or RPM installation packages.

To install the application or update an older version of the application:

1. Copy the DEB or RPM installation package of the program from the distribution kit to the user device.
2. Open the console and run the command to install the application from the relevant package:
   - To install the application from a deb installation package: `sudo apt install package_name.deb`
   - To install the application from an rpm installation package: `sudo rpm -i package_name.rpm`

   The application is installed on the local device.

To use the application, you must accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy.

To view the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy and accept the terms and conditions:

1. Open the console and run the `/opt/kaspersky/epagent/sbin/lenactl --eula-pp accept` command.
2. Carefully read the End User License Agreement between you and Kaspersky Lab.
3. Click **I confirm that I have fully read, understand, and accept the terms and conditions of this End User License Agreement**.
4. Carefully read the terms and conditions of the Privacy Policy.
5. Click **I understand and agree that my information will be processed and transmitted (including to third countries) in accordance with the Privacy Policy. I confirm that I have fully read and understand the Privacy Policy**.

   The application is ready for use.

Updating and restoring Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux

The application can be updated and restored using Kaspersky Security Center or locally.

To upgrade Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux using Kaspersky Security Center, you must create an installation package for the new version and follow the installation procedure. To restore the application, you can use the installation package created for the current version of the application.

Removing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux

The application can be removed using Kaspersky Security Center or locally.

To remove the application remotely from selected devices using Kaspersky Security Center:

1. Log in to the Kaspersky Security Center Web Console.
2. On the **Devices** tab, select **Tasks**.
3. Click **Add**.

   Follow the instructions of the New Task Wizard.
4. At the first step of the wizard:
   a. In the **Application** window, select **Kaspersky Security Center 12**.
   b. In the **Task type** window, select **Uninstall application remotely** as the task type.
   c. If necessary, enter a name for the task in the **Task name** window.
   d. In the **Select devices to which the task will be assigned** section, select **Device group**.
5. Click **Next**.

   This opens the next screen of the New Task Wizard.
6. Select the check box next to the **Managed devices** group or check boxes next to individual devices in that group.
7. Click **Next**.

   This opens the next screen of the New Task Wizard.
8. In the **Application to uninstall** window, select the installed version of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux.

   Do not modify any other options at this step or the subsequent steps.
9. At the last step of the Wizard, click **Finish**.
10. Select the check box next to the created task in the task list and click **Start**.
11. Wait until the removal of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux from the selected devices is complete.

    The task status changes to **Completed**.

Upon completion of the task, the selected application is removed from the selected devices.

Managing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux policies using Kaspersky Security Center Administration Console

Kaspersky Security Center is designed for centralized running of basic administration and maintenance tasks for an organization's network security system. The application provides the administrator with access to detailed information about the organization's network security level; it lets you configure all the components of protection based on Kaspersky Lab applications.

You can use Kaspersky Security Center to remotely install and remove Kaspersky Endpoint Agent and configure the operation of the application.

For detailed information about Kaspersky Security Center, please refer to the *Kaspersky Security Center Help*.

The user interface for working with Kaspersky Security Center is provided by the Kaspersky Security Center Administration Console.

You can manage Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using Kaspersky Security Center Web Console with the *Kaspersky Endpoint Agent administration plug-in*.

The following information in this section describes how to manage Kaspersky Endpoint Agent using the Kaspersky Security Center Administration Console.

Managing policies of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux

This section provides instructions for creating a policy for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux and enabling options in the policy using Kaspersky Security Center Administration Console.

Instructions in this section apply only to Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux.

Creating a policy for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux

To create a policy for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent in Kaspersky Security Center:

1. Open the Kaspersky Security Center Administration Console.
2. In the console tree, open the **Policies** folder.
3. Click **Create policy**.

   The New Policy Wizard starts.
4. In the **Enter group policy name**, window, enter the name that will be used to display the new policy in the list of policies.
5. In the **Select policy type**, select a Kaspersky Endpoint Agent deployment mode by selecting the **Endpoint Detection and Response Expert (KATA EDR)** check box.

6. Click **Next**.

7. Do one of the following in all settings windows that are displayed in sequence:

   - To configure application settings from the displayed sections when creating the policy:

     a. Click **Configure** next to the name of the section.

     b. This opens a window; in that window, modify the relevant settings and click **OK.**

     c. Click **Next**.

   - To edit application settings in the displayed sections later, click **Next**.

   Application configuration involves the following steps:

   - Configuring general proxy server settings.
   - Configuring the integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent with KATA Central Node.

8. In the **Target group** window, select the Kaspersky Security Center administration group that the new policy must affect:

   a. Click **Browse**.

   This opens the administration group selection window.

   b. Select an administration group from the list.

   For example, you can select the **Managed devices** group.

   c. If you want to create a device subgroup in the **Managed devices** group:

      1. Click **New group**.

      2. This opens a window; in that window, enter the name of the device subgroup.

      3. Click **OK**.

   d. Click **Next**.

9. In the **Create group policy for the program** select one of the following policy states:

   - **Active policy** to activate the policy immediately after creation.
   - **Inactive policy** to activate the policy later.

10. Select the **Open policy properties immediately after creation** if you need to perform additional configuration of the policy right after it is created.

11. Click **Finish**.

The policy that you created appears in the list of politics.

Enabling options in the policy of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux

When configuring default settings of a Kaspersky Endpoint Agent policy, setting values are saved but not applied until you enable them.

You can enable settings by enabling groups in which the settings reside. In one policy you can enable some groups of settings or all groups of settings.

To enable a group of settings in the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent policy:

1. Open the Kaspersky Security Center Administration Console.
2. In the console tree, open the **Policies** folder.
3. Select a policy for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent and open its settings window in one of the following ways:
   - Double-click on the name of the policy.
   - In the context menu of the policy, select **Properties**.
4. In the opened window, select the **Application settings** tab.
   a. Select the **Other settings** subsection.
   b. Select one of the following options for using a proxy server:
      - **Do not use proxy server**.
      - **Use proxy server with specified settings**.

      If you selected **Use proxy server with specified settings**, in the **Server name or IP address** and **Port**, enter the address and port of the proxy server to which you want to connect. Port 8080 is used by default.

      Kaspersky Endpoint Agent does not encrypt the connection with the proxy server. You must take steps to make sure the network connection between your proxy server and Kaspersky Endpoint Agent is secure.

      If you want to use NTLM authentication when connecting to the proxy server:

      1. Select the **Use NTLM authentication by user name and password**.
      2. In the **User name** field, enter the name of the user whose account will be used for authorization at the proxy server.
      3. In the **Password** field, enter the password to obtain connection to the proxy server.

      To reveal password characters, click **Show** to the right of the **Password** field.

      If you do not want to use the proxy server for addresses internal to the organization, select the **Bypass proxy server for local addresses** check box.

   c. Click **Apply**.

5. Select the **KATA integration** section.

   a. Go to the **General Settings** subsection.

   b. In the **Data transmission settings** group, set the **Under policy** toggle switch to active.

   c. In the **Event transmission period (sec.)** field, type 30.

   d. In the **Event limit per one package**, type 1024.

   e. In the **Throttling settings** group, set the **Under policy** toggle switch to active.

   f. Select the **Enable throttling** check box.

   g. Enter the maximum number of events per hour and the percentage value for events exceeding the limit.

   h. Go to the **KATA integration settings** subsection.

   i. In the **Connection settings** group, move the **Enforce** toggle switch to active.

   j. Select the **Enable KATA integration** check box.

   k. Enter the address and port of the KATA server in the **Address** and **Port** fields.

   l. Select the **Use pinned certificate to secure connection** check box.

   m. Click **Add new TLS certificate**.

   n. In the opened window, click **Upload** and select the server certificate file to set up a secure connection or enter certificate data in the field.

   o. Click **Add**.

   p. Click **Add client certificate**.

   q. In the opened window, select the **Secure with client certificate** check box.

   r. Click **Upload** and select a client certificate file to set up a secure connection.

   s. In the **Cryptographic container password** field, enter the password of the client certificate to set up a secure connection.

   t. Select the **Apply TTL period for events transmission**.

   u. In the **TTL period (min.)** field, enter the interval for sending synchronization requests.

   v. Click **Apply**.

6. Click **OK**.

Policy settings required by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent are enabled.

Managing database and module update tasks for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent

You can create and configure application database and module update tasks using Kaspersky Security Center Administration Console (for information about creating and configuring application database and module update tasks, see the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows Help).

You can also configure application database and module updates using the command line.

Managing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux using Kaspersky Security Center Web Console

Kaspersky Security Center is designed for centralized running of basic administration and maintenance tasks for an organization's network security system. The application provides the administrator with access to detailed information about the organization's network security level; it lets you configure all the components of protection based on Kaspersky Lab applications.

You can use Kaspersky Security Center to remotely install and remove Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux and configure the operation of the application.

For detailed information about Kaspersky Security Center, please refer to the *Kaspersky Security Center Help*.

The user interface for working with Kaspersky Security Center is provided by the Kaspersky Security Center Web Console component.

You can manage Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux using Kaspersky Security Center Web Console with the *Kaspersky Endpoint Agent web administration plug-in*.

The following information in this section describes how to manage Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux using Kaspersky Security Center Web Console.

Managing policies of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux

This section provides instructions for creating a policy for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux and enabling options in the policy using Kaspersky Security Center Web Console.

Instructions in this section apply only to Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux.

Creating a policy for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux

To create a policy for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux using Kaspersky Security Center Web Console:

1. Log in to the Kaspersky Security Center Web Console.
2. On the **Devices** tab, select **Policies & Profiles**.
3. Click **Add**.

   Follow the instructions of the New Policy Wizard.
4. At the first step of the wizard, select **Kaspersky Endpoint Agent**.
5. Click **Next**.
6. Make sure the **Kaspersky Endpoint Detection and Response Expert (KATA EDR)** check box is selected.
7. Click **Next**.
8. At the last step of the Wizard, specify the new policy name, change the state of the policy (by default, the policy is *Active*), and configure the inheritance of settings.
9. Click **Save**.

The policy that you created appears in the list of politics.

Enabling options in the policy of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux

To enable settings in a policy for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux using Kaspersky Security Center Web Console:

1. Log in to the Kaspersky Security Center Web Console.
2. On the **Devices** tab, select **Policies & Profiles**.
3. Click a previously created **Kaspersky Endpoint Agent** policy.

   This opens the policy settings window.
4. Select the **Application settings** section.

   a. Select the **Other settings** subsection.

   b. Select one of the following options for using a proxy server:

   - **Do not use proxy server**.
   - **Use proxy server with specified settings**.

   If you selected **Use proxy server with specified settings**, in the **Server name or IP address** and **Port**, enter the address and port of the proxy server to which you want to connect. Port 8080 is used by default.

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux does not encrypt the connection with the proxy server. You must take steps to make sure the network connection between your proxy server and Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux is secure.

If you want to use NTLM authentication when connecting to the proxy server:

1. Select the **Use NTLM authentication by user name and password**.
2. In the **User name** field, enter the name of the user whose account will be used for authorization at the proxy server.
3. In the **Password** field, enter the password to obtain connection to the proxy server.

To reveal password characters, click **Show** to the right of the **Password** field.

If you do not want to use the proxy server for addresses internal to the organization, select the **Bypass proxy server for local addresses** check box.

If you are configuring policy settings, in the upper right corner of the group of settings, move the toggle switch from **Undefined** to **Enforce**.

c. Click **OK**.

5. In the **KATA integration** section:

a. Go to the **General Settings** subsection.

b. In the **Data transmission settings** group, move the **Enforce** toggle switch to active.

c. In the **Event transmission period (sec.)** field, type 30.

d. In the **Event limit per one package**, type 1024.

e. In the **Throttling settings** group, select the **Enable throttling** check box.

f. Enter the maximum number of events per hour and the percentage value for events exceeding the limit.

g. Click **OK**.

h. Go to the **KATA integration settings** subsection.

i. In the **Connection settings** group, move the **Enforce** toggle switch to active.

j. Select the **Enable KATA integration** check box.

k. Enter the address and port of the KATA server in the **Server** and **Port** fields.

l. Select the **Use pinned certificate to secure connection** check box.

m. Click **Add new TLS certificate**.

n. In the opened tab, click **Upload** and select the server certificate file to set up a secure connection or enter certificate data in the **TLS certificate data** field.

o. Click **OK**.

p. In the **Additional security of the connection** group, select the **Secure with client certificate** check box.

q. Click **Upload cryptographic container** and select a client certificate file to set up a secure connection.

r. In the **Cryptographic container password** field, enter the password of the client certificate to set up a secure connection.

s. In the **Advanced** group:

a. In the **Send sync request to KATA server every (min.)** field, enter the synchronization interval in minutes.

b. Select the **Apply TTL period for events transmission**.

c. In the **TTL period (min.)** field, enter the interval for sending synchronization requests.

t. Click **OK**.

6. Click **Save**.

Policy settings required by Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux are enabled.

Managing database and module update tasks for Kaspersky Endpoint Agent

You can also create and configure application database and module update tasks using Kaspersky Security Center Web Console (for information about creating and configuring application database and module update tasks, see the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows Help).

You can also configure application database and module updates using the command line.

Managing Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux using the command line

You can use the command line interface to run individual commands of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux.

The command line interface functionality is provided by the lenactl utility. This utility is included in the application distribution kit and is installed on each workstation in the /opt/kaspersky/epagent/sbin/ directory.

To run application commands on the command line:

1. Run the command line terminal on the device.
2. Enter the following command: `export PATH="$PATH:/opt/kaspersky/epagent/sbin/"`.
3. Press **Enter**.

Now you can evoke the lenactl utility without specifying the path to the file.

4. Enter the command in the following format: `lenactl --param1 value`
5. Press **Enter**.

   The command is executed.

The complete list of options and corresponding values is provided below.

Main commands of the application

`--product`

This option is used to run or stop the application and to display its current state.

Allowed values:

- `--product start` runs the unloaded application; this command runs the stopped service of the application
- `--product stop` stops the running application; this command stops the running service of the application
- `--product state` writes the current state of the application ("running" or "stopped") to the console

`--update`

This option lets you perform a single update of the application databases and modules.

Allowed values and additional options:

- `--update` updates program databases from Kaspersky servers
- `--update <update_source>` updates application databases from the specified source
- `--update --app` updates databases and modules of the application from Kaspersky servers
- `--update <update_source> --app` updates databases and modules of the application from the specified source

`--local-update-task`

This option updates application databases and modules on a schedule using a local task.

The local update task is created automatically when the application is run for the first time. By default, the task is in an inactive state. When an update task is created using Kaspersky Security Center, the local task is automatically and permanently deleted.

Allowed values and additional options:

- `--local-update-task enable-schedule` to enable hourly updates of application databases from Kaspersky servers.
- `--local-update-task --app enable-schedule` to enable hourly updates of application databases and modules from Kaspersky servers.
- `--local-update-task disable-schedule` to disable hourly updates of application databases from Kaspersky servers.
- `--local-update-task --app disable-schedule` to disable hourly updates of application databases and modules from Kaspersky servers.
- `--local-update-task <update_source>` to update application databases from the specified source.

`--proxy`

This option lets you use a proxy server.

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux does not encrypt the connection with the proxy server. You must take steps to make sure the network connection between your proxy server and Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux is secure.

Allowed values and additional options:

- `--server` — address of the proxy server
- `--port` — port of the proxy server
- `--user` — name of the proxy server user (optional)
- `--password` — password of the proxy server (if user name is specified)
- `--use-for-local` — use the proxy server for local addresses

`--traces`

This option is used to manage trace files of the application.

> All files in the trace file directory are considered to be trace files.

Allowed values and additional options:

- `--traces --on` turns on the trace file collection mode
- `--traces --off` turns off the trace file collection mode
- `--traces --clear` deletes all trace files in a directory
- `--traces --copyto <path to a directory>` copies trace files to the specified directory

> The systemd-journald system logging service can be active independently of the application and can maintain its own operation logs. This may slow down the interaction of the application with trace files and reduce available disk space.

To turn off audit logs of the systemd-journald system service:

1. `systemctl mask systemd-journald-audit.socket`
2. `systemctl restart systemd-journald`

`--help`

This option displays a command line option reference text.

Commands for configuring the interaction of the program with the EDR server

`--servers`

This option lets you specify the address and port of the EDR server.

The arguments can be represented by a semicolon-separated list of server:port pairs. Multiple server:port pairs can be passed to the input, however the application ignores all pairs except the first in the list.

Default value: none.

`--timeout`

This option lets you specify the timeout of the connection to the EDR server in milliseconds.

The argument can be represented by a number.

Default value: 100,000.

`--sync-period`

This option lets you specify the synchronization period with the EDR server in seconds.

The argument can be represented by a number; the allowed range is 5-3,600.

Default value: 300.

`--send-packet-period`

This option lets you specify the frequency with which telemetry packets are sent.

Argument: number; allowed range: 5-999.

Default value: 30

`--max-events-per-packet`

This option lets you specify the maximum number of events in a telemetry packet.

Argument: number; allowed range: 5-10,000

Default value: 1,024.

`--compression`

This option lets you apply compression.

Arguments: `<yes|no>`.

Default value: `no`.

`--tls`

This option lets you apply TLS encryption.

Arguments: `<yes|no>`.

Default value: `no`.

`--pinned-certificate`

This option lets you specify the path to the public part of the server certificate.

Argument: `<path to public part of server pinned certificate>`.

Default value: none.

`--client-certificate`

This option lets you specify the path to the container with the client certificate.

Argument: `<path to client certificate>`.

Default value: none.

`--client-password`

This option lets you specify the password of the container with the client certificate.

Argument: `<password>`.

Default value: none.

Verifying the integrity of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux components

To avoid the replacement of application manifest and files, Kaspersky Endpoint Agent can verify their integrity. The integrity verification utility verifies the integrity of files and modules listed in special lists that are called manifest files. A manifest file of an application component contains files and modules whose integrity is critical for correct operation of the component. The integrity of manifest files themselves is also verified.

By default, the integrity verification utility is located in the /opt/kaspersky/epagent/sbin directory.

To run the integrity verification utility:

1. Run the command line terminal on the device.
2. Run the command: `./integrity_checker --signature-type kds-with-filename [other parameters] [<path to the manifest>]`.

   As a result, the terminal will display verification statistics as well as a return code:

- `0` means the integrity of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent manifest and files is maintained
- `1` means this is not the case

Parameters and arguments are listed below.

`<path to the manifest>`

This argument is used to verify the integrity of the manifest located at the specified path. If this parameter is not specified, the utility uses the integrity_check.xml file in the utility directory as the manifest file.

`--verbose`

This parameter is used to display integrity verification results for each file and a verbose description of integrity errors, if any.

`--trace <path to the file>`

This parameter is used to specify a file for saving trace data at the DEBUG level.

If this parameter is not specified, trace data is not saved.

`--crl <path to the list of revoked certificates>`

This parameter is used to verify the signature of the manifest using a list of revoked certificates located at the specified path.

Managing Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows

Kaspersky Endpoint Security is an application that is installed on individual devices in the corporate IT infrastructure. The application continuously monitors processes running on those devices, active network connections, and files that are being modified. Information about events on the computer (telemetry) is sent to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server. Kaspersky Endpoint Security also sends information about threats detected by the application and information about the results of processing these threats to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server.

When the integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Security with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is configured, the application runs tasks, applies parameters coming from Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, and sends telemetry from the protected device to the KATA Central Node server. For more details about what Kaspersky Endpoint Security can do when integrated with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, see the *Operating principle of the application* section.

For details about managing Kaspersky Endpoint Security, see the Online Help of the application:

- Installing and removing the application.
- Application licensing.

  To integrate with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, in addition to the Kaspersky Endpoint Security activation key, you must also add the Kaspersky Endpoint Detection and Response (KATA) Add-on key. For details on application licensing, see Kaspersky Endpoint Security Online Help → Integration with EDR (KATA).
- Integration with EDR (KATA).
- Configuring telemetry.
- Managing the quarantine.
- Commands for managing Detection and Response KATA EDR: Integration with EDR (KATA).

Managing Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux

Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux is an application that is installed on individual devices running Linux operating systems that are part of the corporate IT infrastructure. The application continuously monitors processes running on those devices, active network connections, and files that are being modified. Information about events on the computer (telemetry) is sent to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server. Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux also sends information about threats detected by the application and information about the results of processing these threats to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server.

When the integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Security with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is configured, the application runs tasks, applies parameters coming from Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, and sends telemetry from the protected device to the KATA Central Node server. For more details about what Kaspersky Endpoint Security can do when integrated with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, see the *Operating principle of the application* section.

For details about managing Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux, see the Online Help of the application:

- Installing, removing, and updating the application.
- Managing the application using the command line:
  - License key management: Licensing task (License, ID:9).
  - Integration with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform: Integration with Kaspersky Endpoint Detection and Response (KATA) task (KATAEDR, ID:24).
- Managing the application using Kaspersky Security Center Web Console and Kaspersky Security Center Cloud Console:
  - License key management: for more details, see *Managing tasks in Web Console → Creating a task* and *Task settings → Adding a key*.
  - Integration with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform: for more details, see *Managing policies in Web Console → Creating a policy* and *Policy settings → Integration with Kaspersky Endpoint Detection and Response (KATA)*.

For integration with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, you do not need to add an additional license key in Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux.

Creating a backup copy and restoring the application from backup

If you are using the non-fault-tolerant version of the application, you can create a backup copy of the application and then restore it from the backup copy.

For a standalone Central Node server, you can create a backup copy of the data from this Central Node server.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can:

- Create a backup copy of PCN data.
- Create a backup copy of SCN data.

  Restoring data from a backup copy of the SCN will change the role of the server from SCN to standalone Central Node server.

Follow the procedure for creating the backup copy of the application on the server for which you want to create a backup copy of the data.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform may contain user data and other confidential information. The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator must take steps to ensure the security of this data when creating a backup copy of the application, when replacing equipment on which the application is installed, or in other cases when it may be necessary to permanently delete data. The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator bears responsibility for access to data stored on application servers.

You can create a backup copy of the following data:

- The application database.
- Objects in Storage.
- Files from alerts generated during a rescan.
- Sandbox artifacts.
- Configuration files.
- Information about KATA and KEDR licenses.
- Central Node or PCN settings:
  - If you are using a standalone Central Node server, a backup copy of Central Node settings is created.
  - If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode and are managing the PCN server, a backup copy of PCN settings is created.
  - If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode and are managing the SCN server, you can create a backup copy of the SCN, but restoring data from a backup copy will change the role of the server from SCN to standalone Central Node server.

You can clear the directory before creating a backup copy of the application.

Before the application is restored from a backup copy, the following is cleared on the Central Node or PCN server on which the application is being restored:

- The application database.
- Objects in Storage.
- Files from alerts generated during a rescan.
- Sandbox artifacts.
- Configuration files.
- Information about KATA and KEDR licenses.
- Central Node or PCN settings.

Contents and volume of data exported for the creation of a backup copy of the application

Maximum data volume	Data type	Exported data	Application operation mode
4 GB	• Central Node settings. • The application database on Central Node: • Alerts and VIP statuses of alerts • Tasks and task execution results • Policies • User-defined TAA (IOA) rules and exclusions • User-defined IDS rules and exclusions • IOC files • Scan exclusion rules • Information about files in Storage • Information about quarantined objects • List of computers with Endpoint Agent • Reports and report templates • User account data • Notifications	Central Node settings, if selected. Application databases, by default.	Standalone Central Node server.
4 GB	PCN settings.	Custom	Distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
4 GB	SCN settings.	Custom As for a standalone Central Node server.	Distributed solution and multitenancy mode.

Maximum data volume	Data type	Exported data	Application operation mode
4 GB	Application databases on the PCN: • Alerts and VIP statuses of alerts • Task execution results • Policies • User-defined TAA (IOA) rules and exclusions • User-defined IDS rules and exclusions • IOC files • List of data excluded from the scan • Information about files in Storage • Information about quarantined objects • List of Kaspersky Endpoint Agent hosts • Reports and report templates • User account data • Notifications	Default	Distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
No	Configuration files.	Yes	All modes.
No	KATA and KEDR licenses.	Yes	All modes.
300 GB	Backup	Custom	All modes.
300 GB	Sandbox artifacts.	Custom	All modes.
300 GB	Files from alerts generated during a rescan.	Custom	All modes.
No	Events database.	None.	All modes.

Files that are in the scan queue when the backup copy of the application is created are not exported.

The versions of the application being restored must match the version of the application installed on the server. If the versions of the application do not match, an error message is displayed when the application restoration is initiated, and the restoration process is terminated.

Creating a backup copy of Central Node server settings from the application administrator menu

To create a backup copy of the Central Node (PCN or SCN in distributed solution and multitenancy mode), do the following in the administrator menu of the server:

1. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **System administration** section.
2. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the action selection window.
3. In the list of actions, select **Backup/Restore settings**.
4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the **Backup/Restore settings** window.
5. In the list of actions, select **New**.

6. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the **Backup settings** window.

7. Click **Back up**.

A backup copy of server settings is created.

Downloading a file containing a backup copy of server settings from the Central Node or PCN server to the hard drive of the computer

It is recommended to save files containing a backup copy of the Central Node server settings to the hard drive of your computer.

To download a file containing a backup copy of the Central Node server settings to the hard drive of your computer, run the following command in the command line interface of the Linux operating system on your computer:

```
scp <name of the account used for working in the administrator menu and in the server management console>@<IP address of the server>:<name of the file containing the backup copy of the application in the form of settings-<date and time of backup copy creation>.tar.gz>
```

Example:

Command for downloading to the hard drive of your computer an archive containing a backup copy of server settings that was created on a Central Node server with the IP address 10.0.0.10 under the "admin" account on April 10, 2020 at 10 hours 00 minutes 00 seconds:

```
scp admin@10.0.0.10:settings-20200410-100000.tar.gz
```

The file containing a backup copy of server settings is saved to the hard drive of your computer in the current directory.

Uploading a file containing a backup copy of server settings from your computer to the Central Node server

To upload a file containing a backup copy of server settings from the hard drive of your computer to the Central Node server, run the following command in Technical Support Mode:

```
scp <name of the file containing a backup copy of server settings in the form of settings-<backup copy creation date and time>.tar.gz> <name of the account used for working in the administrator menu and in the server management console>@<IP address of the server>:
```

Example:

Command for uploading an archive containing a backup copy of server settings created on April 10, 2020 at 10 hours 00 minutes 00 seconds to the Central Node server with the IP address 10.0.0.10 under the "admin" account:

```
scp settings-20200410-100000.tar.gz admin@10.0.0.10:
```

The file containing the backup copy of server settings is uploaded to the Central Node server in the current directory.

Restoring server settings from a backup copy using the application administrator menu

To restore Central Node server settings from a backup copy, you must first create a backup copy of current server settings. In case of an error when restoring server settings you will be able to use a backup copy of server settings.

To restore server settings from a previously created backup copy, perform the following actions in the administrator menu of the server:

1. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **System administration** section.
2. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the action selection window.
3. In the list of actions, select **Backup/Restore settings**.
4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the **Backup/Restore settings** window.
5. In the list of files containing backup copies of the application, select the file from which you want to restore the server settings.

   If the necessary file is not listed, upload the file containing the backup copy of the settings to the server.
6. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the action selection window.
7. In the list of actions, select **Restore <name of the file with the backup copy of server settings>**.
8. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.
9. Click **Restore**.

Server settings are restored from the selected file.

If the hardware configuration of the Central Node server on which the backup copy was created differs from the hardware configuration of the server on which you are planning to restore the server settings, you need to reconfigure the application scaling settings after restoring.

Creating a backup copy of the application in Technical Support Mode

To create a backup copy of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, run the following command in Technical Support Mode of the server:

```
kata-backup-restore backup
```

You can also specify one or multiple parameters for this command (see the table below).

You can use the `-h` command to receive tips on using parameters.

Parameters of the command for creating a backup copy of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Required parameter	Parameter	Description
Yes	`-b <path>`	Create a file containing a backup copy of the application at the specified path, where <path> is the absolute path or relative path to the folder in which the file with the backup copy of the application is created.
No	`-c`	Clear the directory before saving the application backup file.
No	`-d <number of stored files>`	Specify the maximum number of files from the backup copy of the application stored in the directory, where <number> is the number of files.
No	`-e`	Save files in Storage.
No	`-q`	Save files in quarantine.
No	`-a`	Save files awaiting rescan.
No	`-s`	Save Sandbox artifacts.
No	`-n`	Save Central Node or PCN settings.
No	`-l <filepath>`	Save the command execution result to a file, where <filepath> is the name of the event log file, including the absolute path or relative path to the file.

If additional settings are not defined, the backup copy of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform contains only databases (alerts database, VIP status details, the list of data excluded from the scan, notifications).

All files containing a backup copy of the application are saved to one TAR archive. Archive file name: data_kata_ddmmyyyyhhMM, where ddmmyyyy is the date and hhMM is the hour and minute when the backup copy of the application was created. The name of the database is KATA5.1.sql for the backup copy of the application version 5.1.

Example:

Command for creating a backup copy of the application:

```
kata-backup-restore backup -b <path> -c -d <number of stored files> -e -q -a -s -n -l <filepath>
```

Restoring the application from a backup copy in Technical Support Mode

To restore Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform from a backup copy, you must first create a backup copy of the current state of the application and download it to the hard drive of your computer. If an error occurs when restoring the application or if it becomes necessary to reinstall Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, you will be able to use the saved copy of the application.

The versions of the application being restored must match the version of the application installed on the server. If the versions of the application do not match, an error message is displayed when the application restoration is initiated, and the restoration process is terminated.

To restore Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform from a backup copy, run the following command in Technical Support Mode of the server:

```
kata-backup-restore restore
```

You can also specify one or multiple parameters for this command (see the table below).

You can use the `-h` command to receive tips on using parameters.

Parameters of the command for restoring Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform from a backup copy

Required parameter	Parameter	Command description
Yes	`-r <path>`	Restore data from a file containing a backup copy of the application, where <path> is the full path to the file containing a backup copy of the application.
No	`-l <filepath>`	Save the command execution result to a file, where <filepath> is the name of the event log file, including the absolute path or relative path to the file.

Example:

Command for restoring the application from a backup copy:

```
kata-backup-restore restore -r <path> -l <filepath>
```

Upgrading Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

You can upgrade Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform from version 5.0 to version 5.1.

You cannot migrate from the non-fault-tolerant version of the application to the fault-tolerant version by upgrading it — if you are using the non-fault-tolerant version of the application, you can only install the non-fault-tolerant version during the upgrade, and vice versa.

Upgrading the application involves the following steps:

1. Upgrading the Sandbox component.

   The application does not have a standard upgrade procedure. You must install the component version 5.1.

   > After installing the component you need to set the maximum number of simultaneously running virtual machines. The value 48 is used by default.

   > When installing the component on a VMware ESXi virtual machine, you must set up a configuration described in *Calculations for the Sandbox component* section.

2. Upgrading the Central Node component.

   > You can upgrade the component to version 5.1 only from version 5.0. If you are using an older version, you must upgrade it to 5.1 in the following order: 3.7 → 3.7.1, 3.7.1 → 3.7.2, 3.7.2 → 4.0, 4.0 → 4.1, 4.1 → 5.0.

   If you are not using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode and are using a standalone Central Node server, you can upgrade the application on the Central Node server.

   If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode:

   a. You can update the application on the PCN server. After the application upgrade is complete, the PCN server belongs to the same tenant it belonged to before the upgrade.

   b. If you want to update the application on an SCN server, change the role of the server from SCN to standalone Central Node server before performing the update.

      The application is updated on the standalone Central Node server.

      After upgrading the application, you can assign the SCN role to servers and select the tenant to which the SCN server belongs.

   c. After the application update is complete, by default, all users with the **Administrator** role are granted access to the web interface of the PCN server and all SCN servers.

      If before the application update, each user's access to SCN web interfaces was configured individually, you can configure it again.

      After the program update is complete, by default, all users with the **Senior security officer** and **Security officer** roles are granted access to the web interface of the PCN server and all SCN servers.

If before the application update, each user's access to SCN web interfaces was configured individually, you can configure it again. To do so, in the web interface of the PCN server:

a. Add the relevant tenants.

b. Configure the access of user accounts with the **Senior security officer** and **Security officer** roles to those tenants and servers.

c. Delete all SCNs that are temporarily disconnected from the PCN during the update.

d. Re-connect all relevant SCNs to the PCN.

The application prompts you to select a tenant for each SCN server.

User access to SCN web interfaces is configured.

Perform the application update procedure on the server where you want to update the data.

If the Central Node component is deployed as a cluster, you can update the component on any server in the cluster.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform may contain user data and other confidential information. The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator must take steps to ensure the security of this data when upgrading the application, or in other cases when it may be necessary to permanently delete data. The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator bears responsibility for access to data stored on application servers.

3. Upgrading the Sensor component installed on a standalone server.

4. Upgrading the Endpoint Agent component:

   - Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows.

     If you use the solution together with Kaspersky Security for Windows Server, you can migrate from Kaspersky Security for Windows Server to Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows version 12.1 or later that contains the built-in agent. For more information about migration, see the Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows Help.

   - Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux.

   - Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows.

   - Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux.

Special considerations for upgrading Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform from version 5.0 to version 5.1

1. After upgrading Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to version 5.1, you must add license keys again.
2. A short interruption in the operation of the application is considered acceptable, including for the fault-tolerant version of the application.
3. If the Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway solution is used in the role of the Sensor component, the settings for integration with it are saved.
4. Sensor and Sandbox component data are **not** preserved.
5. Central Node 5.1 is **not** compatible with Sensor and Sandbox components of earlier versions.

Upgrading the Central Node component

You can upgrade the component to version 5.1 only from version 5.0. If you are using an older version, you must upgrade it to 5.1 in the following order: 3.7 → 3.7.1, 3.7.1 → 3.7.2, 3.7.2 → 4.0, 4.0 → 4.1, 4.1 → 5.0.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you must prepare the PCN and SCN servers for the upgrade. For more details on the preparation procedure, see the *Updating Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform* section.

The upgrade is delivered as an update package. The package is included in the application distribution kit.

To upgrade the Central Node component:

1. Place the application upgrade package on the server with the Central Node component in the `/data/upgrade` directory.

   If you want to upgrade a component deployed as a cluster, you can place the upgrade package on any server in the cluster.

2. Sign in to the management console of the Central Node server where you want to upgrade the component via SSH or through the terminal.
3. Unpack the upgrade package by running the following command: `tar xvf ./upgrade.tar.gz`.
4. Install the upgrade package by running the following commands:

   a. `chmod +x /data/upgrade/install_kata_upgrade.sh`

   b. `/data/upgrade/install_kata_upgrade.sh`

5. Install the upgrade by running the following command: `kata-upgrade --data-dir /data/upgrade --user admin --password <password set when installing the component>`.

   If the password contains special characters, the `password` variable must be specified in the following format: `--password '<password>'`.

The Central Node component is upgraded.

After updating the component, you must log in again to the Central Node server management console over SSH or through the terminal.

Upgrading the Sensor component

You can upgrade a Sensor component that is deployed on a standalone server.

The upgrade is delivered as an update package. The package is included in the application distribution kit.

To upgrade a Sensor component deployed on a standalone server:

1. Place the application upgrade package on the server with the Sensor component in the `/data/upgrade` directory.
2. Sign in to the management console of the Sensor server where you want to upgrade the component via SSH or through the terminal.
3. Unpack the upgrade package by running the following command: `tar xvf ./upgrade.tar.gz`.
4. Install the upgrade package by running the following commands:

   a. `chmod +x /data/upgrade/install_kata_upgrade.sh`

   b. `/data/upgrade/install_kata_upgrade.sh`

5. Install the upgrade by running the following command: `kata-upgrade --data-dir /data/upgrade --user admin --password <password set when installing the component>`.

   If the password contains special characters, the `password` variable must be specified in the following format: `--password '<password>'`.

The Sensor component is upgraded.

After upgrading the component, you must log in again to the Sensor server management console over SSH or through the terminal.

Contents and amount of information kept when upgrading the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Information about the contents and amount of data kept when upgrading Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform from version 5.0 to version 5.1 is listed in the following table.

Contents and volume of data saved when upgrading the application from version 5.0 to version 5.1

Data type	Data saved during upgrade
Central Node or PCN settings.	All data except: • License keys • Settings for integration with the Sandbox component • Settings for integration with the Sensor component
Application database on Central Node or PCN (alert database, application operation monitoring data, custom rule database, tasks, policies, rules added to exclusions).	All data except: • Files in the scan queue when Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is upgraded to version 5.1. • Files in the rescan queue when Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is upgraded to version 5.1. • Report data.
Events database.	All data.
Storage and Quarantine	All data.
Sandbox artifacts.	All data.

Installing the 5.1.1 application update package

If you are installing the application for the first time, skip this step.

Before installing the application update package, we recommend first creating a backup copy of the current state of the application and downloading it to the hard drive of your computer from the application administrator menu. If an error occurs during installation of an application update package or if you need to reinstall Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, you can use your backup copy of the application.

To install the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform 5.1.1 update package, the following conditions must be satisfied:

- The version of the Central Node component must be 5.1.
- The Sandbox component version 5.1 must be installed.
- The Sandbox component must be connected to the Central Node component.
- KATA, KEDR, or KATA and KEDR license keys must be added to the application.

To install the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform 5.1.1 update package:

1. Delete installed virtual machines with preset images of Windows operating systems on the Sandbox server.
2. Delete preset images of Windows operating systems and software for the Sandbox component.
3. Upload non-activated images of operating systems and applications required for the operation of the Sandbox component.
4. Create and install virtual machines with non-activated operating system images.
5. In the application web interface, under **OS set**, select**Custom**.
6. Under **Set composition**, clear the check box next to Windows XP.
7. Click **Apply**.

The upgrade package is installed.

Interaction with external systems via API

You can configure the integration of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with external systems to manage Threat Response actions, to scan files that are stored in those systems, and to provide access to information about all application alerts and events to the external systems.

External systems interact with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform via an API. API method calls are available only to authorized external systems. For authorization, the application administrator must create a request to integrate the external system with the application. Then the administrator must process the request in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

If you have deployed the Central Node and Sensor components as a cluster, you can configure fault-tolerant integration with an external system using one of the following options:

- Using the Round Robin function.
- Configure the external system so that if a timeout occurs, the external system switches between the IP addresses of the cluster servers.

To configure fault-tolerant integration with an external system using the Round Robin function:

1. Configure Round Robin on the DNS server for the domain name corresponding to the Central Node cluster.
2. Specify this domain name in the mail server settings.

   Integration with the mail server will be configured based on the domain name. The mail server will communicate with a random server in the cluster. If this server fails, the mail server will communicate with another healthy server in the cluster.

Integrating an external system with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

To start working with the API, you need to integrate an external system with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. The external system must complete authorization on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server.

To integrate an external system with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform:

1. Generate a unique identifier of the external system for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform – `sensorId`.
2. Generate a certificate for the external system server.
3. Create any request containing a `sensorId` from the external system in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. For example, you can create a request to scan an object from an external system in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

   The web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will display the request for authorization from the external system. Contact the application administrator to process the request.

If you need to change the external system server certificate, repeat the steps for integrating the external system with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Request to scan objects

To create a request for scanning objects, the HTTP `POST` method is used. You can create a request by using the cURL command-line utility, for example.

You can set the parameters for executing a cURL command by using additional switches (see the table below).

Please refer to the cURL documentation for more information about cURL command switches.

Command syntax

```
curl --cert <path to the TLS certificate file> --key <path to the private key file> -X
POST "<URL of the server with the Central Node component>:<port, 443 by
default>/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/<sensorId>/scans?sensorInstanceId=<sensorInstanceId>" -F
"content=<path to the file that you want to scan>" -F scanId=<scan request ID> -F
"objectType=file"
```

If the request is processed successfully, the `OK` status will be displayed.

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
`sensorId`	UUID	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
`content`	file	Contents of the scanned object.
`scanId`	string	Unique ID of the scan request. It must be generated in the external system. It cannot contain spaces or special characters. Do not use file names as a scan request ID. If this parameter is not defined, viewing scan results is not available.

Parameter	Type	Description
`objectType`	string	Type of scanned object. Possible value of the parameter: `file`.
`sensorInstanceId`	string	Unique ID of the external system instance. Servers combined into a cluster are also considered to be instances of an external system. This parameter is optional.

Returned value

Return code	Description
`200`	Scan completed successfully.
`401`	Authorization required.
`429`	Number of requests exceeded. Repeat the request later.
`500`	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

Example of entering a command with switches

```
curl --cert /root/cert.pem --key /root/server.key -
X POST "https://10.10.10.1:443/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/dd11a1ee-a00b-111c-b11a-11001b1f1111/scans?
sensorInstanceId=instance1" -F "content=@/tmp/test" -F scanId=1 -F "objectType=file"
```

Request for scan results

To create a request for receiving scan results, the HTTP `GET` method is used. You can create a request by using the cURL command-line utility, for example.

You can set the parameters for executing a cURL command by using additional switches (see the table below).

Please refer to the cURL documentation for more information about cURL command switches.

Command syntax

```
curl --cert <path to the TLS certificate file> --key <path to the private key file> -X
GET<URL of the server with the Central Node component>:<default port
443>/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/<sensorId>/scans/state?sensorInstanceId=
<sensorInstanceId>&state=<one or more scan statuses that you want to display in scan
results>"
```

If the request is sent successfully, a list of requests for scanning objects and the results of scanning these objects will be displayed. The scan results will be filtered by the statuses that you specified in the `state` parameter. For example, if you specified `state=processing,detect` in the request for scan results, the application will display only the object scan requests that are being processed or in which the application has detected a threat.

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
`sensorId`	string	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
`state`	array (string element type)	Object scan status. When this parameter is defined, the scan results will be filtered by status. Indicate one or more statuses separated by commas. The following parameter values are available: • `detect` • `not detected` • `processing` • `timeout` • `error`
`sensorInstanceId`	string	Unique ID of the external system instance. Servers combined into a cluster are also considered to be instances of an external system. This parameter is optional.

Returned value

Return code	Description
`200`	Scan completed successfully.
`204`	No contents.
`404`	No scan results found for the specified ID.
`500`	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

Example of entering a command with switches if you want to display all object scan statuses in the scan results

```
curl --cert /root/cert.pem --key /root/server.key -X GET "https://10.10.10.1:443/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/dd11a1ee-a00b-111c-b11a-11001b1f1111/scans/state?sensorInstanceId=instance1&state=detect,not%20detected,processing,error,timeout"
```

Request to delete scan results

To create a request to delete the scan results for one or more objects, use the `DELETE` method. You can create a request by using the cURL command-line utility, for example.

Command syntax

```
curl --cert <path to the TLS certificate file> --key <path to the private key file> -X
DELETE "<URL of the server with the Central Node component>:<default port
443>/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/<sensorId>/scans/<scanId>"
```

If the request is processed successfully, the object scan results will be deleted. The `OK` status is displayed.

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
`sensorId`	string	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
`scanId`	string	Unique ID of the object scan request. If this parameter is not defined, the scan results for all objects will be deleted.

Returned value

Return code	Description
`200`	Scan completed successfully.
`401`	Authorization required.
`404`	No scan results found for the specified ID.
`500`	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

Command input example

```
curl --cert /root/cert.pem --key /root/server.key -
X DELETE "https://10.10.10.1:443/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/dd11a1ee-a00b-111c-b11a-11001b1f1111/scans/1"
```

Request to display object scan restrictions

To create a request to display the application's restrictions on scanning objects (for example, by size), the HTTP `GET` method is used. You can create a request by using the cURL command-line utility, for example.

Command syntax

```
curl --cert <path to the TLS certificate file> --key <path to the private key file> -X GET "<URL of the server with the Central Node component>:<default port 443>/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/<sensorId>/scans/filters"
```

If the request is processed successfully, the application's object scan restrictions will be displayed. For example, the `maxObjectSize` restriction is the maximum allowed size of an object that you can submit for scanning.

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
`sensorId`	string	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Returned value

Return code	Description
`200`	Scan completed successfully.
`401`	Authorization required.
`500`	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

Command input example

```
curl --cert /root/cert.pem --key /root/server.key -X GET "https://10.10.10.1:443/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/dd11a1ee-a00b-111c-b11a-11001b1f1111/scans/filters"
```

API that external systems can use to receive information about application alerts

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform provides an API that lets external systems access information about all alerts of the application and not just to scan results for objects stored in these external systems.

In order to receive information only for alerts that satisfy certain conditions, you can specify filters in the request parameters.

The application does not automatically send information about new alerts based on prior requests. A new request must be sent to receive up-to-date information.

Special considerations for operation in the distributed solution

If the application runs in distributed solution mode, you must separately configure the integration with the external system for each PCN and SCN server from which you want to receive information about alerts. This limitation is due to the fact that the web interface of the PCN server displays information about all alerts, but the alerts database stores only those alerts that have been registered on that specific server.

Request to display alert information

To create a request to display information about Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform alerts, the HTTP `GET` method is used. You can create a request by using the cURL command-line utility, for example.

Command syntax

```
curl --cert <path to the TLS certificate file> --key <path to the private key file> -X GET "<URL of the server with the Central Node component>:<default port 443>/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/<sensorId>/detects?detect_type=<one or more technologies that were used to generate the alert>&limit=<number of alerts in the response to the request>&token=<request ID>"
```

If the request is processed successfully, you will see a list of alerts generated by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform on the server of the external system.

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
`sensorId`	String	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
`detect_type`	Array	Technology that was used to generate the alert. You can specify a comma-separated list of technologies. Possible values: • `am` – Anti-Malware Engine • `sb` – Sandbox • `yara` – YARA • `url_reputation` – URL Reputation • `ids` – Intrusion Detection System If the parameter is not specified, information about all alerts is provided.

Parameter	Type	Description
`limit`	Integer	Number of objects for which information is provided in response to the request. Allowed values: integers from 1 to 10,000. The default value is `1,000`.
`token`	String	Request ID. If this parameter is specified, a repeated request does not show alert information that was obtained by prior requests. This helps avoid the duplication of information about the same alerts in case of repeated requests. If this parameter is not specified, information about all alerts is provided.

Returned value

Return code	Description
`200`	Operation completed successfully.
`400`	Incorrect parameters.
`429`	Number of requests exceeded.
`401`	Authorization required.
`500`	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

Example of entering a command with switches

```
curl --cert /root/cert.pem --key /root/server.key -X GET "https://10.10.10.1:443/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/dd11a1ee-a00b-111c-b11a-11001b1f1111/detects?detect_type=am,sb&limit=100&token=7b226f6666736574223a20307d"
```

Scope of transmitted data

Information that is transmitted for each alert is listed in the following table.

Scope of transmitted alert data

Parameter	Value	Description
`alertID`	Integer value.	Alert ID.
`eventTimeStamp`	Date and time.	Event time.
`detectTimestamp`	Date and time.	Time when alert information was recorded in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform database.
`importance`	One of the following values: • `high` • `medium` • `low`	Alert importance.
`objectSource`	One of the following values: • `web` • `mail` • `endpoint` • `external` • `dns`	Source of the detected object.

Parameter	Value	Description
`technology`	One of the following values: • `am` – Anti-Malware Engine • `sb` – Sandbox • `yara` – YARA • `url_reputation` – URL Reputation • `ids` – Intrusion Detection System	Technology that was used to detect the object.
`objectType`	One of the following values: • `file`. • `URL`. • `host` (for remote domains or hosts).	Type of detected object.
`object`	Depends on the type of detected object.	Data on the detected object.
`detection`	Depends on the technology that was used to detect the object.	Data on detected threats.
`details`	Depends on the source of detected object.	Data on the environment of detected objects.

Data on detected objects

The scope of transmitted data on detected objects depending on the type of the object is listed in the following table.

	Parameter	Data type	Description	Example
file	processedObject.MD5	MD5	MD5 hash of the file or composite object that was sent for scanning.	1839a1e9621c58dadf782e131df3821f
	processedObject.SHA256	SHA256	SHA256 hash of the file or composite object that was sent for scanning.	7bbfc1d690079b0c591e146c4294305da1cee857e12db40f431
	processedObject.fileName	String	Name of the file or composite object that was sent for scanning.	EICAR-CURE.com
	processedObject.fileType	String	Type of the file or composite object that was sent for scanning.	GeneralTxt
	processedObject.fileSize	Integer	Size of the file or composite object that was sent for scanning, in bytes.	184
	detectedObject.MD5	MD5	MD5 hash of the file (simple object or file within a composite object) in which the threat was detected.	1839a1e9621c58dadf782e131df3821f
	detectedObject.fileName	String	Name of the file (simple object or file within a composite object) in which the threat was detected.	EICAR-CURE.com
	detectedObject.fileSize	Integer	Size of the file (simple object or file within a composite object) in which the threat was detected, in bytes.	184
URL	detectedObject	String	URL of the detected object.	http://example.com/link
host	detectedObject	Array	List of domains to which detected objects belong. For the URL technology, as well as for objects with the objectSource=dns parameter, the list can contain several domains.	example.org, example.net

Data on detected threats

The scope of transmitted data on detected threats depending on the technology that was used to generate the alert is listed in the table below.

Technology	Parameter	Description	Data type	Example
One of the following technologies: • Anti-Malware Engine. • YARA. • Intrusion Detection System.	`detect`	List of detected threats.	Array	`HEUR:Trojan.Win32.Generic, Trojan-DDoS.Win32.Macri.avy, UDS:DangerousObject.Multi.Generic`
	`dataBaseVersion`	Version of databases used to scan the file.	Integer	`201811190706`
Sandbox	`detect`	List of detected threats.	Array	`HEUR:Trojan.Win32.Generic, Trojan-DDoS.Win32.Macri.avy, UDS:DangerousObject.Multi.Generic`
	`image`	Name of the virtual machine image where the file was scanned.	String	`Win7`
	`dataBaseVersion`	Database version in the following format: `<version of the application databases which were used to scan the file> / <version of the IDS module databases>`.	Integer	`201902031107/ 201811190706`
URL Reputation	`detect`	List of URL Reputation categories for the detected object (for objects of type `URL` or `host`).	Array	`Phishing host, Malicious host, Botnet C&C(Backdoor.Win32.Mokes)`

Data on the environment of detected objects

The scope of transmitted data on the environment of detected objects depending on the source of the object is listed in the following table.

Data on the environment of detected objects

Source of the object	Parameter	Description	Data type	Example
web	sourceIP	IP address of the computer that established the connection.	IP address	192.0.2.0
	sourceHostname	Name of the computer that established the connection.	String	example.com
	destinationIp	IP address of the computer with which the connection was established.	IP address	198.51.100.0
	destinationPort	Port of the computer with which the connection was established.	Integer	3128
	URL	URL of the web resource that was accessed. IDS technology alerts do not have this parameter. For URL technology alerts, this parameter has the same value as the detectedObject parameter.	String	https://example.com:443/
	method.	HTTP request method.	String	Connect
	referrer	URL from which the redirect was made.	String	https://example.com:443/
	agentString	User agent header of the HTTP request that contains the name and version of the client application.	String	Mozilla/4.0
mail	mailFrom	Sender's email address.	String	sender@example.com
	mailTo	Comma-separated list of recipient email addresses.	Array	recipient1@example.com, recipient2@example.com
	subject	Subject of the message.	String	'You are the winner'
	messageId	Email message ID.	String	1745028736.156014.1542897410859.JavaMail.svc_jira_poo
• endpoint • external	hostName	Name of the computer on which the alert was generated.	String	computername.example.com
	IP	IP address of the computer on which the alert was generated.	IP address	198.51.100.0

Source of the object	Parameter	Description	Data type	Example
dns	sourceIp	IP address of the computer which initiated the DNS connection.	IP address	192.0.2.0
	destinationIp	IP address of the computer with which the DNS connection was established (typically, a DNS server).	IP address	198.51.100.0
	destinationPort	Port of the computer with which the DNS connection was established (typically, a DNS server).	Integer	3128
	dnsMessageType	Type of the DNS message: • Request • Response	String	Request
	dnsRequestType	One of the following DNS request types: • A. • AAA. • CNAME. • MX.	String	MX
	domainToBeResolved	Domain name from the DNS request.	String	example.com

API that external systems can use to receive information about application events

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform provides an API for external systems that provides access to information about events registered by the application.

To receive information only for events that satisfy certain conditions, you can specify filters in the request parameters.

The application does not automatically send information about new events based on prior requests. A new request must be sent to receive up-to-date information.

Information about new events can be retrieved for no more than two hours after these events appear in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform database.

Special considerations for operation in the distributed solution

If the application runs in distributed solution mode, you must separately configure the integration with the external system for each PCN and SCN server from which you want to receive events. This limitation is due to the fact that the web interface of the PCN server displays information about all events, but the events database stores only those events that have been registered on that specific server.

Request for querying event information

To create a request for getting information about events, the HTTP GET method is used.

At the first request, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform creates a *ContinuationToken* (hereinafter also referred to as the "token"). The application sends events available in the system at the time of the token creation. When a new token is created, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform sends events available in the system at the time of creation of this token.

The token contains information about which data were transmitted last. If you want to receive events recorded after the last request, you must save the created token and use it in future requests.

Command syntax

For the first request:

```
GET "<URL of the Central Node server>:<port, 443 by
default>/kata/events_api/v1/<external_system_id>/events"
```

If the request is processed successfully, information about requested events and the token value are displayed.

For subsequent requests:

```
GET "<URL of the server with the Central Node component>:<port, 443 by
default>/kata/events_api/v1/<external_system_id>/events&continuation_token=<value of the
token retrieved by the first request>"
```

If the request is processed successfully, information about events received since the last request is displayed.

You can create a request to output information about events by specifying the maximum collection time and number of events, as well as event filtering parameters:

```
GET "<URL of Central Node server>:<port, 443 by
default>/kata/events_api/v1/<external_system_id>/events=?filter=<event
filter>&max_timeout=<maximum event collection time>&max_events=<maximum number of
events>&continuation_token=<value of the token retrieved by the first request>"
```

If you specified the value of the `filter` parameter for the first request, you do not have to specify it during subsequent requests: the filtering parameters are saved from the previous request and are used if no new parameters are passed in subsequent requests. If you do not want to use filtering, do not specify a value for the parameter.

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
`external_system_id`	UUID	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
`filter`	string	Event filtering settings. These are set using the event query language.
`max_timeout`	int	Maximum event collection time. Specified in the following format: PT<integer value>S. For example, PT300S. The server sends information about events collected during the specified time. The default value is 5 minutes. This value is used unless otherwise specified in the request. The maximum event collection time may not exceed 5 minutes. If you specify a value greater than 5 minutes, the Central Node server returns an error. The actual total time to wait for events may be increased.
`max_events`	int	Maximum number of events If no value is specified in the request, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform calculates it based on the number of hosts on which the Endpoint Agent component is installed. Examples of values for typical configurations: • For 1,000 hosts: 64,000. • For 5,000 hosts: 128,000. • For 10,000 hosts: 208,000. • For 15,000 hosts: 288,000. • For 30,000 hosts: 528,000. The value specified in the request must not exceed these limits.
`continuation_token`	string	Value of the token.

Example of entering commands with parameters

```
GET "https://10.10.0.22:443/kata/events_api/v1/c440a37b-5c01-4505-a30e-3d23b20dd609/events"
```

```
GET "https://10.10.0.22:443/kata/events_api/v1/c440a37b-5c01-4505-a30e-3d23b20dd609/events=?
filter=EventType=='threatdetect' AND
EventType=='threatprocessingresult'&max_timeout=PT300S&max_events=64000&continuation_token=
CiQyZDcyNjNiOS0zZmNlLTQxNzktYTdhOC03N2E0ZmUwNjNjMTkSBAgAEAoSBAgBEAMSBAgCEAsSBAgDEAcSBAgEEAgSBAgFEAkSBAgGEAQSBAg
HEAUSBAgIEAcSBAgJEAMYiYyCmvIw"
```

Returned value

Return code	Description
`200`	Operation completed successfully.
`400`	Incorrect parameters.
`401`	Authorization required.
`500, 502, 503, 504`	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

Query language for filtering events

The event filtering query language supports the following functions and operators:

- Functions: `in`.
- Comparison operators for String or Boolean values:
  - `==`
  - `!=`
- Comparison operators for numbers and variables:
  - `AND`
  - `OR`
  - `NOT`
  - `==`
  - `!=`
  - `>`
  - `>=`
  - `<`
  - `<=`

You can view the list of fields by which you can filter events in the Fields for filtering events section.

If you want to receive information about events of different types, you must create a separate request for each type of event.

```
EventType=='threatdetect' AND EventType=='threatprocessingresult'
```

Numerical and string constants are supported. String constants must be enclosed in single quotation marks: `'example'`. Wildcards * and ? are supported for string constants. If you do not want to use these characters as wildcards, you must escape them: `\*`, `\?`. Also, in string constants, you must escape special characters.

Fields for filtering events

The fields for filtering events are listed in the table below.

Field name	Type	Description
hostName	string	Host name.
HostIp	string	IP address of the host.
EventType	string	Event type. Possible values: • process — process started. • process_terminate — process terminated. • module — module loaded. • connection — remote connection. • applock — prevention rule. • blockdocument — document blocked. • filechange – file modified. • windowsevent — system event log. • registry — registry modified. • portlisten — port listened. • driver — driver loaded. • threatdetect — alert. • threatprocessingresult — alert processing result. • amsiscan — AMSI scan. • process_interpretated_file_run — interpreted run of a file. • process_console_interactive_input — interactive input of commands on the console.
UserName	string	User name.
OsFamily	string	Family of the operating system.
OsVersion	string	Version of the operating system being used on the host.
Ioa.Rules.Id	string	TAA (IOA) rule ID.
Ioa.Rules.Name	string	Information about the results of file analysis using the Targeted Attack Analyzer technology: name of the TAA (IOA) rule that was used to create the alert.
Ioa.Rules.Techniques	string	MITRE technique
Ioa.Rules.Tactics	string	MITRE tactic
Ioa.Severity	string	Importance level that is assigned to an event generated using this TAA (IOA) rule. Possible values: • Low • Medium • High
Ioa.Confidence	string	Level of confidence depending on the likelihood of false alarms caused by the rule. Possible values: • Low • Medium • High
FileCreationTime	integer	File creation time.
DllCreationTime	integer	DLL creation time.
DroppedCreationTime	integer	Creation time of the modified file.
InterpretedFileCreationTime	integer	Creation time of the interpreted file.
FileName	string	File name.
DllName	string	DLL name.
DroppedName	string	Name of the modified file.
BlockedName	string	Name of the blocked file.
InterpretedFileName	string	Name of the interpreted file.
FilePath If filtering by this field, you must use URL Encode.	string	Path to the directory where the file is located.
DllPath	string	Path to the directory where the DLL is located.
DroppedPath	string	Path to the directory where the modified file is located.

Field name	Type	Description
BlockedPath	string	Path to the directory where the blocked file is located.
InterpretedFilePath	string	Path to the directory where the interpreted file is located.
FileFullName If filtering by this field, you must use URL Encode.	string	Full path to the file. Includes the path to the directory and the file name.
DllFullName	string	Full path to the DLL. Includes the path to the directory and the file name.
DroppedFullName	string	Full path to the modified file. Includes the path to the directory and the file name.
BlockedFullName	string	Full path to the blocked file. Includes the path to the directory and the file name.
DetectedName	string	Full path to the detected file. Includes the path to the directory and the file name.
OriginalFileName	string	Full path to the original file. Includes the path to the directory and the file name.
InterpretedFileFullName	string	Full path to the interpreted file. Includes the path to the directory and the file name.
FileModificationTime	integer	File modification time.
DllModificationTime	integer	DLL modification time.
DroppedModificationTime	integer	Modification time of the modified time.
InterpretedFileModificationTime	integer	Modification time of the interpreted time.
FileSize	integer	File size.
DllSize	integer	DLL size.
DroppedSize	integer	Size of the modified file.
InterpretedFileSize	integer	Size of the interpreted file.
Md5	string	MD5 hash of the file.
DllMd5	string	MD5 hash of the DLL
DroppedMd5	string	MD5 hash of the modified file.
InterpretedMd5	string	MD5 hash of the interpreted file.
DetectedMd5	string	MD5 hash of the detected file.
Sha256	string	SHA256 hash of the file.
DllSha256	string	SHA256 hash of the DLL.
DroppedSha256	string	SHA256 hash of the modified file.
BlockedSha256	string	SHA256 hash of the blocked file.
InterpretedSha256	string	SHA256 hash of the interpreted file.
DetectedSha256	string	SHA256 hash of the detected file.
HijackingPath	string	A malicious DLL placed in a directory on the standard search path to make the operating system load it before the original DLL.
LogonRemoteHost	string	IP address of the host that initiated remote access.
RealUserName	string	Name of the user assigned when the user was registered in the system.
EffectiveUserName	string	User name that was used to log in to the system.
Environment	string	Environment variables.
ProcessType	integer	Process type. Possible values: • 1 – exec • 2 – fork • 3 – vfork • 4 – clone
LinuxOperationResult	string	Result of the operation. Possible values: • success. • failed.

Field name	Type	Description
SystemPid.	integer	Process ID.
ParentFileFullName. If filtering by this field, you must use URL Encode.	string	Path to the parent process file.
ParentMd5	string	MD5 hash of the parent process file.
ParentSha256	string	SHA256 hash of the parent process file.
StartupParameters	string	Start options.
ParentSystemPid	integer	Parent process ID.
Method.	string	HTTP request method.
Direction.	string	Connection direction. Possible values: • inbound • outbound
LocalIp	string	IP address of the local computer from which the remote connection attempt was made.
LocalPort	integer	Port of the local computer from which the remote connection attempt was made.
RemoteHostName	string	Name of the computer that was the target of the remote connection attempt.
RemoteIp	string	IP address of the computer that was the target of the remote connection attempt.
RemotePort	integer	Port of the computer that was the target of the remote connection attempt.
URI	string	Address of the resource to which the HTTP request was made.
KeyName	string	Path to the registry key.
ValueName	string	Registry value name.
ValueData	string	Registry value data.
RegistryOperationType	integer	Type of the operation with the registry. Possible values: • 0 – Registry key created. • 1 – Registry key deleted. • 2 – Registry modified. • 3 – Registry key renamed.
PreviousKeyName	string	Previous path to the registry key.
PreviousValueData	string	Previous name of the registry value.
System.EventID.value	string	Type ID of the security event in the Windows log.
LinuxEventType	string	Event type. Possible values: • MemberAddedToGroup — User account created. • UserAccountDeleted – User account deleted. • GroupCreated – Group created. • GroupDeleted – Group modified. • MemberAddedToGroup — User account added to a group. • UserPasswordChanged – User account password changed. • LinuxAuth – Authentication in Linux performed. • LinuxSessionStart – Linux session started. • LinuxSessionEnd – Linux session ended. • ServiceStart – Service started. • ChangeAccountExpirationDate – Account expiration date changed. • OperatingSystemShuttingDown — Operating system shut down. • OperatingSystemStarted – Operating system started. • ModifyPromiscuousMode – Promiscuous mode modified. • AuditdConfigurationChanged – Audit settings modified.
System.Channel.value	string	Log name.
System.EventRecordID.value	string	Entry ID in the log.
System.Provider.Name.value	string	ID of the system that logged the event.
EventData.Data.TargetDomainName.value	string	Domain name of the remote computer.
EventData.Data.ObjectName.value	string	Name of the object that initiated the event.
EventData.Data.PackageName.value	string	Name of the package that initiated the event.

Field name	Type	Description
EventData.Data.ProcessName.value	string	Name of the process that initiated the event.
VerdictName	string	Name of the detected object.
RecordId	integer	ID of the triggered rule.
ProcessingMode	string	Scanning mode. Possible values: • Default – default. • OnDemand – on demand. • OnAccess – on access. • OnExecute – on execution. • OnDownload – on download. • OnStartup – on startup of applications. • OnMail – on sending a message. • OnPostpone – postponed scanning. • OnDisinfect – on disinfection. • OnVulnerability – when scanning for vulnerabilities. • OnFirstLaunch – on first launch. • OnEngineLoad – on system startup. • OnQuarantineRescan – on rescanning objects in the Storage. • OnWebRequest – on web request. • OnAmsiScan – on AMSI scanning. • OnSystemWatcherScan – on analyzing application behavior.
DetectedName	string	Name of the object.
DetectedObjectType	string	Type of the object. Possible values: • Unknown. • File. • LogicalDrive – logical drive. • PhysicalDisk – physical disk. • SystemMemory – system memory. • MemoryProcess – process memory. • MemoryModule – memory module. • MailMsgRef – References header of the email message. • MailMsgMime – MIME attachments. • MailMsgBody – body of the email message. • MailMsgAttach – attachment of the email message. • StartUp – startup objects. • Folder – directory. • Script – script. • Url – URL address. • AmsiStream – AMSI scan stream.
ThreatStatus	string	Discovery mode. Possible values: • Untreated – object not processed. • Untreatable – object cannot be processed. • NotFound – object not found. • Disinfected – object disinfected. • Deleted – object deleted. • Quarantined – object moved to quarantine. • AddedByUser – object added by the user. • Unknown. • AddedToExclude – object added to exclusions. • Terminated – processing terminated. • Clear – object is not infected. • FalseAlarm – false alarm. • RolledBack – Rolled back to a previous state. • IpNotBlocked – IP address not blocked. • IpBlocked – IP address blocked. • IpCannotBeBlocked — IP address could not be blocked. • IpBlockIsNotRequired — IP address blocking not required.

Field name	Type	Description
UntreatedReason	string	Object processing status. Possible values: • None – no data. • NonCurable – object cannot be disinfected. • Locked – object locked. • ReportOnly – application in *Report only* mode. • NoRights – no rights to perform the action. • Canceled – processing canceled. • WriteProtect – object is write-protected. • TaskStopped – processing task interrupted. • Postponed – action postponed. • NonOverwritable – object cannot be overwritten. • CopyFailed – failed to create a copy of the object. • WriteError – data write error. • OutOfSpace – Out of disk space. • ReadError - data read error. • DeviceNotReady – device not ready. • ObjectNotFound – object not found. • WriteNotSupported – data writing not supported. • CannotBackup – failed to create a backup of the object. • SystemCriticalObject – object is critical for the system. • AlreadyProcessed – object already processed.
InteractiveInputText	string	Interpreter command.
ObjectContent	string	Contents of the script sent to be scanned.
ObjectContentType	integer	Content type of the script. Possible values: • 1 – text • 2 – binary code
FileOperationType	integer	Type of the file operation. Possible values: • 1 – file created • 2 – file modified • 3 – file renamed • 4 – file attributes modified • 5 – file deleted • 6 – file read
PreviousFileName	string	Path to the directory where the file was previously located.
PreviousFileFullName	string	Full name of the file including the path to the directory where the file was previously located and/or the previous file name.
DroppedFileType	integer	Type of the modified file. Possible values: • 0 – unknown • 1 – other files • 2 – PE image • 3 – PE DLL • 4 – PE resources • 5 – .NET resource file • 6 – ELF file

API for managing Threat Response actions

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform provides an API for performing Threat Response actions. Commands to carry out operations are received at the Central Node server and then relayed to the Endpoint Agent component.

You can use external systems to perform the following operations on hosts with the Endpoint Agent component:

- Manage network isolation of hosts
- Manage prevention rules
- Run applications

All of the above operations are available on hosts that use Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Windows or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows in the role of the Endpoint Agent component. On hosts with Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux, the only available operation is running applications.

Request for getting the list of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component

To create a request for information about hosts with the Endpoint Agent component, the GET HTTP method is used.

Command syntax

```
GET "<URL of the Central Node server>:<port, 443 by
default>/kata/response_api/v1/<external_system_id>/sensors"
```

If the request is processed successfully, a list of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component is displayed.

You can create a request for information about hosts with filters by IP address, name, or ID of the host. You can specify one, multiple, or all of these filters.

> When specifying a host name, you need to keep in mind that the filter is case-sensitive.

```
GET "<URL of the Central Node server>:<port, 443 by
default>/kata/response_api/v1/<external_system_id>/sensors?ip=<IP address of the
host>&host=<host name>&sensor_id=<sensor_id>"
```

If the request is processed successfully, information about the selected host with the Endpoint Agent component is displayed.

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
`external_system_id`	UUID	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
`sensor_id`	UUID	Unique ID of the host with the Endpoint Agent component
`ip`	string	IP address of the host with the Endpoint Agent component.
`host`	string	Name of the host with the Endpoint Agent component.

Example of entering commands with parameters

```
GET "https://10.10.0.22:443/kata/response_api/v1/15301050-0490-4A41-81EA-B0391CF21EF3/sensors"
```

```
GET "https://10.10.0.22:443/kata/response_api/v1/15301050-0490-4A41-81EA-B0391CF21EF3/sensors?
ip=10.16.40.243&host=host4&sensor_id=DF64838B-B518-414B-B769-2B8BE341A2F0"
```

Returned value

Return code	Description
200	Operation completed successfully.
400	Authorization required.
401	Incorrect parameters.
500, 502, 503, 504	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

Request for information about network isolation and the existence of prevention rules for hosts with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component

HTTP method GET is used to create a request to display information about network isolation and the existence of prevention rules for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component.

Command syntax

```
GET "<URL of the Central Node server>:<port, 443 by
default>/kata/response_api/v1/<external_system_id>/settings?sensor_id=
<sensor_id>&settings_type=<network_izolation or prevention>"
```

If the request is processed successfully, the list of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component is displayed, listing hosts that had prevention rules or network isolation rules applied at the moment when the request was processed.

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
`external_system_id`	UUID	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
`sensor_id`	UUID	Unique ID of the host with the Endpoint Agent component
`settings_type`	enum	Rule type: network_izolation or prevention.

Example of entering a command with switches

```
GET "https://10.10.0.22:443/kata/response_api/v1/15301050-0490-4A41-81EA-B0391CF21EF3/settings?
sensor_id=DF64838B-B518-414B-B769-2B8BE341A2F0&settings_type=network_izolation"
```

Returned value

Return code	Description
`200`	Operation completed successfully.
`400`	Authorization required.
`401`	Incorrect parameters.
`404`	Specified hosts with the Endpoint Agent component not found.
`500, 502, 503, 504`	Internal error. Repeat the request later.

Host network isolation management

To isolate a host with the Endpoint Agent component using the API, the following procedure is recommended for interacting with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform:

1. Creating a request for getting the list of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component
2. Creating a request for getting information about hosts that already have network isolation enabled
3. **Creating a request for one of the following operations with hosts with the Endpoint Agent component:**
   - Enable network isolation
   - Disable network isolation
   - Add an exclusion to an existing network isolation rule

You can manage the created network isolation rules in the web interface of the application.

Request to enable network isolation

To enable network isolation for a selected host, you must add a network isolation rule. To create the request, the HTTP POST method is used.

Command settings are passed in the body of the request in JSON format.

Command syntax

```
curl -k --<path to TLS certificate file> --key <path to private key file> -X POST "<URL
of Central Node server>:<port, 443 by
default>/kata/response_api/v1/<external_system_id>/settings?sensor_id=
<sensor_id>&settings_type=network_izolation" -H 'Content-Type: application/json' -d '

{

"settings": {

"autoTurnoffTimeoutInSec": <network isolation time period>}

}

'
```

If the request is processed successfully, the network isolation rule is added. Network isolation for the selected host becomes active at the moment when the rule is added.

After a period of time specified when the request is created, network isolation becomes inactive. The network isolation rule itself is not deleted. If necessary, you can delete the selected rule.

To disable network isolation, you must create a request to disable the selected rule.

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
`external_system_id`	UUID	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
`sensor_id`	UUID	Unique ID of the host with the Endpoint Agent component
`autoTurnoffTimeoutInSec`	integer	Period of time during which the network isolation will be active. Allowed range - 1 to 9,999 hours. Network isolation time period is specified in seconds. For example, if you want to enable network isolation of a host for two hours, you must specify 7,200 seconds.

Example of entering a command with switches

```
curl -k --example.cert --example.key -X POST "https://10.10.0.22:443/kata/response_api/v1/15301050-0490-4A41-81EA-B0391CF21EF3/settings?sensor_id=DF64838B-B518-414B-B769-2B8BE341A2F0&settings_type=network_izolation" -H 'Content-Type: application/json' -d '
{
"settings": {
"autoTurnoffTimeoutInSec": 7200}
}
'
```

Returned value

Return code	Description
200	Operation completed successfully.
400	Incorrect parameters.
401	Authorization required.
404	Specified hosts with the Endpoint Agent component not found.
500, 502, 503, 504	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

If you want to edit the settings of the created network isolation rule, you must create a new request to add the rule with the new settings.

Request to disable network isolation

To disable network isolation for a selected host, you must create a request to disable the network isolation rule. HTTP method DELETE is used to create the request.

Command syntax

```
curl -k --<path to TLS certificate file> --key <path to private key file> -X DELETE "<URL of Central Node server>:<port, 443 by default>/kata/response_api/v1/<external_system_id>/settings?sensor_id=<sensor_id>&settings_type=network_izolation"
```

If the request is processed successfully, the network isolation rule is disabled.

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
external_system_id	UUID	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
sensor_id	UUID	Unique ID of the host with the Endpoint Agent component

Example of entering a command with switches

```
curl -k --example.cert --example.key -X DELETE "https://10.10.0.22:443/kata/response_api/v1/15301050-0490-4A41-81EA-B0391CF21EF3/settings?sensor_id=DF64838B-B518-414B-B769-2B8BE341A2F0&settings_type=network_izolation"
```

Returned value

Return code	Description
200	Operation completed successfully.
400	Incorrect parameters.
401	Authorization required.
404	Specified hosts with the Endpoint Agent component not found.
500, 502, 503, 504	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

Request to add an exclusion to a network isolation rule

To add an exclusion to a previously created network isolation rule, you must create a request to add an exclusion. To create the request, the HTTP POST method is used.

Command settings are passed in the body of the request in JSON format.

Command syntax

```
curl -k --cert <path to TLS certificate file> --key <path to private key file> -X POST "<URL of Central Node server>:<port, 443 by default>/kata/response_api/v1/<external_system_id>/settings?sensor_id=<sensor_id>&settings_type=network_isolation" -H 'Content-Type: application/json' -d '
```

```
{
"settings":
{"excludedRules": [
{
"direction": "<outbound, inbound, or both>",
"protocol": <number of the IP protocol>,
"remoteIpv4Address": "<IP address of the host with the Endpoint Agent component whose
traffic must not be blocked>",
"localPortRange":
{
"fromPort": <port number>,
"toPort": <port number>
}
}
,
{
"direction": "<outbound, inbound, or both>",
"protocol": <number of the IP protocol>,
"remoteIpv4Address": "<IP address of the host with the Endpoint Agent component whose
traffic must not be blocked>",
"remotePortRange":
{
"fromPort": <port number>,
"toPort": <port number>
}
}
,
{
"direction": "<outbound, inbound, or both>",
"protocol": <number of the IP protocol>,
"remoteIpv4Address": "<IP address of the host with the Endpoint Agent component whose
traffic must not be blocked>"
}
]
,
"autoTurnoffTimeoutInSec": <network isolation duration>
}
}
'
```

If the request is processed successfully, the exclusion from the network isolation rule is added.

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
`external_system_id`	`UUID`	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
`sensor_id`	`UUID`	Unique ID of the host with the Endpoint Agent component

`direction.`	`array`	Direction of network traffic that must not be blocked. Possible values: • inbound • outbound • both If you do not specify a value for this parameter, the default value is 'both', which means the application transmits traffic in both directions.
`protocol`	`integer`	IP protocol number assigned by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). If you do not specify a value for this parameter, by default, network isolation is applied to all protocols.
`remoteIpv4Address`	`string`	IP address of the host with the Endpoint Agent component whose traffic must not be blocked
`remotePortRange`	`string`	Destination port. You can specify a destination port only if you have selected an outbound direction of network traffic. Port ranges cannot be specified for bidirectional traffic.
`localPortRange`	`string`	Port from which the connection is initiated. You can specify a destination port only if you have selected an inbound direction of network traffic. Port ranges cannot be specified for bidirectional traffic.
`autoTurnoffTimeoutInSec`	`integer`	Period of time during which the network isolation will be active. Allowed range - 1 to 9,999 hours. Network isolation time period is specified in seconds. For example, if you want to enable network isolation of a host for two hours, you must specify 7,200 seconds.

Example of entering a command with switches

```
curl -k --cert <path to TLS certificate file> --key <path to private key file> -X POST
"https://10.10.0.22:443/kata/response_api/v1/15301050-0490-4A41-81EA-B0391CF21EF3/settings?sensor_id=DF64838B-
B518-414B-B769-2B8BE341A2F0&settings_type=network_isolation" -H 'Content-Type: application/json' -d '
{
"settings":
{"excludedRules": [
{
"direction": "inbound",
"protocol": 6,
"remoteIpv4Address": "10.16.41.0",
"localPortRange":
{
"fromPort": 3389,
"toPort": 3389
}
}
,
{
"direction": "outbound",
"remoteIpv4Address": "10.16.41.1",
"remotePortRange":
{
"fromPort": 13957,
"toPort": 55409
}
}
,
{
"direction": "both",
"protocol": 6,
"remoteIpv4Address": "10.16.41.2"
}
]
,
"autoTurnoffTimeoutInSec": 7200
}
}
'
```

Returned value

Return code	Description
200	Operation completed successfully.
400	Incorrect parameters.
401	Authorization required.
404	Specified hosts with the Endpoint Agent component not found.
500, 502, 503, 504	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

If you want to edit the settings of the created exclusion, you must create a new request to add the exclusion with the new settings.

Managing prevention rules

You can use prevention rules to prevent files or processes from running on a selected hosts or all hosts with the Endpoint Agent component. For example, you can block certain applications that you consider insecure. The application identifies files based on their hash by using the MD5 and SHA256 hashing algorithms. A prevention rule created through external systems can contain multiple file hashes.

You can use external systems to manage all prevention rules created for a single host or all hosts at the same time. When you create a prevention rule for a selected host through external systems, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform replaces all prevention rules applied to this host with a prevention rules with new parameters. For example, if you had added multiple prevention rules for a selected hosts through the application's web interface, and subsequently added a prevention rule through external systems, all prevention rules added in the web interface are replaced with the rule added through external systems.

When the parameters of a prevention rule created through external systems are modified, the application saves only the new parameters. For example, if you have added a prevention rule that contains hashes for multiple files, and want to add another hash to that rule, you must create a request to add a prevention rule and specify all hashes for which you had a prevention previously, plus the new hash.

The described scenario is also relevant for prevention rules applied to all hosts.

To create a prevention rule using the API, the following procedure is recommended for interacting with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform:

1. Creating a request for getting the list of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component
2. Create a request for getting information about hosts that already have prevention rules.
3. **Create a request for one of the following operations with prevention rules:**
   - Create rule
   - Delete rule

Added prevention rules are displayed in the web interface of the application in the **Prevention** section, **Prevention rules** subsection.

If you are creating a prevention rule for all hosts through an external system, you must first make sure that no prevention rule for the same file exists on the server or is applied to one or multiple hosts. This prerequisite is also relevant if you want to create a prevention rule through an external system for a selected host: you must make sure that a prevention rule for the same file does not exist on the server and is not applied to all hosts. Otherwise, the server returns an error to the external system with a list of hosts that already have a prevention rule applied.

If the prevention rule created through an external system contains multiple file hashes, the error information mentions only the first file that caused the error. Information about other duplicated prevention rules is not displayed.

To modify a prevention rule previously created through the web interface or external systems, you must create a request to add a prevention rules with updated parameters.

Request to create a prevention rule

To create the request, the HTTP POST method is used. Command settings are passed in the body of the request in JSON format.

Command syntax

```
curl -k --<path to TLS certificate file> --key <path to private key file> -X POST "<URL of Central Node server>:<port, 443 by default>/kata/response_api/v1/<external_system_id>/settings?sensor_id=<sensor_id or all, if you want to create the prevention rule for all hosts>&settings_type=prevention" -H 'Content-Type: application/json' -d '

{

"settings": {

"objects": [

{

"file": {

"<sha256 or md5>": "<SHA256- or MD5-hash of the file that you want to prevent from starting>"

}

},

{

"file": {

"<sha256 or md5>": "<SHA256- or MD5-hash of the file that you want to prevent from starting>"

}

'
```

If the request is processed successfully, the prevention rule is added. The prevention rule becomes active at the moment when it is added.

If necessary, you can delete the prevention rule.

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
external_system_id	UUID	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
sensor_id	UUID	Unique ID of the host with the Endpoint Agent component
objects	string	Type of the object that you want to prevent from running. Possible value of the parameter: file.
sha256 or md5	string	SHA256 or MD5 has of the object that you want to prevent from running.

Example of entering a command with switches

```
curl -k --example.cert --example.key -X POST "https://10.10.0.22:443/kata/response_api/v1/15301050-0490-4A41-81EA-B0391CF21EF3/settings?sensor_id=all&settings_type=prevention" -H 'Content-Type: application/json' -d '
{
"settings": {
"objects": [
{
"file": {
"sha256": "830195824b742ee59390bc5b9302688c778fc95a64e7d597e28a74c03a04dd63"
}
"file": {

"md5": "d8e577bf078c45954f4531885478d5a9"

}

'
```

Returned value

Return code	Description
200	Operation completed successfully.
400	Incorrect parameters.
401	Authorization required.
404	Specified hosts with the Endpoint Agent component not found.
500, 502, 503, 504	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

Request to delete a prevention rule

You can delete a prevention rule using a new request with blank values or a request with the DELETE parameter. POST and DELETE HTTP methods are used to create requests.

Command syntax for a new request

Command settings are passed in the body of the request in JSON format.

```
curl -k --<path to TLS certificate file> --key <path to private key file> -X POST "<URL
of Central Node server>:<port, 443 by
default>/kata/response_api/v1/<external_system_id>/settings?sensor_id=<sensor_id or all,
if you want to delete the prevention rule for all hosts>&settings_type=prevention" -H
'Content-Type: application/json' -d '

{

"settings": {

"objects": []

}

}

'
```

Command syntax with the DELETE parameter

```
curl -k --<path to TLS certificate file> --key <path to private key file> -X DELETE "<URL
of Central Node server>:<port, 443 by
default>/kata/response_api/v1/<external_system_id>/settings?sensor_id=<sensor_id or all,
if you want to delete the prevention rule for all hosts>&settings_type=prevention"
```

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
`external_system_id`	UUID	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
`sensor_id`	UUID	Unique ID of the host with the Endpoint Agent component

Example of command for a new request

```
curl -k --example.cert --example.key -X POST "https://10.10.0.22:443/kata/response_api/v1/15301050-0490-4A41-81EA-B0391CF21EF3/settings?sensor_id=all&settings_type=prevention"-H 'Content-Type: application/json' -d '
{

"settings": {

"objects": []

}

}

'
```

Example of entering a command with the DELETE parameter

```
curl -k --example.cert --example.key -X DELETE "https://10.10.0.22:443/kata/response_api/v1/15301050-0490-4A41-81EA-B0391CF21EF3/settings?sensor_id=all&settings_type=prevention"
```

If the request is processed successfully, the prevention rule is deleted.

Returned value

Return code	Description
200	Operation completed successfully.
400	Incorrect parameters.
401	Authorization required.
404	Specified hosts with the Endpoint Agent component not found.
500, 502, 503, 504	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

Managing the application run task

To manage the application run task using the API, the following procedure is recommended for interacting with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform:

1. Creating a request for information about settings, creation time, and completion status of the task
2. **Creating a request for one of the following operations with the task:**
   - Creating the task
   - Deleting the task

Added tasks are displayed in the web interface of the application in the **Tasks** section.

Getting information about a task

To create a request for getting information about a task, the HTTP GET method is used.

Command syntax

```
GET "<URL of the Central Node server>:<port, 443 by
default>/kata/response_api/v1/<external_system_id>/tasks/<task_id>?settings=<true or
false>"
```

If the request is processed successfully, information is displayed about settings, creation time, and completion status of the task.

Settings

Settings	Type	Description
`external_system_id`	`UUID`	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
`sensor_id`	`UUID`	Unique ID of the host with the Endpoint Agent component
`task_id`	`UUID`	Unique ID of the task.
`settings`	`boolean`	Possible values: • true. If you enter this value, information is displayed about settings, creation time, and completion status of the task. • false. If you enter this value, information about creation time and completion status of the task is displayed.

Example of entering a command with switches

```
GET https://10.10.0.22:443/kata/response_api/v1/15301050-0490-4A41-81EA-B0391CF21EF3/tasks/2EEB4CBC-10C6-4DC4-
BE0A-72A75CDB0BE8?settings=<true or false>
```

Returned value

Return code	Description
`200`	Operation completed successfully.
`400`	Incorrect parameters.

Return code	Description
401	Authorization required.
409	The task with the specified ID was already exists.
500, 502, 503, 504	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

Request to create a task

The HTTP POST method is used for requests to run the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform application. Command settings are passed in the body of the request in JSON format.

Command syntax

```
curl -k --<path to the TLS certificate file> --key <path to private key file> -X POST "
<URL of Central Node server>:<port, 443 by
default>/kata/response_api/v1/<external_system_id>/tasks/<task_id>?sensor_id=
<sensor_id>&task_type=run_process" -H 'Content-Type: application/json' -d '

{

"task": {

"schedule": {"startNow": <true or false>},

"execCommand": "<name of the application that you want to run>",

"cmdLineParameters": "<additional options for running the file or command>",

"workingDirectory": "<working directory>"

}

}

'
```

If the request is processed successfully, the run application task is created.

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
external_system_id	UUID	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
sensor_id	UUID	Unique ID of the host with the Endpoint Agent component
task_id	UUID	Unique ID of the task.

Example of entering a command with switches

```
curl -k --example.cert --example.key -X POST "https://10.10.0.22:443/kata/response_api/v1/15301050-0490-4A41-81EA-B0391CF21EF3/tasks/2EEB4CBC-10C6-4DC4-BE0A-72A75CDB0BE8?sensor_id=DF64838B-B518-414B-B769-2B8BE341A2F0&task_type=run_process" -H 'Content-Type: application/json' -d '
{

"task": {

"schedule": {"startNow": true},

"execCommand": "Example.exe",

"cmdLineParameters": "C:\Windows\System32\",

"workingDirectory": "/all"

}

}

'
```

Returned value

Return code	Description
200	Operation completed successfully.
400	Incorrect parameters.
401	Authorization required.
404	The task with the specified ID was not found.
500, 502, 503, 504	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

If you want to edit the settings of the created task, you must create a new request to add the task with the new settings.

Request to delete a task

To create a request to delete a Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform task, the HTTP DELETE method is used.

Command syntax

```
curl -k --<path to TLS certificate file> --key <path to private key file> -X DELETE "<URL of the Central Node server>:<port, 443 by default>/kata/response_api/v1/<external_system_id>/tasks/<task_id>
```

If the request is processed successfully, the application run task is deleted.

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
`external_system_id`	UUID	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
`task_id`	UUID	Unique ID of the task.

Example of entering a command with switches

```
curl -k --example.cert --example.key -X DELETE "https://10.10.0.22:443/kata/response_api/v1/15301050-0490-4A41-81EA-B0391CF21EF3/tasks/2EEB4CBC-10C6-4DC4-BE0A-72A75CDB0BE8"
```

Returned value

Return code	Description
`200`	Operation completed successfully.
`400`	Incorrect parameters.
`401`	Authorization required.
`404`	The task with the specified ID was not found.
`500, 502, 503, 504`	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

Sources of information about the application

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform page on the Kaspersky website

On the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform page, you can find general information about the application, its capabilities and features.

The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform page contains a link to the online store. In the online store, you can buy the application or renew the license.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform page in the Knowledge Base

Knowledge Base is a section on the Technical Support website.

On the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform page in the Knowledge Base, you can read articles that provide useful information, recommendations, and answers to frequently asked questions about purchasing, installing, and using the application.

Knowledge Base articles can answer questions related not only to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform but also to other Kaspersky applications. Knowledge Base articles may also contain news from Technical Support.

Discussing Kaspersky software on the Forum

If your question does not require an immediate answer, you can discuss it with Kaspersky experts and other users on our Forum.

On the Forum, you can view existing topics, post comments, and create new discussion topics.

Contacting the Technical Support Service

This section describes the ways to get technical support and the terms on which it is available.

Obtaining information about Kaspersky Endpoint Agent for Linux for Technical Support

After you report a problem to Kaspersky Technical Support, they may ask you to generate a report with information about the operating system and send it to Kaspersky Technical Support. Kaspersky Technical Support may also ask you to create a trace file. The trace file allows you to trace the process of performing application commands step by step and determine the stage of application operation at which an error occurs.

Kaspersky Endpoint Agent enables system event audit using Linux Audit Daemon and sets up audit rules for itself. When the application is removed, audit rules configured by it are also removed. This does not stop Linux Audit Daemon.

To provide support more effectively in case of questions about the operation of the application, Technical Support staff can ask you to temporarily modify application settings during diagnostics to make debugging easier. To do so, you may have to:

- Retrieve extended diagnostic information.
- Fine-tune application settings in ways that are not possible with the standard user interface.
- Modify the settings for storing and sending the retrieved diagnostic information.
- Configure network traffic to be intercepted and saved to a file.

Technical Support staff will provide all the information needed to perform these operations (description of the sequence of steps, settings to be modified, configuration files, scripts, additional command line functionality, debugging modules, special-purpose utilities, and other resources) and inform you about the scope of data obtained for debugging purposes. The retrieved diagnostic information is saved on the user's computer. The retrieved data is not automatically sent to Kaspersky.

The operations listed above should be performed only when instructed by and under the supervision of Technical Support experts. Unsupervised changes to application settings performed in ways other than those described in the Help or according to the instructions of Technical Support experts can slow down or crash the operating system, reduce computer security, or compromise the availability and integrity of data being processed.

How to obtain Technical Support

If you cannot find a solution to your problem in the program documentation or in one of the sources of information about Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, we recommend that you contact Technical Support. Technical Support staff will answer your questions about installing and using Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Kaspersky provides support of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform throughout its life cycle (see the product life cycle page). Before you contact Technical Support, please read the technical support rules.

You can contact Technical Support in one of the following ways:

- Visit the Technical Support website.
- Send a request to Technical Support through the Kaspersky CompanyAccount portal.

Technical Support via Kaspersky CompanyAccount

Kaspersky CompanyAccount is a portal for companies that use Kaspersky software. The Kaspersky CompanyAccount portal is designed to facilitate interaction between users and Kaspersky experts through online requests. The Kaspersky CompanyAccount portal allows monitoring the progress of online request processing by Kaspersky staff and keeping the history of electronic requests.

You can register all of your organization's employees under a single account on Kaspersky CompanyAccount. A single account lets you centrally manage electronic requests from registered employees to Kaspersky and also manage the privileges of these employees via Kaspersky CompanyAccount.

The portal Kaspersky CompanyAccount is available in the following languages:

- English
- Spanish
- Italian
- German
- Polish
- Portuguese
- Russian
- French
- Japanese

To learn more about Kaspersky CompanyAccount, visit the Technical Support website.

Glossary

Advanced persistent threat (APT)

A sophisticated targeted attack against the corporate IT infrastructure that simultaneously uses different methods to infiltrate the network, hide on the network, and gain unobstructed access to confidential data.

Alternate data stream

Data streams of the NTFS file system (alternate data streams) are intended for additional attributes or information on a file.

Each file in the NTFS file system consists of a set of streams. The main stream contains the file contents. The other (alternate) streams are intended for metadata. Streams can be created, deleted, individually saved, renamed, and can even be run as a process.

Alternate streams can be used by hackers for concealed transmission or receipt of data from a computer.

Anti-Malware Engine

Application core. Scans files and objects for viruses and other threats to the corporate IT infrastructure using anti-virus databases.

Backdoor program

A program planted by hackers on a compromised computer in order to be able to access this computer in the future.

Central Node

Application component. Scans data, analyzes the behavior of objects, and publishes analysis results in the web interface of the application.

Communication channel bandwidth

The highest possible speed of information transfer in the specific communication channel.

CSRF attack

Cross-Site Request Forgery (also referred to as an "XSRF attack"). Attack on website users by exploiting vulnerabilities of the HTTP protocol. The attack enables actions to be performed under the guise of an authorized user of a vulnerable website. For example, under the guise of an authorized user of a vulnerable website, a hacker can covertly send a request to the server of an external payment system to transfer money to the hacker's account.

Distributed solution

Two-level hierarchy of servers with Central Node components installed. This hierarchy allocates a primary control server *(Primary Central Node (PCN))* and secondary servers *(Secondary Central Nodes (SCN))*.

Dump

Contents of the working memory of a process or the entire RAM of the system at a specified moment of time.

End User License Agreement

Binding agreement between you and AO Kaspersky Lab, stipulating the terms on which you may use the application.

Endpoint Agent component

Application component. Installed on workstations and servers of the corporate IT infrastructure that run Microsoft Windows and Linux operating systems. Continuously monitors processes running on those computers, active network connections, and files that are modified.

ICAP data

Data received by the ICAP protocol (Internet Content Adaptation Protocol). This protocol allows filtering and modifying data of HTTP requests and HTTP responses. For example, it allows scanning data for viruses, blocking spam, and denying access to personal resources. The ICAP client is normally a proxy server that interacts with the ICAP server by the ICAP protocol. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform receives data from the proxy server of your organization after this data was processed on the ICAP server.

Intrusion Detection System

Application module. Scans the Internet traffic for signs of intrusions into the corporate IT infrastructure.

IOA

Indicator of Attack. Description of suspicious behavior of objects within a corporate IT infrastructure that may indicate a targeted attack on that organization.

IOC

Indicator of Compromise. A set of data about a malicious object or malicious activity.

IOC file

IOC files contain a set of indicators that are compared to the indicators of an event. If the compared indicators match, the application considers the event to be an alert. The likelihood of an alert may increase if a scan detects exact matches between the data of an object and several IOC files.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Solution designed for the protection of a corporate IT infrastructure and timely detection of threats such as *zero-day attacks*, *targeted attacks*, and complex targeted attacks known as *advanced persistent threats* (hereinafter also referred to as "*APT*").

Kaspersky Private Security Network

A solution that allows users of Kaspersky anti-virus applications to access Kaspersky Security Network databases without sending data from their computers to Kaspersky Security Network servers.

Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway

A solution designed for protection of incoming and outgoing email against malicious objects and spam, and for content filtering of messages. The solution lets you deploy a virtual mail gateway and integrate it into the existing corporate mail infrastructure. An operating system, mail server, and Kaspersky anti-virus application are preinstalled on the virtual mail gateway.

Kaspersky Security Network (KSN)

An infrastructure of cloud services that provides access to the online Knowledge Base of Kaspersky which contains information about the reputation of files, web resources, and software. The use of data from Kaspersky Security Network ensures faster responses by Kaspersky applications to threats, improves the performance of some protection components, and reduces the likelihood of false alarms.

Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal

Kaspersky information system Contains and displays reputation information for files and URL addresses.

KATA

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack. Functional block of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform which detects threats on the perimeter of the enterprise IT infrastructure.

KEDR

Kaspersky Endpoint Detection and Response. Functional block of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform which provides protection for the local area network of the organization.

Kerberos authentication

A mechanism for mutual authentication of client and server before a connection is established between them, which allows communication over unprotected networks. The mechanism is based on using a ticket, which is issued to the user by a trusted authentication center.

Keytab file

A file containing pairs of unique names (principals) of clients that are allowed to use Kerberos authentication and encrypted keys derived from the user password. Systems that support Kerberos use keytab files to authenticate users without entering a password.

Local reputation database of KPSN

Database of the reputations of objects (files or URLs) that is stored on the Kaspersky Private Security Network server but not on Kaspersky Security Network servers. Local reputation databases are managed by the KPSN administrator.

Malicious web addresses

URLs of resources distributing malicious software.

MIB (Management Information Base)

Virtual database used to manage objects that are transmitted over the SNMP protocol.

Mirrored traffic

A copy of traffic redirected from one switch port to another port of the same switch (local mirroring) or to a remote switch (remote mirroring). The network administrator can configure which part of traffic should be mirrored for transmission to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

MITM attack

Man in The Middle. An attack on the IT infrastructure of an organization in which a hacker hijacks the communication link between two access points, relays it, and modifies the connection between these access points if necessary.

MITRE technique

The MITRE ATT&CK (Adversarial Tactics, Techniques & Common Knowledge) database contains descriptions of hacker behavior based on the analysis of real attacks. It is a structured list of known hacker techniques represented as a table.

Multitenancy

Operation mode in which Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is used to protect the infrastructure of multiple organizations or branch offices of the same organization simultaneously.

New generation threats

Corporate IT infrastructure threats capable of overwriting, altering, encrypting, or distorting their code to a point where matches against signatures can no longer be detected by a security system.

NTP server

Precision time server using the Network Time Protocol.

OpenIOC

An open, XML-based standard for describing indicators of compromise containing over 500 different indicators of compromise.

Phishing URL addresses

URL addresses of resources designed to obtain unauthorized access to confidential data of users. Phishing is usually aimed at stealing various financial data.

Sandbox

Application component. Starts virtual images of operating systems. Starts files in these operating systems and tracks the behavior of files in each operating system to detect malicious activity and signs of targeted attacks to the corporate IT infrastructure.

Sensor

Application component. Receives data.

Service principal name (SPN)

Unique ID of the service on the network for Kerberos authentication.

SIEM system

Security Information and Event Management System. Solution for managing information and events in an organization's security system.

Signature

Code in information protection databases that contains a description of known threats.

SPAN

Switch Port Analyzer. Technology for mirroring traffic from one port to another.

Syslog

The standard for sending and recording messages about events occurring in the system employed on UNIX™ and GNU/Linux platforms.

TAA (IOA) rule

One sign of suspicious behavior of an object in the corporate IT infrastructure that causes Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to consider an event to be an alert. A TAA (IOA) rule contains a description of a sign of an attack and recommended countermeasures.

Targeted attack

Attack that targets a specific person or organization. Unlike mass attacks by computer viruses designed to infect as many computers as possible, targeted attacks can be aimed at infecting the network of a specific organization or even a separate server within the corporate IT infrastructure. A dedicated Trojan program can be written to stage each targeted attack.

Targeted Attack Analyzer

Application module. Analyzes and monitors network activity of software installed on computers of the corporate LAN using TAA (IOA) rules. Searches for signs of network activity that the user of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is advised to direct his/her attention, as well as signs of targeted attacks to the corporate IT infrastructure.

Tenant

An individual organization or branch office of an organization to which the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform solution is being provided.

TLS encryption

Encryption of connection between two servers, which ensures secure transmission of data between servers on the Internet.

Tracing

The application is run in debugging mode; after each command is executed, the application is stopped and the result of this step is displayed.

VIP status

Status of alerts with special access permissions. For example, alerts with the VIP status cannot be viewed by users with the **Security officer** role.

YARA

Application module. Scans files and objects for signs of targeted attacks on the corporate IT infrastructure using YARA Rules databases created by users of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

YARA rules

A publicly available classification of malware, which contains signatures of signs of targeted attacks and intrusions into the corporate IT infrastructure, which is used by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to scan files and objects.

Zero-day attack

An attack targeting the corporate IT infrastructure by exploiting zero-day vulnerabilities in software. These are software vulnerabilities that hackers find and exploit before the software vendor has a chance to release a patch.

Zero-day vulnerability

A software vulnerability that hackers find and exploit before the software vendor has a chance to release a patch with fixed program code.

Information about third-party code

Information about third-party code is contained in the file legal_notices.txt, in the application installation directory.

Trademark notices

Registered trademarks and service marks are the property of their respective owners.

Adobe, Flash are registered trademarks or trademarks of the Adobe company in the USA and/or other countries.

Apple, Mac, MacOS, Macintosh, and Safari are trademarks of Apple Inc.

Ubuntu, LTS are registered trademarks of Canonical Ltd.

Snort is a registered trademark or trademark of Cisco Systems, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and certain other countries.

Citrix™ is a trademark of Citrix Systems, Inc. and/or of its subsidiaries, and registered in the United States Patent and Trademark Office and in other countries.

ESET™ and ESET NOD32™ are trademarks or registered trademarks of ESET s.r.o. or another relevant ESET company.

Google, Google Chrome, Android are trademarks of Google LLC.

Intel, Xeon and Core are trademarks of Intel Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.

Linux is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries.

Microsoft, Active Directory, Excel, Internet Explorer, Microsoft Edge, PowerPoint, PowerShell, Win32, Windows, Windows Server, WINDOWS XP are trademarks of the Microsoft group of companies.

Mozilla™ and Firefox™ are trademarks of the Mozilla Foundation in the United States and other countries.

Oracle, Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Python is a trademark or registered trademark of the Python Software Foundation.

Red Hat, CentOS and Red Hat Enterprise Linux are trademarks or registered trademarks of Red Hat, Inc. or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Debian is a registered trademark of Software in the Public Interest, Inc.

SUSE is a registered trademark of SUSE LLC in the United States and other countries.

Symantec is a trademark or registered trademark of Symantec Corporation or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries.

Trend Micro is a trademark or registered trademark of Trend Micro Incorporated.

VMware ESXi™ is a trademark of VMware, Inc. or a registered trademark in the United States or other jurisdictions of VMware, Inc.

UNIX is a registered trademark in the United States and other countries, licensed exclusively through X/Open Company Limited.